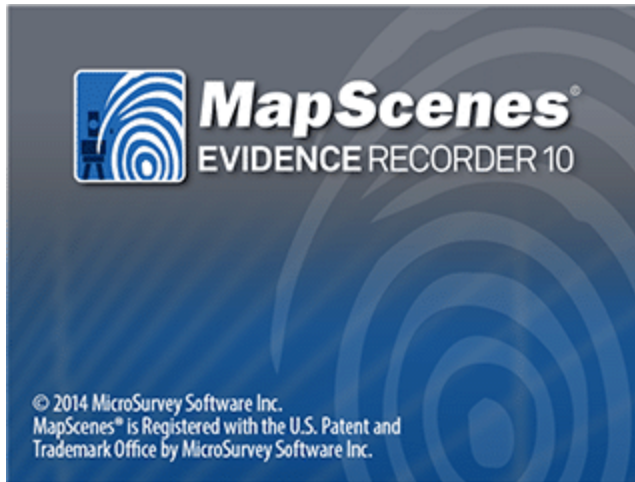




MapScenesEvidence Recorder 10 v10 (7/28/2015)

Copyright © 2015 MicroSurvey Software Inc.
All Rights Reserved

MicroSurvey End-User License Agreement

This MicroSurvey End-User License Agreement ("Agreement") is a legal and binding agreement between you ("Licensee") and MicroSurvey Software Inc., a BC corporation ("MICROSURVEY") concerning the use of the MicroSurvey products (the "Product"), the software provided in connection with the use and operation of the Product, including firmware and stored measurement data (collectively the "Software") and all related documentation provided in connection with the acquisition of the Product ("Documentation"). The Software includes software owned by, and licensed from, third party licensors.

By clicking the "**I ACCEPT**" check box and completing the process of installing the Software, LICENSEE consents to and agrees to be bound by all of the terms and conditions of this Agreement. BY CLICKING THE "I REJECT" CHECK BOX or IF LICENSEE disagrees with any of the terms or conditions of this Agreement, LICENSEE IS not permitted to install and/or use the Software, PRODUCT AND DOCUMENTATION. IF LICENSEE HAS ANY questions OR COMMENTS CONCERNING THIS AGREEMENT LICENSEE MAY CONTACT MICROSURVEY AT Westbank, BC Canada.

1. **Title to Product and Rights to Use Software and Documentation.** Title to the Product and the rights to use the Software and Documentation are conditioned upon the payment of the required purchase price and any applicable license and maintenance fees and Licensee's acceptance of the terms and conditions of this Agreement.
2. **License.**
 1. **License Grant.** MICROSURVEY hereby grants Licensee a nonexclusive, non-transferable, non-sublicensable right to (i) install and use one copy of the Software and Documentation on the Product and one copy for use on no more than one personal computer simultaneously, and , (ii) to access the stored measurement data generated by the Software, for Licensee's own internal business purposes and in accordance with the terms and conditions of this Agreement. MICROSURVEY also hereby grants Licensee a nonexclusive, non-sublicensable right to reproduce the Documentation, solely as necessary for Licensee's internal use of the Product and Software.
 2. **Conditions and Restrictions.** The following conditions and restrictions apply to the use of the Product, Software and Documentation:

- i. Licensee shall not, and shall not attempt to, reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble or otherwise attempt to identify the source code of any object code portions of, distribute, modify, encrypt, or create derivative works of the Software, Documentation, and/or any stored measurement data in whole or in part, including, but not limited to, stored measurement data.
 - ii. Licensee shall not use the Software or Documentation for any purpose not expressly permitted by this Agreement.
 - iii. Licensee shall not copy any part of the Software, except that Licensee may make one copy of the Software for backup purposes only.
 - iv. Licensee agrees not to remove or destroy any copyright, logo, trademark, trade name, proprietary markings, or confidentiality legends placed upon or contained within the Software or Documentation. Licensee shall not, and agree not to assist others to, circumvent or disable the license provisioning technology for the Software.
 - v. Licensee's license to the Software under this Agreement continues until it is terminated by Licensee or MICROSURVEY. Licensee may terminate the license by discontinuing use of all or any of the Software and by destroying all Licensee copies of the Software and Documentation.
 - vi. This Agreement will terminate automatically if (x) Licensee violate any of the terms or conditions of this Agreement, (y) MICROSURVEY publicly posts a written notice of termination on its website www.microsurvey.com (that, or any successor site, the "Site"); or (z) MICROSURVEY revokes this Agreement or issues a new agreement in writing or electronic form and conditions Licensee continued use of the Software upon acceptance of the new agreement.
3. **Ownership.** All rights, title and interest in and to the Software and Documentation including, without limitation, all copyright, patent, trade secret and other intellectual property rights shall at all times remain the property of MICROSURVEY, its licensors, or its suppliers, as applicable. The Software and Documentation are licensed, not sold, and are protected by copyright and other intellectual property laws and treaties. Licensee shall take appropriate steps reasonably calculated to notify others of MICROSURVEY and its licensor's/suppliers' ownership of the Software and Documentation.
4. **Warranty.** MICROSURVEY warrants that the Product will, for 90 days after the Effective Date (the "Warranty Period"), substantially conform to the Documentation; provided, that Licensee must notify MICROSURVEY in writing of any breach of the foregoing warranty

within the Warranty Period. For any breach of the foregoing warranty reported during the Warranty Period, MICROSURVEY will use reasonable efforts to promptly correct such defect without further charge. If MICROSURVEY is unable to correct such defect, then MICROSURVEY will refund the license fees paid for the Product. This represents MICROSURVEY'S exclusive liability and Licensee's sole and exclusive remedy in the event of a breach of the foregoing warranty.

5. **Warranty Disclaimer.** EXCEPT AS DESCRIBED IN SECTION 4 (WARRANTY), MICRO-SURVEY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES RELATING TO THE PRODUCT, SOFTWARE, AND DOCUMENTATION, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, NON-INFRINGEMENT AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. MICROSURVEY DOES NOT REPRESENT THAT THE OPERATION OF THE PRODUCT AND/OR SOFTWARE WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE. WITHOUT LIMITING THE GENERALITY OF THE FOREGOING, MICRO-SURVEY MAKES NO WARRANTY THAT: (A) OPERATION OF THE PRODUCT AND/OR SOFTWARE WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (B) THE PRODUCT AND/OR SOFTWARE WILL MEET LICENSEE SPECIFIC NEEDS, (C) SPECIFIC RESULTS WILL BE ACHIEVED WITH THE PRODUCT AND/OR SOFTWARE, OR (D) ALL ERRORS OR FAILURES WILL BE CORRECTED. IN NO EVENT SHALL MICRO-SURVEY'S, ITS LICENSORS', OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY TO LICENSEE FOR THE PRODUCT AND/OR SOFTWARE, WHETHER BASED ON CONTRACT, TORT, WARRANTY, OR ANY OTHER LEGAL THEORY, EXCEED THE AMOUNT OF PURCHASE PRICE PAID FOR THE PRODUCT AND ANY RELATED LICENSE OR MAINTENANCE FEES PAID BY LICENSEE.
6. **Exclusion of Damages.** TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL MICROSURVEY, ITS LICENSORS, OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, PUNITIVE, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS OR OTHER DATA OR INFORMATION, OR FOR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) ARISING OUT OF OR IN ANY WAY RELATED TO THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE PRODUCT AND/OR SOFTWARE, EVEN IN THE EVENT OF THE FAULT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE), STRICT LIABILITY, BREACH OF CONTRACT OR BREACH OF WARRANTY OF MICROSURVEY, ITS LICENSORS OR ANY SUPPLIERS, AND EVEN IF MICROSURVEY OR ANY OF ITS LICENSORS OR SUPPLIERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. BECAUSE SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR

LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, THE ABOVE LIMITATION MAY NOT APPLY TO LICENSEE.

7. **Limitation of Liability.** NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT LICENSEE MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED ABOVE AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF MICROSURVEY AND ANY OF ITS LICENSORS OR SUPPLIERS UNDER ANY PROVISION OF THIS AGREEMENT AND LICENSEE EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR ALL OF THE FOREGOING SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY LICENSEE FOR THE PRODUCT AND ANY RELATED LICENSE OR MAINTENANCE FEES PAID BY LICENSEE. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS, EXCLUSIONS AND DISCLAIMERS (INCLUDING SECTIONS 5 AND 6 ABOVE) SHALL APPLY TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. LICENSEE ACKNOWLEDGES THAT (A) THE PROVISION OF THE PRODUCT AND SOFTWARE IS CONDITIONAL UPON MICROSURVEY EXCLUDING AND/OR LIMITING ITS AND ITS LICENSORS' AND SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY TO LICENSEE IN ACCORDANCE WITH THIS AGREEMENT, AND (B) THE EXCLUSIONS AND LIMITATION CONTAINED IN THIS AGREEMENT ARE FAIR AND REASONABLE IN ALL THE CIRCUMSTANCES KNOWN AT THE DATE OF THIS AGREEMENT.
8. **Indemnification.** Licensee agrees to defend, indemnify and hold MICROSURVEY, its affiliates, distributors, licensors, and suppliers harmless from and against any and all losses, damages, costs or expenses (including reasonable attorney's fees) (a) suffered by Licensee related in any way to the Product, Software, or this Agreement and/or (b) related to any claim or demand made by any third party in connection with or arising out of (i) any breach by Licensee of any of the terms and conditions of this Agreement, (ii) Licensee use or misuse of the Product or Software, (iii) Licensee violation of applicable laws, and/or (iv) Licensee violation of the rights of any other person or entity. MICROSURVEY reserves the right, at its own expense, to assume the exclusive defense and control of (but not liability for) any matter otherwise subject to indemnification by Licensee. Licensee will be liable to MICROSURVEY for reasonable attorney's fees in any such case.
9. **Support.**
 - a. **General.** Except as set forth in Section 9(b) (Website Support) and 9(c) (Contract Support), MICROSURVEY shall have no obligation under this Agreement to maintain or

support the Software. Licensee may contact MICROSURVEY to inquire about MICRO-SURVEY'S commercially available support and maintenance services provided pursuant to separate agreements. This Agreement shall not obligate either party to enter into any such separate agreement. Any updates or error corrections to the Software that may be provided to Licensee from time-to-time, if any, shall be deemed Software hereunder and shall be licensed to Licensee under the terms and conditions of this Agreement. If any such updates or error corrections are made available to Licensee, then Licensee shall promptly (a) implement such updates or error corrections, (b) cease using the earlier versions without such updates or error corrections, and (c) make such updates or error corrections available to the users of the earlier versions. Licensee shall be solely responsible for procuring all hardware and third-party software necessary to operate the Software.

- b. Website Support. MICROSURVEY will use reasonable commercial efforts to host and maintain a web site (the "Support Site") for the Software during its commercial life (as reasonably determined by MICROSURVEY) that will include some or all of the following features:
- A "Frequently Asked Questions" section with answers to common questions about the Software.
 - A searchable "Helpdesk" section with general user instructions and information about the Software.
 - A link to allow end users of the Software to download any bug fixes, error corrections or other updates to the Software that MICROSURVEY may make available through the Site.
 - "Contact MICROSURVEY" electronic response capability. MICROSURVEY will use reasonable commercial efforts to respond within two (2) business days to a customer inquiry received via this system. Answers to such inquiries will be added to the FAQ's, as appropriate.
- c. Contract Support. Upon mutual agreement in writing between Licensee and MICRO-SURVEY, or between Licensee and one of MICROSURVEY'S authorized reseller's, MICROSURVEY will provide contracted support services to Licensee as may be agreed upon and related to the Software.

10. Term and Termination.

- a. This Agreement is effective until terminated. Licensee may terminate this Agreement at any time, with or without cause, upon notice to MICROSURVEY. MICROSURVEY may terminate this Agreement for Licensee's breach of this Agreement.
- b. Upon termination of this Agreement, Licensee shall immediately cease all use of the Software and Documentation and return to MICROSURVEY all copies of thereof within five (5) days after such termination. Upon MICROSURVEY'S request, Licensee will certify in writing to MICROSURVEY that all such copies have been returned to MICRO-SURVEY. The following provisions of this Agreement shall survive termination or expiration of this Agreement: Sections 2(b) (Restrictions), 3 (Ownership), 5 (Warranty Disclaimer), 6 (Exclusion of Damages), 7 (Limitation of Liability), 10 (Term and Termination), and 11 (General).

11. General.

- a. **Assignment.** MICROSURVEY may assign this Agreement without notice to Licensee. Licensee shall not assign this Agreement or transfer any of the rights, duties, or obligations arising under this Agreement without the prior written consent of MICRO-SURVEY. This Agreement shall be binding upon, and inure to the benefit of, the permitted successors and assigns of the parties thereto.
- b. **Amendments; Modifications.** Notices of changes to this Agreement or other matters may be made to Licensee by displaying notices or links to notices to Licensee generally on the Site.
- c. **Governing Law; Forum; Attorney's Fees, Injunctive Relief.** The terms of this Agreement shall be construed and governed exclusively by the laws of the province of British Columbia, excluding the application of its conflict of law provisions and rules. Any dispute, controversy or claim between the parties arising out of or relating to this Agreement or a breach of this Agreement shall be settled pursuant to the terms of this Section 11(c) by arbitration before three neutral arbitrators (selected from a panel of persons having experience with and knowledge of the computer business), provided at least one of which arbitrators shall be an attorney, and administered by the Arbitrators Association of British Columbia in accordance with its Commercial Arbitration Rules in Kelowna, British Columbia. Any provisional or equitable remedy which would be available from a court of law shall be available from the arbitrators to the parties. Judgment upon the award of the arbitrators may be enforced in any court having jurisdiction thereof. The parties hereby consent to the non-exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the Province of British Columbia for any action (i) to compel arbitration, (ii) to enforce the

award of the arbitrators or (iii) prior to the appointment and confirmation of the arbitrators, for temporary, interim or provisional equitable remedies, and to service of process in any such action by registered mail, return receipt requested, or by any other means provided by law. The application of the United Nations Convention of Contracts for the International Sale of Goods is expressly excluded.

- d. **Severability.** The illegality, invalidity or unenforceability of one or more provisions of this Agreement shall not affect the legality, validity or enforceability of any other provision, and this Agreement shall be construed in all respects as if such illegal, invalid or unenforceable provision were deemed amended to achieve as near as possible the same economic effect as the original in a legal, valid and enforceable manner if possible.
- e. **Further Relationships.** Neither party is obligated by this Agreement to enter into any further business relationship after the termination or expiration of this Agreement.
- f. **Notices.** All notices under this Agreement shall be in writing, and shall be deemed given when personally delivered, when received if by nationally recognized courier, or three days after being sent by postage prepaid, certified or registered Canadian Mail, as applicable, to MICROSURVEY at MICROSURVEY's address as set forth herein or to Licensee at the address that Licensee provided upon entering into this Agreement, or such other address as a party last provided to the other by written notice.
- g. **Independent Contractor.** MICROSURVEY and Licensee are independent contractors. No partnership, joint venture, or other joint relationship is created by this Agreement.
- h. **Entire Agreement.** This Agreement represents the entire agreement between the parties relating to its subject matter and supersedes all prior representations, discussions, negotiations and agreements. All changes, modifications, additions or deletions shall be effective immediately upon notice thereof, which may be given by means including, but not limited to, posting on the Site, or by electronic or conventional mail, or by any other means by which Licensee may obtain notice thereof. Use of the Product and/or Software after such notice constitutes acceptance of such changes, modifications or additions. This Agreement may be amended at any time by mutual agreement of the parties.

Technical Support

MicroSurvey Software Technical Support is available to help you get the most out of your MicroSurvey program. The following information explains how to prepare for your call so that your inquiry can be answered promptly and accurately.

Please prepare yourself before you call for Technical Support

Take a few minutes before you place your call to check the printed documentation and the online help files to see if the answer is already at your disposal. Our Web site on the Internet can also save time. Please check it for assistance if you can. Please have the following information available if requested: Hardware model, version of the program, and your Technical Support Number.

Please make sure that you have all the steps you completed prior to your problem and can explain them to the technical support representative. We may ask that you forward a copy of your data to us if we cannot find the problem immediately.

MicroSurvey offers a 90-day complimentary support period to all of our registered users, starting the date of purchase. Introductory support is available weekdays between 8:00 am and 5:00 pm (Pacific Time) excluding holidays.

Yearly Support

For clients who have had their original 90-day complimentary support period expire and feel that they will need on going support over the next year, we have a Yearly Support Contact option available. This gives you the ability to contact us for technical support, as much as you require, and you pay a flat fee once a year. This option is not to be used in place of training but is to assist you on the occasions when you really need it. The charge for the Yearly Support Contract is to be billed and paid for prior to the support commencing. This rate is subject to change, call for current rates.

Electronic Support

MicroSurvey maintains and provides at no charge, our Internet Web site at the following address: www.mapscenes.com

This web site has sections on frequently asked questions, Technical Notes, Technical Specifications, and as required, free updates and program fixes, along with a lot of other helpful information.

Training

MicroSurvey Software Inc. can provide training to you, in your office or in a classroom situation (where facilities and numbers allow). MicroSurvey has training staff that will travel to almost anywhere and provide you with the professional skills you require to operate your MicroSurvey program. Please feel free to call and ask for a quotation or inquire about potential classroom situations. Your local dealer may also be able to setup or arrange a training session for you. Contact our head office for more information about training.

MicroSurvey Contact Information

Corporate Head Office

MicroSurvey Software Inc.
205 – 3500 Carrington Road
Westbank, BC V4T 3C1
Canada

Office Hours: 8:00 am to 5:00 pm (Pacific Time)

(Monday to Friday, except holidays)

Sales & Technical Support 1-800-668-3312

International Voice: +1 250 707 0000

Fax: (250) 707-0150

Internet

Website: www.mapscenes.com

Corporate Website: www.microsurvey.com

Support Helpdesk: www.microsurvey.com/helpdesk

General Information E-Mail: info@microsurvey.com

TABLE OF CONTENTS

MicroSurvey End-User License Agreement	3
Technical Support	10
MicroSurvey Contact Information	11
Table of Contents	13
Getting Started	23
Introduction	23
Hardware Requirements	23
Installing Evidence Recorder	24
Starting Evidence Recorder	25
Registration & Demo Mode	25
Activation	26
Available Modules	27
Run Demo Mode	27
Retrieve Lost Key Codes (passwords)	27
Technical Support	27
Project Manager	27
Project Review	29
Quick Start: Open Existing Project	29
Quick Start: New Project	32
Common Evidence Recorder Buttons	37
Evidence Recorder Project Files	38
Automatic Save	39
Data Entry (Extended Edit Fields)	39
Keypad	40
Distance Entry & Recall	41
Distance Entry	41
Distance Recall	41
Unit Modifiers	41
Distance Entry Examples	42

Using Math Operations	44
Direction Entry & Recall	45
Direction Entry	45
Direction Recall	45
Unit Modifiers	45
Direction Entry Examples	46
Using Math Operations	48
Main Interface	51
Main Interface	51
Display Toolbar	53
Observation Toolbar	54
Topo Toolbar	55
3D View Toolbar	57
Mini Toolbar	58
Instrument Toolbar	59
Target Height	60
Robotic Instrument Toolbar	61
GPS Toolbar	63
Map Select Toolbar	64
Points / Lines / Descriptions	67
Points	67
Point Toolbar	67
Select Point Toolbar	68
Point Averaging	69
Point Database	71
AutoMap Library	73
Notes	78
Feature List	79
Raw File Comment	82
Active Linework	82
Figures	84

Line Toolbar	86
Select Line Toolbar	87
Figure List	88
Using Active Figures	90
Figure Direction Marker	91
New Figure	92
Switching Active Figures	93
3-Point Arcs	94
Splines (Curvy) Figures	96
Closing Figures	97
End (complete) a Figure	98
Re-Activating Figures	98
Deleting Figures	99
Draw Option Defaults	100
Drawing Tool	102
Smart Tags	107
Main Menu	109
Main Menu	109
Project Manager	110
Settings Menu	112
Settings Menu	112
Options	113
Unit Settings	122
Instrument Selection	125
Coordinate System Settings	126
Select Horizontal Coordinate System	128
Add Predefined System	129
New/ Edit user-defined System	130
Automatic Backup	133
Localization (Site Calibration)	133
Additional Grid Shift Files and Geoids	133

Older Evidence Recorder Mapping Files	134
Keyboard Shortcuts	134
Project Information	136
Mapping Methods Menu	138
Mapping Methods Menu	138
Temporary (No Store)	141
Occupy Reference Point	141
Backsight Measure Modes	144
Backsight Summary	145
Move Instrument	147
Occupy Room	151
Map Point	158
Map Point (Auto Store)	159
Resection	159
Check Point	164
Check Backsight	165
Horizontal Angle Offset	167
Vertical Angle Offset	169
Distance Offset	171
Manual Distance	173
Manual Entry	174
Two Line Intersection	174
Line - Angle Offset	176
Line - Distance Offset	178
Line - Perpendicular Point	183
Trilateration	186
Baseline Offset	188
Vertical Scene Projection	189
Point Scanning	192
Mapping Tools Menu	194
Mapping Tools Menu	194

Store / Edit Points	195
Drawing Tool	197
Undo Last Saved Point	202
Raw File Viewer	203
RTCM: Transformation	204
Modify Control	209
Transformation Parameters	211
Calculations Menu	215
Calculations Menu	215
Traverse / Intersection	216
Inverse	219
Triangle Calculator	221
Coordinate (Geodetic) Calculator	223
Calculator	225
Function	226
Converting Units	228
Basic Mathematical Operations	228
Advanced Mathematical Operations	228
Data Manager Menu	231
Data Manager Menu	231
Point Database	231
Map Data Layers Manager	233
Surfaces	239
Surface Settings	242
Volume Calculation	244
Realtime DTM Surface	246
Creating a Realtime DTM in Evidence Recorder	246
Adding Breaklines to a Surface	248
Contouring	250
Import/Export Menu	252
Import/Export Menu	252

Import/Export Menu	254
Import/Export Menu	254
ASCII Coordinate File Import	255
ASCII Coordinate File Export	259
DXF File Import	262
DXF File Export	263
SDR File Export	264
Shapefile Export	265
Import / Export User Defined Coordinate Systems	266
Backups	266
About Evidence Recorder	267
About Evidence Recorder	267
Target Manager	269
Target List	272
New Target	273
Edit Target	274
Default Settings	276
Target List: Leica	278
New Leica Instrument Targets	279
Edit Leica Targets	280
Default Settings	282
New GeoMax Instrument Targets	284
Edit GeoMax Instrument Targets	285
Target List: GeoMax Instruments	287
Target Manager: GeoMax Instruments	288
Target Manager: Leica Instruments	292
Total Station Reference	296
Conventional Total Station	296
Robotic Total Station	297
Instrument Selection	299
Make and Model Settings	300

Total Station Profile	301
Model and Communication	302
Radio Configuration	304
EDM Settings	305
Search Settings	309
No Communication	311
Instrument Toolbar	311
Robotic Instrument Toolbar	312
Instrument Settings	314
Target Manager	316
Mapping Methods Menu	320
Mapping Methods Menu	320
Set Angle	323
Check Level	324
Basic Measure	325
Options	326
Scan Settings	326
Scan Settings - Type	326
Scan Settings - Resolution	327
Scan Settings - Distance Filter	328
Scan Settings - Video	328
Setup Video Streaming Connection	330
Scan Extent - Partial Dome	333
Video Scan Extents	334
Scan Extents Icons	335
Video Scan Workflow	337
Scan Complete	338
Scan Complete Options	338
Select GPS Profile	341
GPS Reference Profile	342
GPS Rover Profile	343

GPS Model and Communication	344
GNSS RTCM Transformation	346
RTCM Transformation Information	347
GPS Tolerance (Reference)	348
GPS Tolerance Modes (Rover)	349
Description	349
Masks	349
Standard Deviation	350
Point Tolerance	350
GPS Antenna Height	351
GPS Auto Recording	351
Overview - Reference Receiver	352
Select Reference Position Modes	353
GNSS Measurement Modes - Reference (Base) Receiver	353
Overview Reference Position Modes	355
Overview - Rover Receiver	357
Rover Measurement Modes	358
GNSS Measurement Modes - Rover Receiver	358
Rover Measurement	359
GNSS Measurement Mode Offset	360
pMeasurement Mode Local Transformation Point	360
Use For Local Transformation	360
Check Point	362
Electronic Bubble / Tilt Survey	363
Settings	364
Calibrate Sensors	365
Settings	366
GPS Toolbar	367
Correction Link	368
Correction Information	370
GPS Satellite Plot	370

GPS Satellite List	371
GPS Settings	372
Sensor Information	377
Position Information	377
Raw Data Logging	378
Command Console	379
Coordinate System Settings	380
Select Horizontal Coordinate System	382
Add Predefined System	383
New/ Edit user-defined System	384
Automatic Backup	387
Localization (Site Calibration)	387
Additional Grid Shift Files and Geoids	387
Older Evidence Recorder Mapping Files	388
Datum Grid Editor	388
Import / Export User Defined Coordinate Systems	392
Backups	393
Geoid Models	393
Grid Shift Files	394
RTCM: Transformation	394
RTCM: Transformation	399
Local Transformation	403
Local Transformation Example A	406
Local Transformation Example B	410
Local Transformation Example C	413
Connecting to Computer	421
Microsoft ActiveSync / Windows Mobile Device Center	421
Installing ActiveSync / Windows Mobile Device Center	421
Connecting ActiveSync / Windows Mobile Device Center	422
MicroSurvey Transfer	425
Synchronize with MapScenes	426

RAW File Reference	429
Raw File Record Types	429
Conventional Raw Data Records	429
GPS Raw Data Records	434
Index	439

GETTING STARTED

Introduction

MapScenes Evidence Recorder is designed for the Crime Scene or Accident Reconstruction Professional to provide unequaled simplicity and on-scene mapping performance, seamlessly integrated with MapScenes desktop software.

An easy to use interface helps new and advanced users to quickly access all the tools they need to complete their scenes accurately and as efficient as possible.

A graphical interface is the heart of the product; it helps the user see in real time their scene being created. You can quickly visually inspect the data you've gathered and be confident that you have all you need before leaving the scene.

Superior instrument support is what Evidence Recorder is all about. Drivers are available for connection to all major total station manufacturers, including new reflectorless and robotic instruments.

Once you've completed your scene, you can download it directly into our MapScenes desktop program. Literally, you can have a drawing including all your measurements, points, lines, and symbols in a matter of seconds.

Hardware Requirements

Evidence Recorder 10 may be installed on the following Windows CE, PocketPC, and Windows Mobile devices. We recommend that you purchase a compact flash sleeve for some of the devices and store your program and data files on the compact flash card. Some devices will lose data if you forget to charge the device for a few days. It is well worth the investment to have secure data!

Evidence Recorder 10 may also be installed on any Desktop, Laptop, or Tablet PC running Windows XP SP3, Windows Vista SP2, or Windows 7.

- **Juniper Systems Allegro CX** - Evidence Recorder installs to C_Drive by default which is secure.
- **Juniper Systems Allegro MX** - Evidence Recorder installs to secure RAM by default.
- **Juniper Systems Archer** - Evidence Recorder installs to secure RAM by default.
- **Juniper Systems Mesa** - Evidence Recorder installs to secure RAM by default.
- **MicroSurvey Tracker, Tracker Xtreme** - Evidence Recorder installs to SystemCF by default which is secure.
- **Nautiz X7** - Evidence Recorder installs to secure RAM by default.

- **Algiz 7** - Evidence Recorder installs to secure RAM by default.
- **Compaq iPAQ Pocket PC H4100/3600/3700/3800/3900** series or newer - Evidence Recorder installs to volatile RAM by default which is not secure; you should install the program to a storage card. 64 MB of RAM required.
- **Compaq iPAQ Pocket PC H3210 and H3215** - Evidence Recorder installs to volatile RAM by default which is not secure; you should install the program to a storage card.
- **HP iPAQ (Windows Mobile 2003 / 2003SE)** - Evidence Recorder installs to volatile RAM by default which is not secure; you should install the program to a storage card.
- **HP iPAQ (Windows Mobile 5 / 6)** - Evidence Recorder installs to secure RAM by default; a storage card is not necessary for persistent storage.
- **Leica RX-1250** - Evidence Recorder installs to StorageCard by default which is secure.
- **Sokkia SHC250** - Evidence Recorder installs to secure RAM by default.
- **Sokkia SHC2500** - Evidence Recorder installs to the SystemCF by default which is secure.
- **Sokkia SRX (onboard)** - Evidence Recorder must be installed to ROMDisk which is secure.
- **Symbol PDT 8100 Pocket PC** - Evidence Recorder installs to volatile RAM by default which is not secure; you should install the program to a storage card.
- **TDS Nomad** - Evidence Recorder installs to secure RAM by default.
- **TDS Ranger (Windows Mobile 2003SE)** - Evidence Recorder installs to volatile RAM by default which is not secure; you should install the program to Disk.
- **TDS Ranger (Windows Mobile 5)** - Evidence Recorder installs to secure RAM by default.
- **TDS Recon (Pocket PC)** - Evidence Recorder installs to volatile RAM by default which is not secure; you should install the program to Built-in Storage.
- **TDS Recon (Windows Mobile 5 / 6)** - Evidence Recorder installs to secure RAM by default.
- **Topcon FC-250** - Evidence Recorder installs to secure RAM by default.
- **Trimble TSC2** - Evidence Recorder installs to secure RAM by default.

Call MapScenes at 1-800-668-3312 or check our web site at www.mapscenes.com if your device is not listed here.

Installing Evidence Recorder

If you purchased a new data collector with Evidence Recorder 10 from MapScenes then Evidence Recorder comes pre-loaded on it.

If you are installing Evidence Recorder yourself onto an existing data collector, the first thing is to confirm that your hardware is supported by Evidence Recorder 10. If you're reading this topic then you probably already know if Evidence Recorder will run on your data collector. If you're not sure, you can refer to the [hardware requirements](#) topic or call our technical support department.

To install onto your data collector you need to make sure you have a [Microsoft ActiveSync or Windows Mobile Device Center](#) connection established between your computer and your data collector.

There are two ways that you can install Evidence Recorder onto your device: it can be installed from the CD that came with your purchase, or it can be downloaded from our website at www.mapscenes.com.

Starting Evidence Recorder

During install, shortcuts are created and will be located in either your Start Menu, or Start Menu | Programs, or directly on your desktop. Simply press the shortcut to start the program.

Auto Repair

Upon startup Evidence Recorder checks the registry for corruption, and also checks to make sure important system files are where they need to be for Evidence Recorder to run properly. If it detects any problems, it will automatically fix them for you.

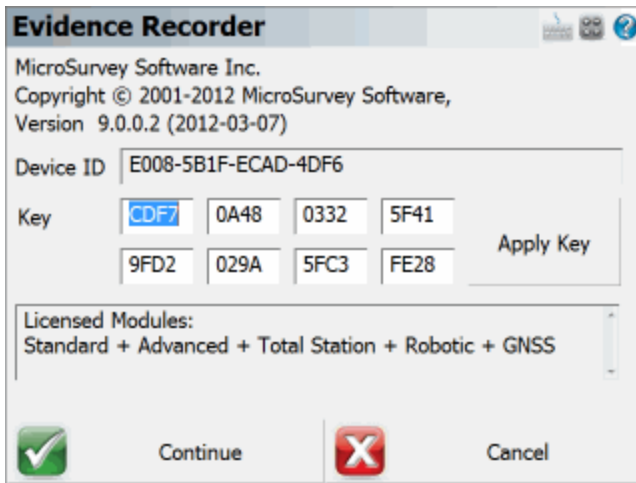
Hard Reset or Battery Drain

In these scenarios with other software, you would usually have to re-install your software. However, because Evidence Recorder can repair itself all you need to do is use the File Explorer or My Computer program on your data collector to browse to where Evidence Recorder is installed and find the programs folder. In there, if you run the "splash" program it will automatically fix all problems and re-install your shortcuts for you.

The splash program will be an executable file and it will include the word "splash" in it. For example on the Archer, the file is called **SplashPPC.exe**.

Registration & Demo Mode

When you start Evidence Recorder for the first time you will see the registration screen which will list the machine ID. This ID is unique for each device that Evidence Recorder is installed on.



Activation

To activate Evidence Recorder you need access to the Internet. With your purchase you should have received a GUID (Serial Number) that you will need along with the Device ID generated by Evidence Recorder.

A typical serial number will look something like the following:

D9C83164-FB0E-4713-B457-CE593EFEA296

A typical device id will look something like the following:

F008-F38C-4421-B482

Step 1

From a computer that has access to the internet, please visit the following web page:

www.microsurvey.com/register

Follow the instructions on the Evidence Recorder registration pages.

NOTE: Your serial number is valid for only one activation.

Step 2

Using the Key generated by the online registration system, enter the key values into Evidence Recorder.

When done, press the Apply Key. You will see the words "Activation Key Valid" and it will list the modules that were registered. The **Run Demo Mode** button will also change to say **Continue**.

More Help or Purchase

HELP: For online help, [click here](#).

To purchase Evidence Recorder 10 please call MapScenes at 1-800-668-3312.

Available Modules

There are several modules available for use on a data collector and they're as follows:

- **Standard** - Real-time Automated Linework, COGO Calculations, Traverse Closure and Adjustments, ASCII/DXF Import/Export, MicroSurvey Transfer, and more!
- **Total Station** - Adds non-robotic total station control.
- **GNSS** - adds RTK GNSS (GPS and Glonass) control, Coordinate Calculator, Helmerts' Transformations.
- **Advanced** - adds Surface Modeling, Roding, LandXML, GIS Attribute Collection, Pre-determined Area Calculations
- **Robotic** - adds Robotic Total Station control.

Run Demo Mode

To run Evidence Recorder in demo mode press the **Run Demo Mode** button.

In Demo mode, Evidence Recorder is limited to storing only 30 points each time it is run, but otherwise it is fully functional.

Retrieve Lost Key Codes (passwords)

The key code that was generated for a serial number can be accessed from the online registration page (www.microsurvey.com/register). Just enter the serial number you wish to retrieve the key code for and the key code and the device id it is assigned to will be displayed.

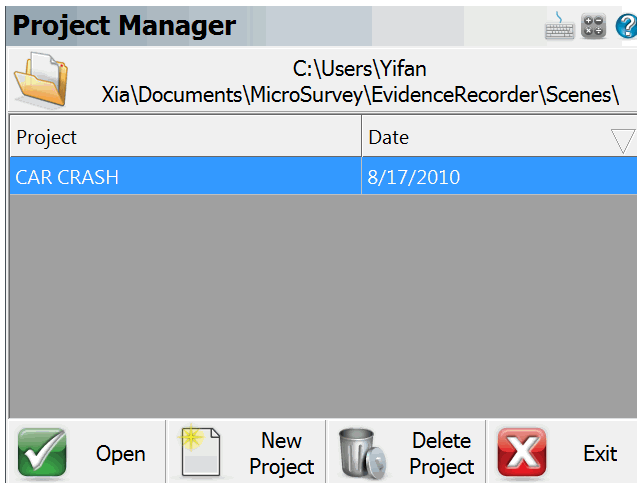
Technical Support

If you need help with Evidence Recorder please contact [Technical Support](#).

Project Manager

[Main Menu](#) | [Project Manager](#)

The Project Manager is used to create, open, or delete projects currently residing in your data collector. When you start Evidence Recorder this is always the first screen you will see.



By default the project manager will display the contents of the ...MicroSurvey EVR9\Scenes\ directory, which is the default location for all projects that you create. You can sort the list by project name or date by tapping on the column's header.

Scenes Folder

Press this button to specify a different project folder than the default. The default is...MicroSurvey EVR9\Scenes\. Once you set the directory it is written to the msurvey.ini file so it is used for all subsequent projects.

Open Project

To [open an existing project](#), simply select it in the list and press the **Open** button.

New Project

To [create a new project](#), simply press the **New** button. You will then see the new project screen which will allow you to enter a name, choose your automap library and set the units for the project.

Delete Project

To delete a project you first need to select it in the list and then press the **Delete** button. You will be asked to confirm that you really want to delete the project.

Notes:

- You can not delete a project that is currently open.
- Projects that have been deleted can not be restored.

Exit

To exit from the project manager press the **Exit** button.

Project Review

When you create a new or open an existing Evidence Recorder project you will always see the Project Review screen.

For most projects all you need to select is the Automap Library Template File that you want to use.

Select Automap Template File

This indicates the Automap Library Template that will be loaded into the project. You can change it by pressing the button and either choosing a different template library or creating a new blank library. Automap files contain pre-defined descriptions that can be used in Evidence Recorder. The template library that you select will be copied into the project's folder with a name of yourprojectname_auto-map.csv, and any changes that you make to the Automap Library will affect only the project library, not the template library.

Select Feature List File

Use this to select a feature list that you want to use with the project, for collecting GIS point attributes.

Select Raw Data File

This indicates the name of the raw file that is going to be used. You can select a different one by pressing the button and either creating a new raw file or choosing the one to open.

The Encrypted option indicates whether or not this raw file is encrypted. You can only change this option when creating a new project; once set, this option can not be undone. Encrypting the raw file ensures that users can not accidentally or intentionally edit their raw files with a text editor or other software.

Note:

At this time, no other applications besides Evidence Recorder 10 (or newer) and MapScenes 2013 (or newer) can read an encrypted raw file. Previous versions of Evidence Recorder and MapScenes will not be able to read Evidence Recorder encrypted raw files.

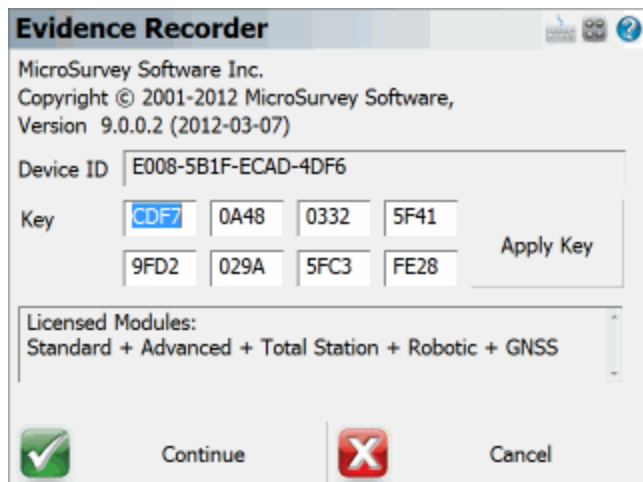
Modify Project Information

This option will take you directly to the [Project Information](#) screen, where you can enter notes about the project. Please see the Project Information topic for further information.

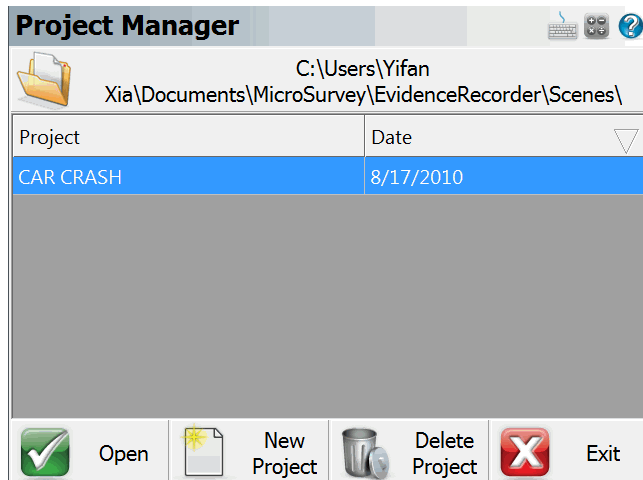
Quick Start: Open Existing Project

Start Evidence Recorder by running the icon contained either in your Start Menu or on the Desktop of your data collector.

If you start Evidence Recorder in demo mode, the first screen you will see is the [About screen](#), where you can enter a registration code to license your copy of Evidence Recorder. Press the **Run Demo Mode** button if you see this screen.



By default a project named HWY 97 is installed. For this example let's open it by highlighting it and pressing the **Open** button. You can also double tap the file name which will also open it.



You will then have to review the project files and decide what you want to load. Evidence Recorder checks in the project's msurvey.ini file to determine which files should be opened. Press **Continue**.

Open Project Files: FG Sample

Generate New Name

Active Raw File: ☐ Encrypted

☐ Copy Existing: ...

Project Automap:

☐ Use Template: ...

Feature File: ...

Continue Cancel

The main menu will then be displayed. Press the button to access the map screen, or use any of the available menu commands.

Project: Test

	Project Manager		Calculations
	Settings		Data Manager
	Mapping Methods		Import / Export
	Mapping Tools		About
	Map View		Exit

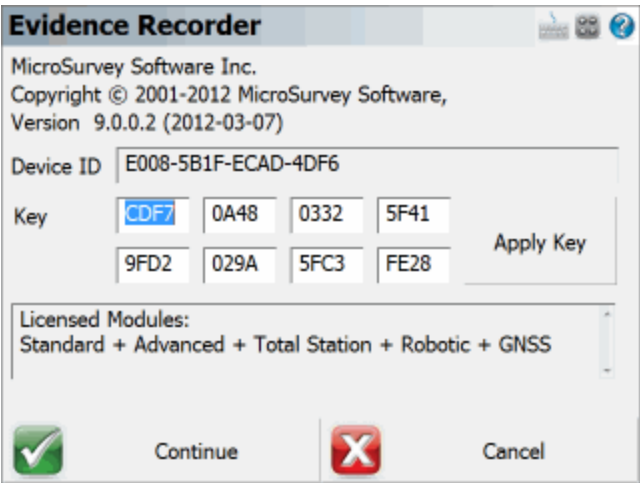
You may an option to reconnect the instruments on the instrument toolbar. If you are using the same equipment, press **Reconnect**.

The Map screen will then be displayed. You should now see your project, here is what the HWY 97 project should look like:

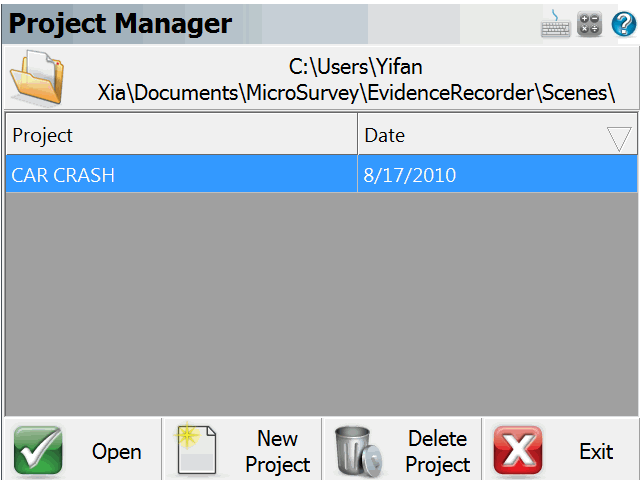
Quick Start: New Project

Start Evidence Recorder by running the icon contained either in your Start Menu or on the Desktop of your data collector.

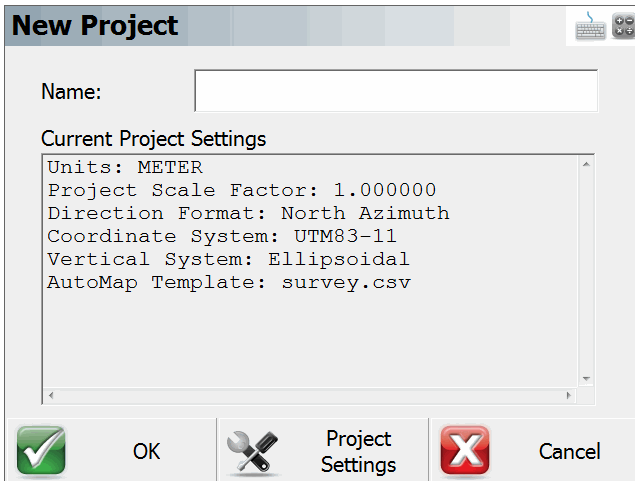
When you start Evidence Recorder in demo mode the first screen is the [About screen](#), where you can enter a registration code to license your copy of Evidence Recorder. Press the **Run Demo Mode** button if you see this screen.



Press the **New** button to create a new project.

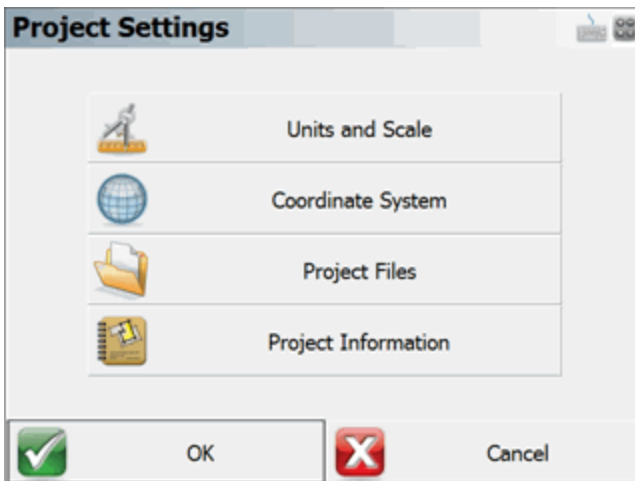


You will then have to enter a name for your new project. Review "Current Project Settings" displayed below. You can press **OK** to accept the settings and continue. If you need to change any of the settings, press **Project Settings** button,



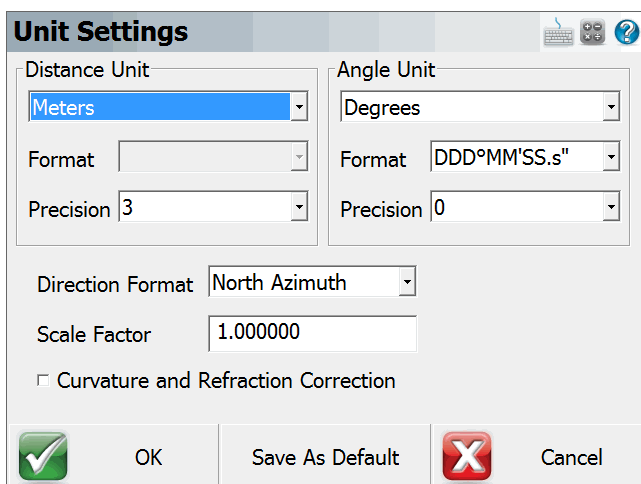
The "New Project" dialog box features a title bar with the text "New Project" and a standard Windows icon. Below the title bar is a "Name:" label followed by an empty text input field. Underneath is a section titled "Current Project Settings" containing a list of default values: "Units: METER", "Project Scale Factor: 1.000000", "Direction Format: North Azimuth", "Coordinate System: UTM83-11", "Vertical System: Ellipsoidal", and "AutoMap Template: survey.csv". At the bottom of the dialog are four buttons: a green checkmark icon labeled "OK", a wrench and screwdriver icon labeled "Project Settings", a red "X" icon labeled "Cancel", and an unlabeled "Cancel" text button.

Project Setting screen allows you to refine the various aspects of the project and save them as default for future projects if desired.



The "Project Settings" dialog box has a title bar with the text "Project Settings" and a standard Windows icon. The main area contains four settings categories, each with an icon and a label: "Units and Scale" (surveying icon), "Coordinate System" (globe icon), "Project Files" (folder icon), and "Project Information" (notepad icon). At the bottom are two buttons: a green checkmark icon labeled "OK" and a red "X" icon labeled "Cancel".

In the [Units and Scales](#) screen, you can specify the units for your project. Set them as desired, then press the **Save As Default Settings** button to remember these settings for all subsequent new projects..



Unit Settings

Distance Unit: **Meters**

Format: []

Precision: **3**

Angle Unit: **Degrees**

Format: **DDD°MM'SS.s"**

Precision: **0**

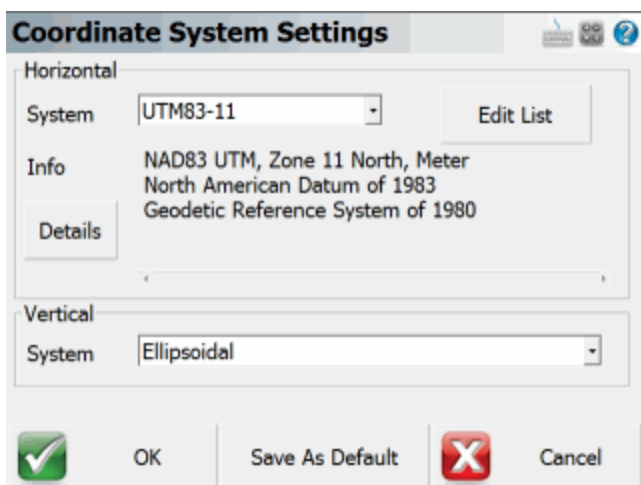
Direction Format: **North Azimuth**

Scale Factor: **1.000000**

☐ Curvature and Refraction Correction

OK Save As Default Cancel

The [Coordinate System](#) screen allows you to select Horizontal and Vertical coordinate systems. This will be used for Transformations and GPS Localizations.



Coordinate System Settings

Horizontal

System: **UTM83-11** Edit List

Info: NAD83 UTM, Zone 11 North, Meter
North American Datum of 1983
Geodetic Reference System of 1980

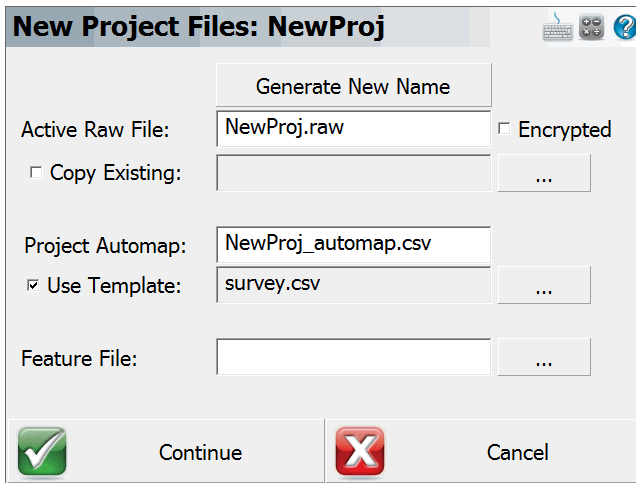
Details

Vertical

System: **Elipsoidal**

OK Save As Default Cancel

For the [Project Review](#) screen, this is where you can specify which Raw File, Automap Library Template File, and Feature List File to use, whether you want your raw file to be encrypted and/or appended.



New Project Files: NewProj

Generate New Name

Active Raw File: ☐ Encrypted

☐ Copy Existing: ...

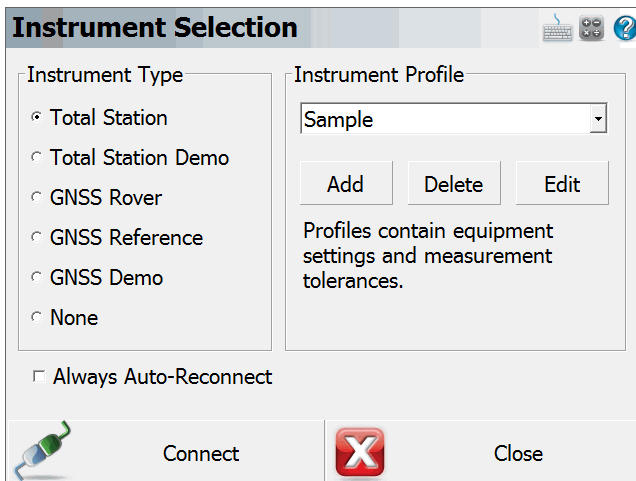
Project Automap:

☒ Use Template: ...

Feature File: ...

 Continue  Cancel

Press **OK** on the New Project screen. You will then see the [Instrument Selection](#) screen where you are prompted to select the instrument that you want to connect to. Let's set it to Total Station Demo and press **Connect** to continue. (Note, you will not see this screen if Evidence Recorder is running onboard your instrument.)



Instrument Selection

Instrument Type

- ☒ Total Station
- ☐ Total Station Demo
- ☐ GNSS Rover
- ☐ GNSS Reference
- ☐ GNSS Demo
- ☐ None

☐ Always Auto-Reconnect

Instrument Profile

Add Delete Edit

Profiles contain equipment settings and measurement tolerances.

 Connect  Close

If you selected Total Station or Total Station Demo, you will then see a message asking "**Would you like to create a new point now?**" Press **Yes** if you would like to which will open the [Store / Edit Points](#) screen. The default coordinates that are displayed are retrieved from the msurvey.ini file found

in the programs directory, and if you change these coordinates they will be remembered for next time. Selecting **No** will take you to the main interface.

Store Point

Point ID

1



Description

RP

List

X

100.000m

Y

100.000m

Z

100.000m

Note

Tap to enter note

Review Measurement

GIS Attributes

Advanced

 Store Pnt

 Cancel

If you chose to create a reference point in the step above, you will be asked **"Would you like to setup the instrument at the new point?"** Press **Yes** if you would like to do so which will open the [Setup Occupy Point](#) screen for measuring your backsight. You will now have 3 Backsight options. In most cases, select **Backsight by 1 Point or Direction** and press **OK**.

Orientation Setup

Instrument

Occupy Point

1

Instrument Height

0.000m

Backsight

Backsight Point



Backsight Direction



0°00'00"

Backsight Distance

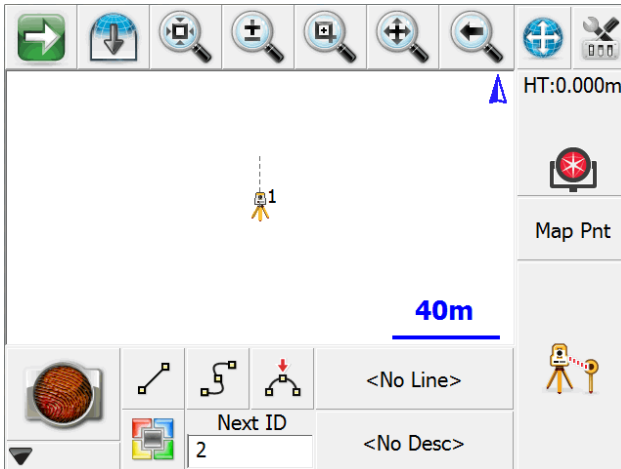
Target Manager

0.000m

 OK

 Cancel

Once you complete the setup routine and have measured your backsight, you will see your setup and backsight positions in the [map view](#).



Common Evidence Recorder Buttons

The Evidence Recorder interface has a consistent structure and to use it effectively the user needs to become familiar with several commonly used buttons.



Clicking on this button will open up the [keypad](#).



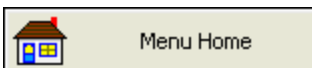
Clicking on this button will open up the Windows Start Menu. Available on Pocket PC and Windows Mobile devices only.



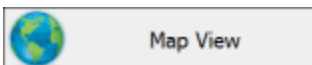
Clicking on this button will open up the [RPN Calculator](#).



Clicking on this button will open up the help page for whatever topic you are currently at. The help page will open up in an Internet Explorer window.



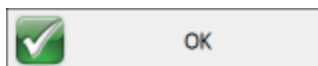
This button will take you back to the [main menu](#).



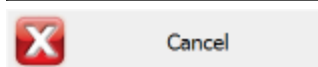
This button will take you back to the [map screen](#).



This button will save your project and close Evidence Recorder.



This button will accept the changes you've made and will return you to the previous screen.



This button will close the current screen and return you to the previous screen without saving any changes.



Pressing this will close the currently open toolbar and return you to the previous screen.



Pressing this will open the [Point Chooser toolbar](#).

Evidence Recorder Project Files

Every Evidence Recorder project will contain usually 7 files, but may contain more depending on what files you've exported or copied to the directory. Typically you will see that the file names will begin with the name of your project.

Filename.cdx	This is the index for the database file.
Filename.dbf	This is the database file that contains your coordinate information.
Filename.ini	This file contains information pertinent to your project.
Filename.raw or File- name.rae	This is the raw file that contains your observations. If the raw file is encrypted it will have a .rae extension. Note you can have more than one raw file.
Filename_fig- ures.dbf	This is the database for your figures in your project.
Filename_fig- ures.cdx	This is the index file for the figures database.
Filename_ automap.csv	This is the Automap Library for your project.

When you create a new project, the project name that you use will become the "folder" for your project files. By default, your project will be stored in the ...\\MicroSurvey EVR9\\Scenes\\ directory.

Note:

After creating a new project, do not later rename the folder containing your project's files or the actual files, doing so will cause Evidence Recorder to not recognize the folder as a valid project and you will not be able to open it.

Automatic Save

There are a few things to keep in mind when manually entering data in Evidence Recorder:

All stored data is automatically saved. There is no need for a Save function. Always close the program by going to the [Main Menu](#) and choose the Exit button to prevent loss of measurement data.

Input fields that are left blank are stored as undefined. For example, if you enter only a horizontal coordinate for a point and leave the elevation field blank, we do not automatically set the elevation as 0.000. The elevation remains undefined.

Data Entry (Extended Edit Fields)

Throughout Evidence Recorder you will see edit fields for entering various values. These types of fields are called Extended Edit Fields, and can be used not only for typing values, but can also launch related commands such as the keypad, calculator, point chooser, inverse tool, etc. This type of functionality is unique to Evidence Recorder.

You can control how these Extended Edit Fields will be triggered by changing the "Extended Edit Boxes" option in the [Options](#) screen to require a single tap, a double tap, or to disable them so that you can only type values into them.

Text Entry

For most text entry fields in the program, tapping in it will open up the [keypad](#).

On PocketPC and Windows Mobile devices you can select which keypad to display by changing the "SIP Type" option in the [Options](#) screen.

Points

When you see an extended edit field for a point id, tapping in it will open the [point chooser toolbar](#).

Distance and Angles

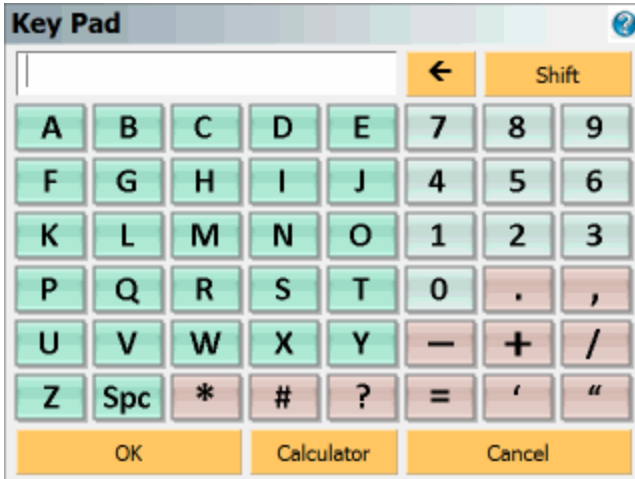
Tapping in other numeric fields such as those for directions and distances will open the [RPN Calculator](#), and some distance fields will open the [Inverse](#) tool.

Multi-function Fields

Some fields will display a pop up menu if multiple functions can be opened from that field, just select the desired function from the list.

Keypad

The keypad can be opened from any [extended edit entry field](#). This provides a method of easy text and numeric entry on devices that do not have a physical keypad but it can be used on any device.



Calculator

The RPN [Scientific Calculator](#) can be called up from the keypad by pressing the **Calculator** button. If you press the Calculator button, the value entered in the keypad entry field will be copied to the calculator's command line (Note, it must be a numeric value, alpha portions will be stripped off in the calculator) where it can be used for any calculations. When you are done with the calculator, pressing its OK button will return the result back into the keypad.

OK

Pressing the **OK** button will close the keypad, and set the entered value into the text field from which the keypad was opened.

Cancel

Pressing the **Cancel** button will close the keypad without setting anything into the text field from which the keypad was opened.

Keypad Settings

There are two important settings related to the keypad, which are both found in the [Options](#) screen.

SIP Type

Use this to specify which SIP keypad type you want to use, such as the full screen MicroSurvey alphanumeric keypad, the small PocketPC qwerty keypad, or the small PocketPC MicroSurvey

numeric keypad. Not all SIP types are available on all data collectors.

Extended Edit Boxes

Use this to control how you want to bring up the selected keypad when tapping in an edit box: either with a single tap, a double tap, or off. Users of devices with a keyboard should leave this set to Single Click, and users of devices without a keyboard should set this to Double Click. Setting this to Off disables both the keypad and any other commands that may be started directly from the extended edit field, such as the Point Chooser or Inverse Tool, so that edit fields can only be used for typing values from your physical keypad.

Distance Entry & Recall

Distance Entry

You can customize Evidence Recorder to work with the direction input of your choice. See the [Units & Scale](#) topic for details.

The number you enter is assumed to be in the same units as your project, unless a unit modifier is specified (see below). So 5.25 would be interpreted as 5.25 feet, or 5.25 meters depending on your project's unit setting.

Distance Recall

You can recall the distance between two points, by inputting in the form: <firstID>..<otherID> Example: 26..84 will be recognized as the distance computed between points 26 and 84. The distance will be returned in whichever format your units settings is set to.

Unit Modifiers

Recognition of the unit symbols m, ', ft, usft, ftus are supported, and can be used to override the project's unit settings.

Meters

You can specify that a distance is in meters by entering "m" after the value, for example 100m means 100 Meters, even if your project is in Feet. Therefore, if your project is in US Feet and you enter 100.00m in a distance field, you will see it automatically get converted to 328.08 feet.

Feet (International or US Survey)

The ' symbol will be interpreted as either International Feet or US Survey Feet, whichever units the current project is in. For example, entering 1000' will match the feet units that your project is in, so it can mean either 1000 International Feet or 1000 US Survey Feet. If your project is in meters, then the ' symbol is interpreted as International Feet.

Fractional Feet

When entering distances in a fractional format, use a ' symbol or a space between the feet and inches values to separate them. An " symbol is not required. For example, you can enter 10'6 or 10 6 which both mean 10'6". You can enter fractional inches by placing a space between the whole and fractional inches, and using a / symbol in the fraction. For example, 10'6 1/2 or 10 6 1/2 both mean 10'6.5". You can also enter decimal values, such as 10.5' to mean 10'6" or 10'6.5 (or just 10 6.5) to mean 10'6 1/2".

International Feet

You can specify that a distance is in International Feet by entering "ft" after the value, for example 1000ft means 1000 International Feet.

US Survey Feet

You can specify that a distance is in US Survey Feet by entering "usft" or "ftus" after the value, for example 1000usft and 1000ftus both mean 1000 US Survey Feet.

Distance Entry Examples

Project Units:	International Feet	
Format:	Decimal	
User Entered Value:	Interpreted As:	Result (always matches project units):
1000.23	1000.23 in project units	1000.23'
1000.23'	1000.23 in project units	1000.23'
1000.23usft 1000.23 usft 1000.23ftus 1000.23 ftus	1000.23 US Survey Feet	1000.25'
20.117m 20.117 m	20.117 meters	66.00'
10000m 10000 m	10000 meters	32808.40'
10 6 10'6 10'6"	10 feet 6 inches	10.50'
10 6 1/2 10'6 1/2	10 feet 6.5 inches	10.54'

Project Units:	US Survey Feet	
Format:	Decimal	
User Entered Value:	Interpreted As:	Result (always matches project units):
1000.23	1000.23 in project units	1000.23'
1000.23'	1000.23 in project units	1000.23'
10000.23usft 10000.23 usft 10000.23ftus 10000.23 ftus	10000.23 US Survey Feet	10000.23'
10000.23ft 10000.23 ft	10000.23 International Feet	10000.21'
20.117m 20.117 m	20.117 meters	66.00'
10000m 10000 m	10000 meters	32808.33'
10 6 10'6 10'6"	10 feet 6 inches	10.50'
10 6 1/2 10'6 1/2	10 feet 6.5 inches	10.54'

Project Units:	Meters	
Format:	Decimal	
User Entered Value:	Interpreted As:	Result (always matches project units):
1000.23	1000.23 in project units	1000.23m
1000.23'	1000.23 International Feet	304.870m
10000.23usft 10000.23 usft 10000.23ftus 10000.23 ftus	10000.23 US Survey Feet	3048.076m
10000.23ft	10000.23 International Feet	3048.070m

10000.23 ft		
20.117m 20.117 m	20.117 meters	20.117m
10'6	10 feet 6 inches	3.200m
10'6 1/2	10 feet 6 1/2 inches	3.213m
10 6	Not allowed, must enter units for feet such as 10ft 6, or 10usft 6.	
10 6 1/2	Not allowed, must enter units for feet such as 10ft 6 ½, or 10usft 6 ½.	

Using Math Operations

Math operators are now supported again. You are now permitted to use math operators in distance fields.

User Entered Value	Interpreted As	Result if Project Units Set to Feet	Result if Project Units set to Metric
3.5/2+1.2	3.5 divided by 2 plus 1.2	2.95 feet	2.950 metres
1..2/2+10 (assume 1..2 = 10)	((Distance from point 1 to 2) divided by 2) plus 10	15.00 feet	15.000 metres
8' + 3'	8 feet plus 3 feet	11.00'	3.353m
1'+2 3+1m	1 foot plus 2 feet 3 inches** plus 1 metre	6.53'	1.991m

****Note:** If your project is set to feet and you enter 2 3 (2 space 3), this will be interpreted as 2 feet 3 inches. This occurs if your project is set to either decimal or fractional feet.

You can also use the RPN Calculator to further manipulate distance values. For example, if you want to find the distance halfway between points 1 and 2, enter 1..2 into the distance field to recall that distance. Then double tap on that extended edit field to pull that recalled distance into the calculator, where you can divide the distance by 2 (or perform any other calculations with it). Then press the **"OK"** button in the calculator to copy the result back into the field you started from.

Direction Entry & Recall

Direction Entry

You can customize Evidence Recorder to work with the direction input of your choice. See the [Units & Scale Settings](#) topic for details.

To enter an angle using the format selected in your units settings, simply enter the angle. For example, 120.4530 means 120°45'30" if your project is in Degrees/Minutes/Seconds, 120°45.3' if your project is in Degrees/Minutes, or 120.453° if your project is in decimal degrees.

Direction Recall

You can recall the direction between two points, by inputting in the form: <firstID>..<otherID> Example: 26..84 will be recognized as the direction computed between points 26 and 84. The direction will be returned in whichever format your units settings is set to.

Unit Modifiers

You can always override your project's units setting by entering the bearing with the cardinal quadrant indicated before or after the direction. If there is no quadrant specified, then the input direction will be interpreted as an Azimuth.

Decimal Degrees

You can always specify that an angle is in decimal degrees by entering "d" after the value, for example 45.5083d means 45.5083° or 45°30'30".

Degrees, Decimal Minutes

You can always specify that an angle is in degrees and decimal minutes by entering "dm" after the value, for example 45.305dm means 45°30.5' or 45°30'30".

Degrees, Minutes, Decimal Seconds

You can always specify that an angle is in degrees, minutes, and decimal seconds by entering "dms" after the value, for example 45.3030dms means 45°30'30".

Bearings

To enter a bearing, use the cardinal quadrant letters (N, E, S, and W) before or after the angle. For example: NE60.4530, 60.4530NE, or N60.4530E means NE 60°45'30" if your project is in DMS, NE 60°45.3' if your project is in DM, or NE 60.453° if your project is in decimal degrees. It does not matter if you have spaces between the quadrant designation and the angle. You can also separate the degrees, minutes, and seconds values with a space. For example, N 60 45 30 E or N60.4530E both mean NE 60°45'30". You can of course also use any of the "d", "dm", or "dms" (or "g" or "r", see below) designators with a bearing entry, such as NE45.305dm to mean N 45°30'30" E.

Gons (Gradients)

You can specify that an angle is in Gons/Gradients by entering "g" after the value, for example 100g means 100 Gradients (equals 90 degrees).

Radians

You can specify that an angle is in Radians by entering "r" after the value, for example 1.57r and means 1.57 Radians (approximately 90 degrees).

Project set to Azimuth**Direction Entry Examples**

Angle Units:	Degrees	
Format:	DDD°MM'SS.s"	
Format:	Azimuth	
User Entered Value:	Interpreted As:	Result (always matches project units):
90.5016	90 degrees, 50 minutes, 16 seconds	90°50'16"
NE45.3030 NE 45.3030 N45.3030E N 45.3030 E 45.3030NE 45.3030 NE	North East quadrant, 45 degrees, 30 minutes, 30 seconds	45°30'30"
SE45.3030 SE 45.3030 S45.3030E S 45.3030 E 45.3030SE 45.3030 SE	South East quadrant, 45 degrees, 30 minutes, 30 seconds	134°29'30"
SW45.3030 SW 45.3030 S45.3030W S 45.303 W	South West quadrant, 45 degrees, 30 minutes, 30 seconds	225°30'30"

45.3030SW 45.3030 SW		
90.5016dm 90.5016 dm	90 degrees, 50.16 minutes	90°50'10"
90.5016d 90.5016 d	90.5016 degrees	90°30'06"
100g 100 g	100 gradians	90°00'00"
100.2345g 100.2345 g	100.2345 gradians	90°12'40"
3.141593r 3.141593 r	3.141593 radians	180°00'00"

Project Set to Bearings

The angle codes below provide versatile direction input.

When your project is set to **Bearings**, you are permitted to use numeric and alpha character codes for angle and direction input.

1 or NE = North East bearing

2 or SE = South East bearing

3 or SW = South West bearing

4 or NW = North West bearing

Angle Units:	Degrees	
Format:	DDD°MM'SS.s"	
Format:	Bearing	
User Entered Value:	Interpreted As:	Result (always matches project units):
90.5016	90 degrees, 50 minutes, 16 seconds azimuth	S89°09'44"E
NE45.3030 NE 45.3030 N45.3030E N 45.3030 E	North East quadrant, 45 degrees, 30 minutes, 30 seconds	N45°30'30"E

45.3030NE 45.3030 NE		
SE45.3030 SE 45.3030 S45.3030E S 45.3030 E 45.3030SE 45.3030 SE	South East quadrant, 45 degrees, 30 minutes, 30 seconds	S45°30'30"E
SW45.3030 SW 45.3030 S45.3030W S 45.303 W 45.3030SW 45.3030 SW	South West quadrant, 45 degrees, 30 minutes, 30 seconds	S45°30'30"W
90.5016dm 90.5016 dm	90 degrees, 50.16 minutes azi- muth	S89°09'50"E
90.5016d 90.5016 d	90.5016 degrees azimuth	S89°29'54"E
100g 100 g	100 gradians	S90°00'00"E
100.2345g 100.2345 g	100.2345 gradians	S89°47'20"E
3.141593r 3.141593 r	3.141593 radians	S0°00'00"W

Using Math Operations

You can then use the calculator to further manipulate the angle. For example, if you want to determine 1..2 then add 90 degrees, enter 1..2 to recall that angle. Then double tap in the extended edit field to pull that recalled angle into the calculator, where you can add 90 to it (or perform any other calculations with it).

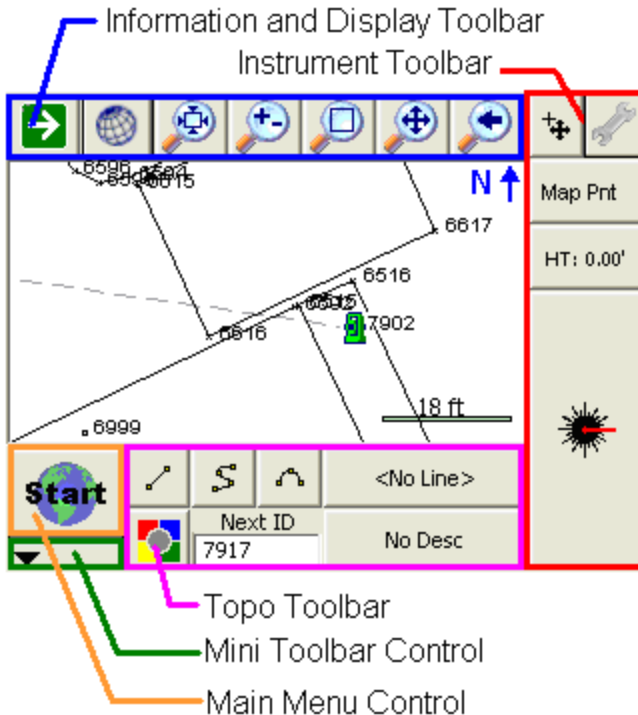
Note: You can perform advanced direction recall functions that include math operators directly in a direction field. For example, 1..2+90 is a valid entry. In this example the direction between points 1 and 2 will have 90 degrees added to it (if project is in degrees).

Math operations can also be done using the RPN calculator. Please refer to the [Calculator](#) section for more information on performing specific math operations.

MAIN INTERFACE

Main Interface

The Evidence Recorder interface is separated into various toolbars which contain common functions or tools that the user will use most often.



[Display Toolbar](#)

[Instrument Toolbar](#)

[Topo Toolbar](#)

[Mini Toolbar button](#)

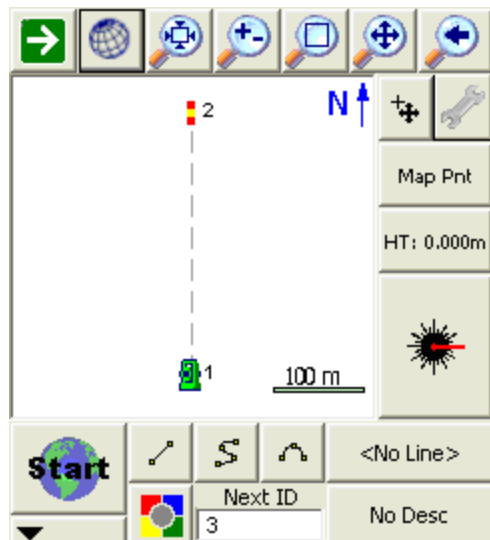
[Main Menu button](#)

Two Versions of the User Interface

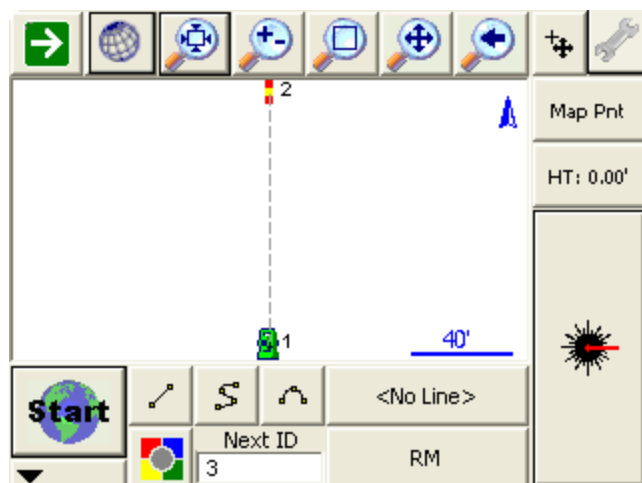
There are two versions of the user interface depending on which handheld device you're using. Some devices have a landscape screen orientation, and have the advantage of a physical keyboard. Others

have a portrait screen orientation, and utilize a virtual on-screen keyboard. Note that the function of both versions is essentially the same.

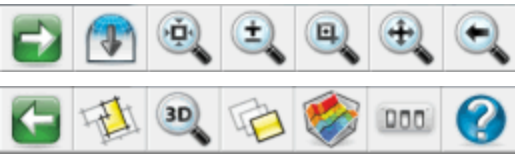
Portrait Display



Landscape Display



Display Toolbar



The display toolbar, located at the top of the map screen, is used to zoom, pan, change 3d perspectives, and for displaying information.



[Next, Previous](#)

These switch to the next or previous set of buttons.



[Observation](#)

This opens or closes the [Observation Toolbar](#). Many different functions in Evidence Recorder will display information in this toolbar, such as when you select a point on the screen, the point's coordinates are displayed in this toolbar.



[Zoom Extents](#)

This is a zoom extents which will zoom to the extents of your project.



[Dynamic Zoom](#)

This is a dynamic zoom. When enabled, drag from top to bottom of the screen to zoom out, or bottom to top of the screen to zoom in. Or, when enabled, you can also use the arrow keys on your keypad to zoom in and out in the map.



[Zoom Window](#)

This is a zoom window. When enabled, drag on the map screen to define a zoom window.



[Dynamic Pan](#)

This is a dynamic pan. When enabled, you can drag across your map screen to pan around your project. Or, when enabled, you can use the toggle or arrow keys on your keypad to pan around.



[Zoom Previous](#)

You can use this to zoom back up to 10 previous views. This includes zoom and pan changes.



[World Button](#)

It is used by the [staking](#) commands to hide unrelated points and lines in your map dur-

ing stakeout.



3D View

This opens the [3D View Toolbar](#).



Layers Manager

This opens the [Layers Manager](#) for managing visibility of layers in your database, DXF Layers, and Raster Images.



This opens the for importing and displaying DTM surface models (TIN, TGRID, or Contours) and for computing Volume Calculations.



Options

This opens the [Options](#) screen, and will automatically expand the Point Labels section for quickly turning on or off the ID, description, and elevation labels for your points.



Help

This opens the Help topic for the current toolbar(s) visible on your screen. If there are multiple toolbars visible, you are prompted to select the help file based on the position of the toolbar: Top, Side, or Bottom Toolbar. The help file will open up in your default web browser such as Internet Explorer .

Observation Toolbar

Display Toolbar | Observation Results button



You can access the Observation Toolbar by tapping on this icon in the [Display Toolbar](#).

Total Station Observations

Total Station users can toggle through the following information:

- Horizontal Angle (HA), Vertical Angle (ZA), and Slope Distance (SD)
- Horizontal Angle (HA), Horizontal Distance (HD), and Vertical Distance (VD)
- Northing (N), Easting (E), and Elevation (H)

If using a conventional (non-robotic) total station, the observations displayed in the toolbar will be from the last measurement taken with Evidence Recorder.

If using a robotic total station, the observations displayed in the toolbar will continually update in real time.

GPS Observations

GPS users can toggle through the following information:

- Latitude (Lat), Longitude (Lon), and Geodetic Height (h)
- Northing (N), Easting (E), Orthometric Height (H)
- Standard Deviation Horizontal (SD H), Standard Deviation Vertical (SD V), and Dilution of Precision (PDOP).
- Velocity (SOG) and Heading (COG) of the GPS receiver as well as current UTC Time.

If using GPS, the observations displayed in the toolbar will continually update in real time.

Display Size +/-

By tapping on the + and - buttons on the screen you can increase or decrease the displayed font size/text for easier viewing.

Page Toggle

The **Page** button allows you to swap between pages changing the displayed observation information.

Topo Toolbar

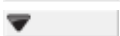


The Topo Toolbar is used to help automate linework as well as show you the description and next point number for your shot. Just like previous versions of Evidence Recorder you can control your linework by tuning on and off the line, arc and curvy toggles. There is also a user-programmable button that can be customized to start any command.



Main Menu Button

This button takes you into the [Main Menu](#).



Mini Toolbar Button

This button opens the [Mini Toolbar](#).



Draw Lines Button

This is used to toggle on and off the draw lines function. When turned on points will be connected with a line as you measure them.



Draw Curvy Lines Button

This is used to toggle on and off the draw curvy lines button. This function will draw a best-fit curve through your points as you shoot them.



Draw 3-Point Arc Button

3-Point arcs can be started using the same method as for a Line or Curvy Line.

However, to switch to 3-Point arc within an ongoing Line, select the **Draw 3-Point Arc** button before shooting the second of the three points that will define the arc (POC: Point on Curve). (Note that this is not the radius point). After measuring to the 2nd point, a dashed line will appear to illustrate that a 3-Point arc is in progress. Shoot the 3rd point and the arc will appear. The current draw option will change from Draw 3-Pt Arc to Draw Line after the third shot and the arc is complete.

Compound 3-point arcs are supported. Simply re-select the **3-Point Arc** button before measuring the next POC.



User Defined Button

This button can be customized to start any command. By default it opens the [Coordinate Database](#), but this can be changed in the [Keyboard Shortcuts](#) settings.



Next ID Field

This field displays the point number that will be assigned to your next shot. You can change it at any time prior to recording your shot. In a new project this field will always start at 1. If you open an existing project, then we scan the raw file for the last sideshot or store point and if we find one, we'll set the point number accordingly. For example, if the last sideshot in the raw file was to point 58, then the next time the project is setup we will set the next id to 59.

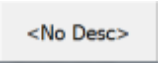


Active Line List Button

Much like the first line in the project, just select the desired description from the list and select the desired draw option before shooting the first point for the new line. When you press the button a screen will appear listing all your active lines. Selecting one of them and pressing the **OK** button will make it the current line.

The key to note is the display of <Start line> in the Active Lines list. Once the first point for the new line has been measured, the Active Lines list will set and display the new line as current.

To change the current line, simply select the desired line from the Active Lines list and continue taking shots to add to the selected line. All settings are stored for each line so there is no need to re-select the Description or draw option.

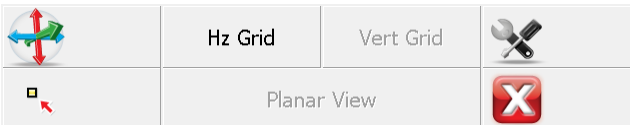


Description Selection Button

Use this button to set the current description that will be used when you shoot your points. When you press the description button you will see a screen listing all the descriptions read in from your [AutoMap Library](#). Select the description you want to use and press the OK button. You can type in the letters of the description which will automatically scroll to the descriptions matching your entry.

3D View Toolbar

The 3D View toolbar is used to help you view your project in a 3D perspective. You can also define a virtual grid that will displayed in the drawing and can be turned on and off.



To turn this feature on select the 3D View button on the [Display toolbar](#). When you do this the 3D View Toolbar will appear at the bottom of your screen. The buttons on the toolbar are described below.

3D View



When this is turned on you will be able to rotate your project in a 3D perspective. This tool is handy when used in conjunction with surfaces or [vertical projections](#). To return to plan view, close the 3D View toolbar and press the Zoom Extents button. It can also help you find points that have incorrect elevations.

Center on Point



Use this to center the view on the selected point. This will not change your current view rotation or zoom depth.

Hz Grid

Use this to turn on a horizontal grid that will be displayed in your drawing. You can set the grid spacing in the settings.

Vert Grid

Use this when using the [Vertical Projection](#) tool to turn on a vertical grid that will be displayed in your drawing. You can set the grid spacing in the settings.

Planar View

Use this when using the [Vertical Projection](#) tool to set the view perpendicular to the vertical plane, so that the wall or other projected plane is displayed face-on in the map view.

Grid Settings



Use this to set parameters that affect the grid spacing and origin. You can select the grid origin using a point chooser and specify lengths for the sides. You can also specify the interval for each axis.

Mini Toolbar



The mini toolbar control is found directly beneath the Main Menu button on the [Topo Toolbar](#). It is used to help you maximize your screen space by allowing you to control which toolbars you need to keep active in the main interface. When you press the mini toolbar control you will see the mini toolbar appear toward the bottom of the main interface.



Use this to display the full [topo toolbar](#).

Menu

Use this to display the [main menu](#).

Controls

Use this show or hide the [display toolbar](#).

Instrument

Use this to show or hide the [instrument toolbar](#).

Instrument Toolbar



When you use Evidence Recorder in either manual or total station mode, you will see the instrument toolbar beside the map area.

This toolbar allows you to control your [instrument settings](#), [EDM modes](#), [measurement modes](#) and [target heights](#).



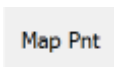
Auto-Center

This toggles the auto-center feature on or off. If turned on, whenever you take a measurement, the map screen will always re-center on the measured point.



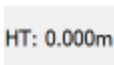
Instrument Settings

This opens the [instrument settings](#) screen where you can control specific settings for your total station such as EDM settings, Tolerance setting and Instrument Connection/Disconnection.



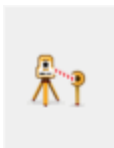
Measurement Mode

This opens the [Measurement Modes](#) screen where you can select what type of measurement you want to take. The current measurement mode is always displayed on this button - for example if you're using the distance offset mode it will display "Dist Off".



Target Height

This opens the [Target Heights](#) screen where you can change the current target height. The current target height is always displayed on this button.



Measure Button

This triggers your total station to take a measurement.

If you are using a robotic total station, please see the [Robotic Instrument Toolbar](#) topic.

If you are using GPS, please see the [GPS Toolbar](#) topic.

Target Height

Instrument Toolbar | HT Button

You can access this function by pressing the **HT** button on the [instrument toolbar](#).

Target Heights

Target Height - Current: 6.000'

Target Height - IR EDM: 6.000'

Target Height - RL EDM: 0.000'

Target Height - Temporary: 8.000'

☐ Use Temporary Target Height for Next Observation Only

OK Cancel

Target Height – Current

This is the current target height.

Target Height – IR EDM

Enter the target height that you will be using for measurement to a prism. When you select an IR edm mode, Evidence Recorder will automatically switch to this target height during the measurement.

Target Height – RL EDM

Enter the target height that you will be using for your reflectorless measurements. When you select any RL edm mode, Evidence Recorder will automatically switch to this target height during the measurement. Since most reflectorless shots require a zero target height, Evidence Recorder defaults this field to zero and can be altered by the user if needed.

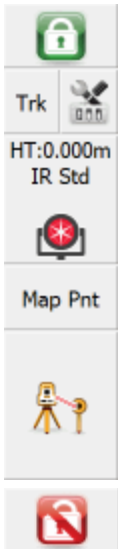
Target Height - Temporary

Use this to specify a one time only target height. In other words after you take your measurement it will revert back to the the previous target height automatically.

Note:

When the user changes the current target height a LS record will be written to the raw file.

Robotic Instrument Toolbar



When you use Evidence Recorder in robotic total station mode, you will see the Robotic Instrument toolbar in the map area. Like the Instrument Toolbar, this toolbar allows you to control your instrument settings, access the [Target Manager](#), change measure modes, and make a measurement. It also lets you search and lock onto the prism.

Lock Button

Evidence Recorder uses a button to trigger the instrument to search for the prism and lock onto it. You can also use this button to turn the lock off.

The button when not locked on a prism will display a **No Lock** status with a un locked icon. To search for the prism, simply press the No Lock button.



After you have pressed the No Lock button you will see a **Search** icon on the button while the instrument searches for your prism.

When Evidence Recorder finds a prism and locks onto it, the button will display a **Lock** icon. To stop the instrument from tracking, you can press the Lock button again to set it to a No Lock status.



If you're using multiple prisms and you want to force Evidence Recorder to look for another one when you're locked onto a prism, double tapping the Lock button will force it to search for the next available prism.

Also during a search you can cancel the current search by pressing the Stop Search button on the search progress toolbar.

Cursor Tracking



This turns the cursor tracking feature on or off. If turned on, the current position of the target will be displayed on the screen in

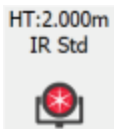
real time. You can only use this feature once you have specified an instrument setup using the Setup Occupy Point command.

Note: The cursor tracking position will use a coarse measurement to plot your position. When you are stationary, the cursor is a hollow triangle pointing towards the instrument. When you are moving, the cursor is a solid triangle pointing in the direction of travel.



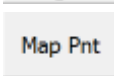
Instrument Settings

This opens the [Instrument Settings Toolbar](#). On this toolbar you can control specific settings for your total station such as EDM modes.



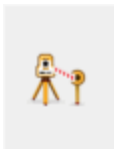
Target Manager

Press this button to access the [Target Manager](#). Here you can create, edit, copy, and delete targets.



Measurement Mode

This button will open the Select Measurement Mode screen. From here you can select what type of measurement you will be using. When you choose your mode, this button will display the mode you're using. For example, if you're using the Distance Off-set mode, the button will display "Dist Off".



Measure Button

Use this to trigger your total station to take a measurement.

If you are using a conventional non-robotic total station, please see the [Instrument Toolbar](#) topic.

If you are using GPS, please see the [GPS Toolbar](#) topic.

GPS Toolbar



Once the user has selected a GPS receiver and communication has been established, the GPS toolbar will appear on the [main interface](#).

NOTE: You will only see the GPS toolbar if you selected GPS Reference, GPS Rover, or GPS Demo as your instrument type. If you have selected a GPS Profile but are not yet connected to the receiver, most of these buttons will be disabled.



Auto-Center

Single-tapping this button will re-center the display on the current position of your receiver.

Double-tapping this button will set the system into an auto-pan mode where the display will always be centered on the current position. When active, single-tapping this button once more will disable the auto-pan mode.



GPS Settings

If you press this button while you are connected to a receiver, you will see the [GPS Settings](#) screen. At any time this button can be used to adjust or stop your GPS survey.

If you press this button without being connected to a receiver, you will see the [Instrument Selection](#) screen where you can edit your GPS profiles or connect to your receiver.



DOP Values

This displays the current DOP (Dilution of Precision) values. Pressing this button will cycle through the PDOP, HDOP and VDOP. The PDOP is the default setting as this is most often used to ascertain the quality of the satellite geometry.



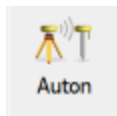
Satellite Plot/Satellite List

This shows the total number of satellites the receiver is currently using in its solution. Press this to view a [sky plot](#) of the current SVs visible to the rover, or to access the [Satellite List](#).



GNSS Measurement Modes Menu

This menu contains all the available measurement modes that can be used with your GNSS receiver. Please review the GNSS Measurement Modes topic for more details.



Measure

This is the measure button.

This button also indicates the current solution type. This tells the user if the solution is Fixed, Float, WAAS, DGPS or Autonomous. This button will also indicate to the user if the corrections from the reference station have been discontinued by denoting "No Link".

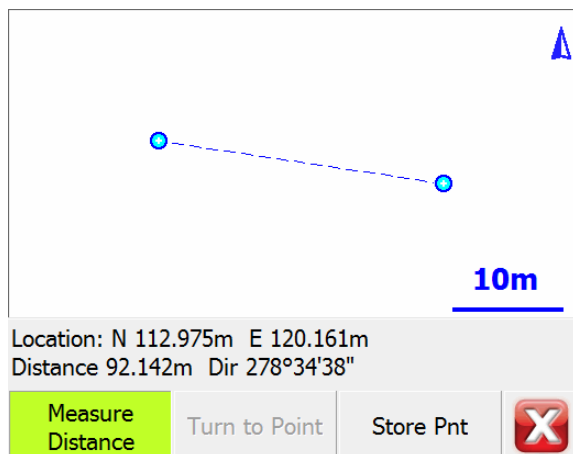
Please refer to the [GPS Measurement](#) topic for more information.

If you are using a conventional non-robotic total station, please see the [Instrument Toolbar](#) topic.

If you are using a robotic total station, please see the [Robotic Instrument Toolbar](#) topic.

Map Select Toolbar

When you tap on an empty spot in the map view, the selected point will be highlighted with a blue dot and the Map Select toolbar will appear along the bottom of the screen, showing the coordinate of the selected point.



Note, this toolbar functionality can be enabled or disabled via the Map Position Select check-box in the [Options](#) screen.

Measure Distance

When this is toggled on, subsequent taps will cause the blue dot to move to the new location, a second blue dot will appear at the previous location, and a dashed line will follow the entire path of the selected points. The total distance and the direction of the last segment will be displayed. To reset the measured distance, toggle this mode off then back on again.

Turn to Point

If you are using a motorized total station and have occupied a point in the project, this will cause your instrument to turn to the selected point (as indicated by the blue dot in the map).

Store Point

This will open the [Store Point](#) dialogue with the coordinates entered for the selected point, so you can store it into your project database.

POINTS / LINES / DESCRIPTIONS

Points

Evidence Recorder projects typically are comprised of points that have been imported, calculated or measured. These points are always stored in a file made up of the project name and will have an extension of DBF. DBF files can be viewed using a DBF reader or with Microsoft Excel.

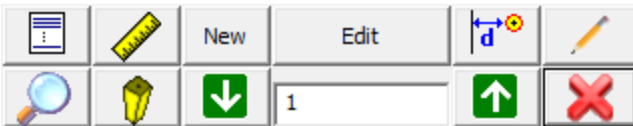
Point Labels

In the drawing area you will always see a node or dot that marks the coordinate location of the point. For each point you can control what is displayed on the screen such as the points number, elevation, description and note. To control the visibility of the labels, use the Options button on the [Display Toolbar](#).



Point Toolbar

At any time you can tap on an existing point to open the [Point Toolbar](#). This toolbar will contain common functions that are done with points. Please refer to the [point toolbar](#) topic for more information.



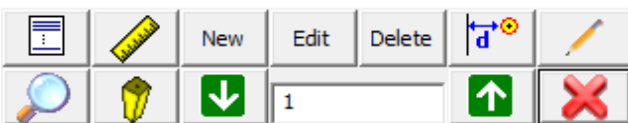
Editing Single Points

To edit a point you can tap on it which will open the [Point Toolbar](#). Press the Edit button to open the [Review / Edit Points](#) screen.

Working with Multiple Points

If you need to search, list, or edit multiple points at the same time you will use the Coordinate Database Editor. Please see the [Coordinate Database](#) topic for more information.

Point Toolbar



When you tap on an existing point in the drawing you will see the point toolbar appear near the bottom of your screen. The point toolbar contains functions that are frequently used on points in your project. Following is an explanation of what each button will do.



Draw Figure

Use this to draw a line between points or use it to continue an existing figure you've already started.



New Point

This will open the [store and edit](#) dialog and allow you to enter coordinates for a new point.



Edit Point

Use this to edit the coordinate value for the selected point.



Offset

This will open the Offset Tool.



Inverse Tool

Use this to measure the [inverse](#) between points.



Zoom to Point

This button when pressed for the first time will force the point to be centered on the screen. Subsequently, if you keep pressing it, it will continue to zoom in on the point.



Stake Point

Pressing this will help you stake the point that is currently selected and take you to the [Stake Points](#) screen.



Select Point

Use these two buttons to scroll up and down numerically through the points in your database.



Point ID

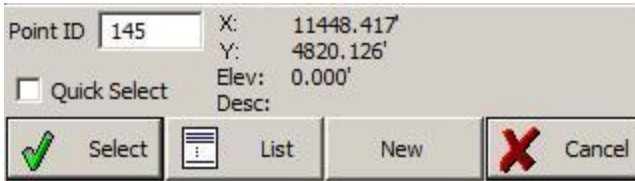
This displays the point id of the point you've currently selected.

Select Point Toolbar

The point chooser is a mechanism that is called by routines requiring a point number entry. You access it by selecting the point chooser icon next to point number fields, or by double-tapping in an extended edit point number field.



When select it you will see the point chooser toolbar open up towards the bottom of your screen.



The screenshot shows a point chooser toolbar with the following elements:

- Point ID:** A text field containing the value "145".
- Coordinates:** X: 11448.417', Y: 4820.126', Elev: 0.000'.
- Desc:** A label for the description field.
- Quick Select:** A checkbox that is currently unchecked.
- Select:** A button with a green checkmark icon.
- List:** A button with a list icon.
- New:** A button.
- Cancel:** A button with a red X icon.

Point ID

You can either type the Point ID into this field if you know what it is, or when you tap on a point in the map screen its point ID will be displayed here.

Quick Select

If Quick Select is turned on, then as soon as you tap on a point in the map screen you will be automatically returned to the routine you were selecting the point for. If Quick Select is turned off, then after you tap on a point in the map screen, the coordinate data of that point will be displayed, and you must press the Select button to get back to the previous routine.

Select

Pressing this will take you and your selected point back to the routine you were selecting the point for.

List

Use this to open a grid displaying all the points in your project database. From this list you can click on a point and when you press the OK button it will be inserted into the Point ID field.

New

Use this to open the [Store / Edit Points](#) screen. This will enable you to create a new point.

Cancel

Pressing this will take you back to the routine you were selecting the point for, without selecting the selected Point.

Point Averaging

[Main Interface](#) | [Edit](#) | [Points](#)

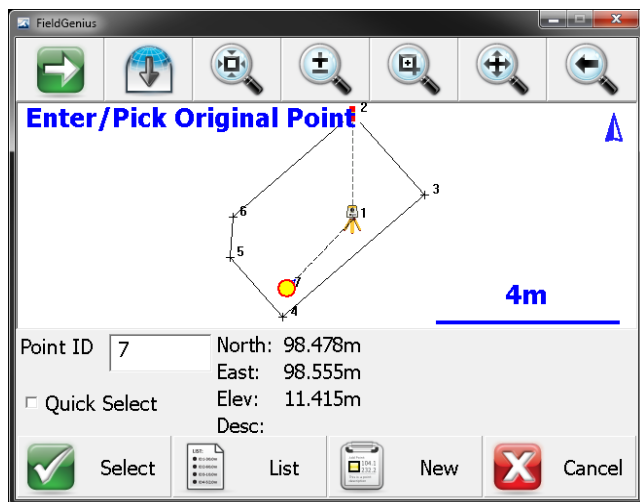
[Main Interface](#) | [Store Points](#)

[Main Menu](#) | [Data Manager](#) | [Point Database](#)

This routine allows the user to either select a number of points from within the Point Database, and then calculate the average of the coordinate values of the selected points or take repeated shots on a target and average the coordinate values. You can then create and store a new point based on the averaged coordinates.

Below is a screen shot taken after an observation has been completed and is awaiting to be stored. Note that there is an pull down menu for the user to choose to store this shot as an averaged point.

After the observation has been stored the next screen will prompt you to select the Original Point to which this point will be averaged too. If this is the first observation then the point should be stored as a Side Shot to begin the Point Averaging routine.



After a couple shots are stored as an Averaged PointEvidence Recorder will display the Standard Deviation of all shots averaged along with other statistic and allow the user to either Save the temporary observations for future use or Store the Averaged Point of all observations used in the routine.

FieldGenius

* Point Averaging 11

Use	Obs	dDistance	dElevation	Date/Time
☒	0	0.006m	0.000m	2015-07-15T17...
☒	1	0.006m	0.000m	2015-07-15T17...

Averaged Point: Standard Deviation:

 Northing: 101.706m StdDev N: 0.003m

 Easting: 100.532m StdDev E: 0.005m

 Elevation: 11.155m StdDev H: 0.000m

☐ Weighted Average

☒ Save
  Store Averaged
  Cancel

Observations can be toggled manually by pressing the Green Check Mark to select the best ones for averaging calculations.

The Weighted Average check box will only be active when using a GPS unit

Press the "SAVE" button to store all observations in the Averaged Point routine for future use.

Press the "Store Averaged" button to calculate a point position based on all Point Averaged observations currently being used.

All the temporary shots, observations used for the calculation, and final averaged position are stored in the raw file.

Point Database

Evidence Recorder can also calculate the averaged coordinates of multiple stored points directly from the Point Database.

When you enter the Point Database, tap on the green arrow button twice in the bottom toolbar until you see the **Average** button displayed. **Note:** The items will loop back around to the first item if you keep pressing the green arrow button.

Select multiple points by tapping on the screen and dragging a box around the items you wish to include in the averaging calculation.

Point Database

Point ID	X	Y	Z	D
1	100.000m	200.000m	10.000m	
2	100.000m	250.000m	15.000m	
3	150.000m	250.000m	7.000m	
4	150.000m	200.000m	12.000m	

 **Statistics** **Average** 

Point Averaging

Use	Name	Description	dDistance	dDirection
☒	1		35.355m	225°00'00"
☒	2		35.355m	315°00'00"
☒	3		35.355m	45°00'00"

Averaged Point
X: 125.000m
Y: 225.000m
Z: 11.000m

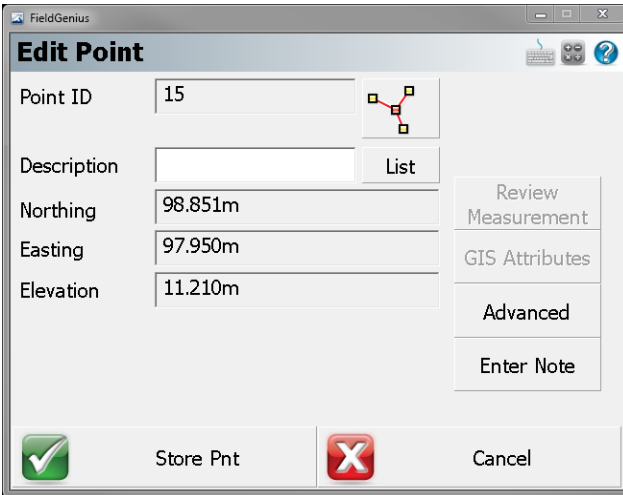
 **Store Point**  **Cancel**

In the Point Averaging dialog, the results of the averaging computation are displayed. You can uncheck the box in the **Use** column to disable/re-enable a selected point.

Press the **Average** button when finished. This takes you to the Point Averaging dialog.

The **Store Point** button takes you to the [Store Point](#) dialog.

The **Cancel** button returns you to Point Database dialog.



Edit Point

Point ID: 15

Description:

Northings: 98.851m

Easting: 97.950m

Elevation: 11.210m

List

Review Measurement

GIS Attributes

Advanced

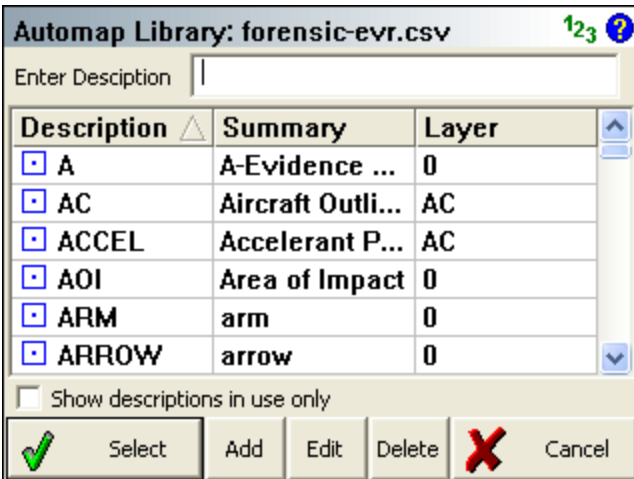
Enter Note

Store Pnt Cancel

Evidence Recorder also allows the user to select the Original Point from the Point Database and by pressing the "Edit" button there is a new button in the Edit Point screen that displays all the current Point Averaging observations assigned to the Original Point. So you can continue to add shots to it or if satisfied store a new averaged point location.

AutoMap Library

The AutoMap Library editor allows the user complete control over the visibility of points and lines based on the descriptions used to code the points. It also allows you to set attributes for the descriptions such as point and line colour.



Automap Library: forensic-evr.csv

Enter Description:

Description	Summary	Layer
☒ A	A-Evidence ...	0
☒ AC	Aircraft Outli...	AC
☒ ACCEL	Accelerant P...	AC
☒ AOI	Area of Impact	0
☒ ARM	arm	0
☒ ARROW	arrow	0

☐ Show descriptions in use only

Select Add Edit Delete Cancel

Enter Description

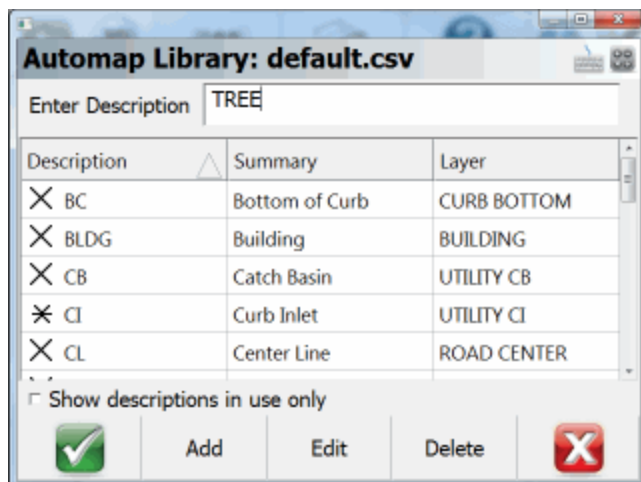
Use this field to auto scroll to description in your list. For example, typing the letters EV will scroll down to the EVID description. If you type a unique description and press enter, you will be prompted for whether you want to add it into the AutoMap Library or not.

Show descriptions in use only

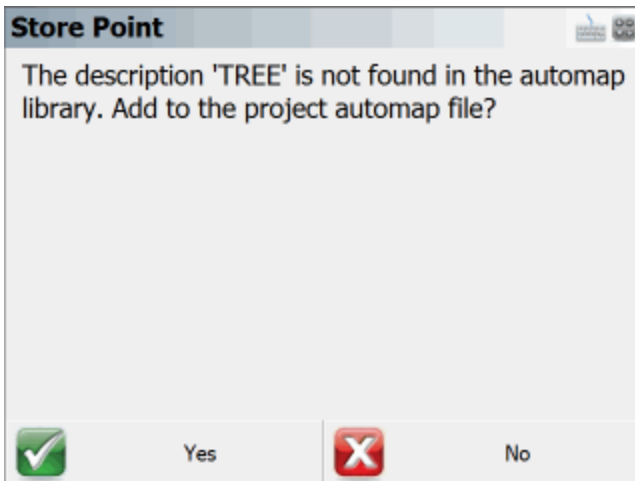
Use this to display only the descriptions found in your AutoMap Library that are used in the current project.

Adding Descriptions to the Library in Evidence Recorder

While you're working you can add descriptions to the AutoMap Library on the fly. When you enter a description that isn't in the library you will be prompted with a message asking you if you want to add it to your project's AutoMap Library file.



Note: This prompt can be turned off so Evidence Recorder always uses the new descriptions without adding them into the AutoMap Library file. To do this you need to make sure you have the **"Prompt New Descriptions"** toggle turned off in the [Options](#) menu.

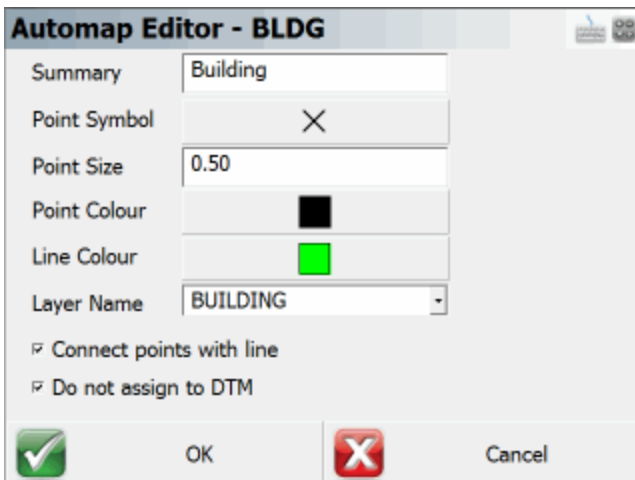


If you answer **Yes**, then the description will be added into the project's AutoMap Library file (not to the AutoMap Template file).

If you answer **No**, then the description will be used without adding it into the AutoMap Library. If you do not add it to the AutoMap Library, then you will not be able to set options such as defining the layer and colour of points and lines with this description.

Editing Descriptions in the Library in Evidence Recorder

The AutoMap Library editor allows you to edit properties for each description in the library. Pressing the Edit button will bring up the menu shown below for the selected entry:



These properties are stored in the library in specific columns. Please refer to the topic below about editing the library for more information.

Summary

You can use this field to summarize your description. For example, a description IP may have a summary Iron Pin.

Point Symbol

You can define a marker for a point. These markers are not automatically transferred back to the desktop and are not similar to CAD blocks or parts. They are simply point nodes that will be displayed in the map view to help distinguish different points on the screen. There are 27 different marker types. The symbol for each description is also shown on the AutoMap Library screen.

Point Size

This allows you to change the size of the marker. You will find that using a number of 1 is a good starting point. Adjust from there as needed.

Point Colour

This allows you to set the colour of the markers. You can choose from a list of 255 colours.

Line Colour

This allows you to change the colour of lines in your drawing.

Layer Name

This specifies the layer that will be used for lines and points with this description.

Connect Points With Line

If this is checked, when you select the description from the topo toolbar on the main display, the connect lines toggle will be turned on automatically. Use this for descriptions that typically are connected by lines such as an edge of road or ditch center line.

Do not assign to DTM

This is very useful for the creation of real-time surface models. If you toggle this ON, then these points will not be included in any DTM created with Evidence Recorder. Use this for descriptions that are not at ground level.

Deleting Descriptions from the Library from Evidence Recorder

The AutoMap Editor allows you to delete descriptions from the library. Pressing the Delete button will prompt you to make sure that you want to delete the selected entry. This will delete that entry from the project's AutoMap Library file, it does not affect the AutoMap Template file.

Editing an Existing Library outside of Evidence Recorder

The AutoMap Library is a very powerful feature in Evidence Recorder. When combined with our desktop products, your downloaded files can literally be imported, layers and symbols placed in seconds. For this topic we will concentrate on helping you work with and edit the AutoMap library using Evidence Recorder.

The Evidence Recorder AutoMap library is a comma delimited file that can be edited with Map-Scenes, with a text editor like Microsoft Notepad, or with a spreadsheet application like Microsoft Excel. Since not every Evidence Recorder user owns our desktop software we will discuss editing the file with Excel.

The first row in the file is reserved for the column header. Some of the columns are reserved for our desktop products, but the following columns are used in Evidence Recorder.

Column A = Description (String value)

Column B = Summary of Description (String value)

Column L = Connect Points with Line (1=Yes, 0=No)

Column M = Layer Name (String value)

Column O = Line Colour (Number 0-255)

Column Q = Line or Spline (0=Line, 1=Spline) *** This works in conjunction with Column L.

Column U = Marker Type (Number 0-26)

Column V = Marker Size (Number 0-10)

Column W = Marker Colour (Number 0-255)

Column X = Exclude from DTM (1=Yes/Exclude, 0=No/Include)

Column AF = Zone Number (Numeric Value)

Create New Library outside of Evidence Recorder

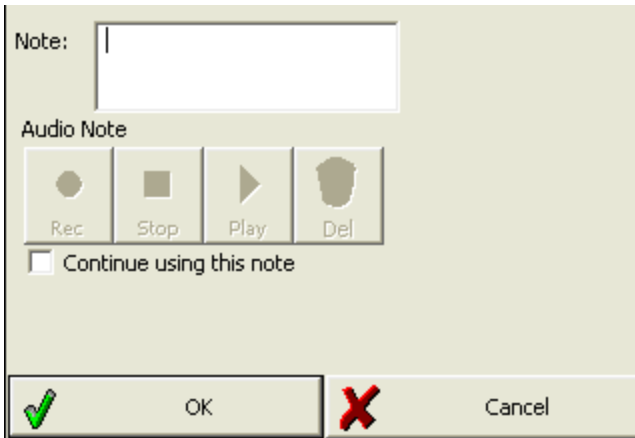
You can easily start a new library from scratch simply by creating a simple text file. In the first row add a header followed by your descriptions and summaries. You have to separate the values with a command and when you're done save the file with an extension of .CSV - an example filename might be CODES.CSV.

```
DESCRIPTION, SUMMARY
PIN, Iron Pin,
EC, Edge of Concrete,
EP, Edge of Pavement,
```

You can then copy the file to your ...\\MicroSurvey EVR9\\Scenes\\ directory. When you create a new project or open an exiting one, make sure to select it as the AutoMap Template File.

Notes

Use this to enter or record audio notes for your points. You can access the notes screen by pressing the **Notes** button on the [Store / Edit Points](#) screen.



Note:

Audio Note

Rec Stop Play Del

☐ Continue using this note

 OK  Cancel

Text Notes

You can type a note up to 32 characters in length and it will be stored in the project's DBF file. You can not enter more than this limit into the Note field.

When the file is imported into MapScenes, the note will appear in its own field, or can be appended to the point's description field.

Continue using this note: Use this if you want to use the note you just entered automatically for future points that are stored.

Audio Notes

Use this function to record and playback audio notes that are related to stored points. These notes will be transferred to MapScenes desktop software for playback in the office.

The notes will be stored in your project directory and will be automatically named for you. Example, if you recorded a note for point 2, a file would be created pnt2.wav. The file that is created is a standard windows WAV file that can be played by most audio players.

MapScenesdesktop software will automatically link to any audio note you recorded. This allows you to easily see which points have audio notes.

Recording and Playback Controls

Circle = record

Square = stop

Triangle = playback

Trash = delete

Note that not all handheld devices support audio notes. You must have a record and playback functionality, which for some units requires optional accessories.

To Store an Audio Note:

1. Tap the red circle to activate recording. Speak into your microphone to record the desired information. "This post is bent" etc.
2. Press the square button to stop the recording
3. To confirm your note, press the playback arrow, now green on color displays, and listen to your note

To replace an Audio Note with a new note:

1. Delete the existing audio note. You will be prompted to confirm the deletion.
2. Record a new audio note.

Photo Notes (Nautiz X7 Only)

Use this function to record photo notes for a point. **This option is only available on the Nautiz X7 data collector.** If you are using a Nautiz X7 data collector you will see two buttons for recording and deleting pictures.

Camera

The Camera button is used to take a picture. When you press it, it will start the onboard camera software and allow you to snap a picture. The picture will be saved in your current project with the filename **[point number].jpg**. The image quality and settings will be determined by the camera setup for the device. If the Camera button is greyed out, it means that a photo note already exists for this point, and you must delete it first if you would like to replace it. The photos will be automatically imported into your MapScenes desktop software for viewing in the office.

Delete Picture

The Delete Picture button will delete the photo stored for the point.

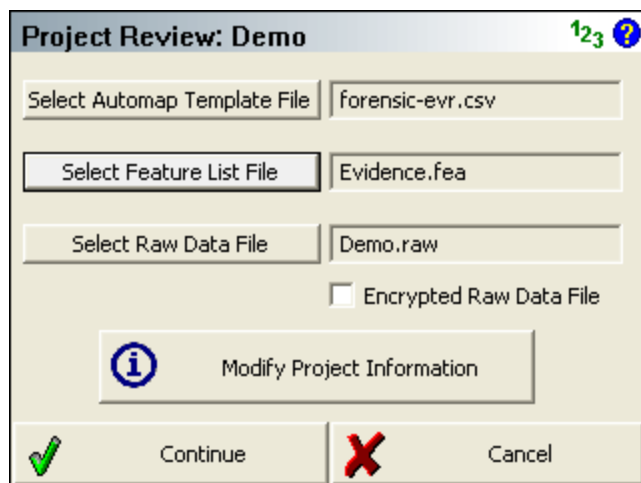
Feature List

A feature list is a tool built into Evidence Recorder so you can collect attribute data for your points. Feature files allow you to define what data needs to be collected about a point's attributes. You can define mandatory fields, default values, true/false items and select from list options. First you need to

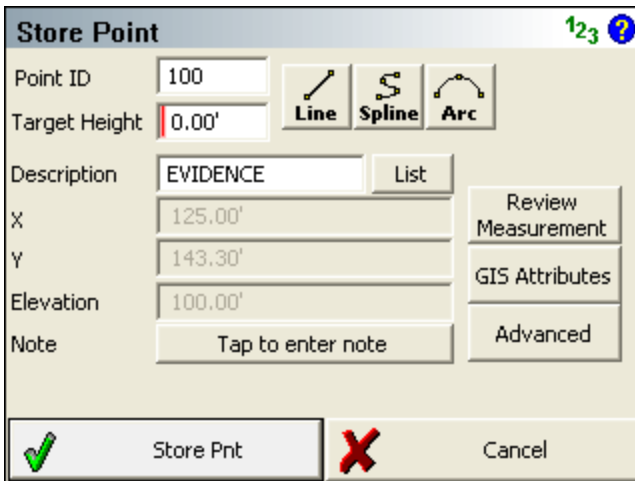
create a feature list file using the Feature List Editor which can be installed from your Evidence Recorder CD. Please refer to the help menu in the editor for more information on how to create an effective feature file.

Feature files have a **FEA** extension and they should be copied to your ...\\MicroSurvey EVR9\\Scenes\\ directory. There is no limitation to the number of feature files that can be stored on your data collector. Once you have created your file and copied it to ...\\MicroSurvey EVR9\\Scenes\\ you can open it when you get to the [Review Files Screen](#).

In this example we will open a Feature List File named Sample.FEA.



To collect attribute data for a point, you have to press the **GIS Attributes** button on the store and edit dialog.



Store Point 123 ?

Point ID: 100

Target Height: 0.00'

Description: EVIDENCE List

X: 125.00'

Y: 143.30'

Elevation: 100.00'

Note: Tap to enter note

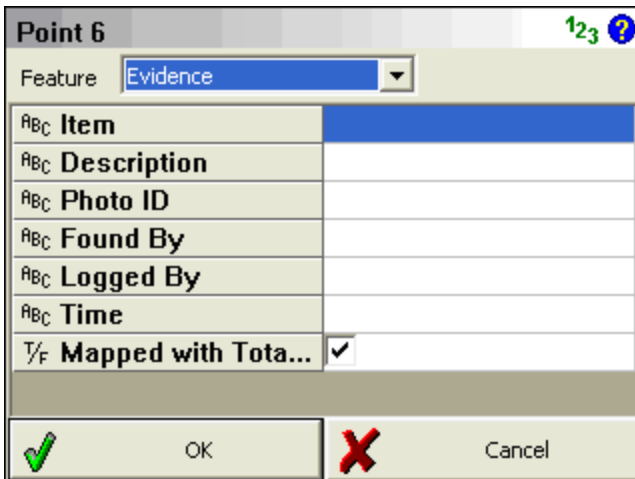
Review Measurement

GIS Attributes

Advanced

✔ Store Pnt ✗ Cancel

When you store a point during a measurement or edit one afterwards, you will see that you can select the **GIS Attributes** button. When you press this button, it will look at the point's description and check to see if you have a feature defined that matches. If it does, it will open up that feature for you automatically, in our example you will see that the Power Pole feature was opened.



Point 6 123 ?

Feature: Evidence

ABC	Item	
ABC	Description	
ABC	Photo ID	
ABC	Found By	
ABC	Logged By	
ABC	Time	
T/F	Mapped with Total	☒

✔ OK ✗ Cancel

As you can see, feature files help you collect consistent and accurate notes about a point you measured.

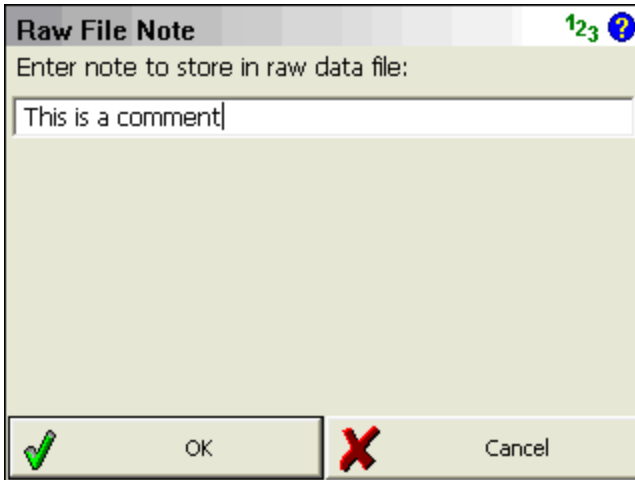
When you store the point, a file will be created in the project directory. The file will have the same name as the feature and will have a DBF extension. In our example, the file would be named EVIDENCE.DBF. Each point will be appended to the same database file.

The DBF database file can be opened with Microsoft Excel.

Raw File Comment

Shortcut Key - X

At any time you can enter a note that will be recorded to the raw file. Simply press the X key on your keyboard device which will open the Enter Comment dialog. Enter a comment that you want appended to the end of your raw file. You are limited to 99 characters.



If you view your raw file your comments will appear as shown in the following example.

| --This is a comment |

You can also enter comments into the raw file by using the [Raw File Viewer](#).

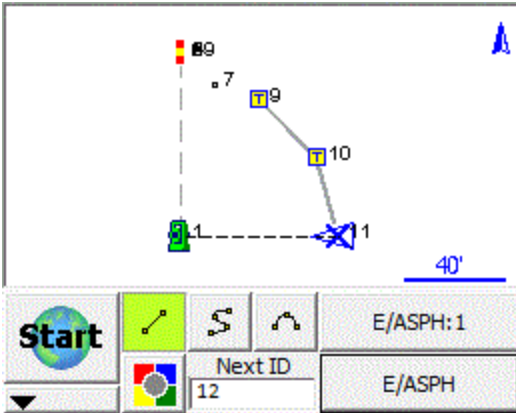
Active Linework

Evidence Recorder has Code-Free linework control in the field to eliminate the need to remember line codes. To activate linework on the fly while surveying, you simply choose the description you want and start taking shots! For MapScenes desktop users, line connectivity codes setup in the desktop Automap library will be used by Evidence Recorder. For more information see the [Draw Option Defaults](#) section.

Evidence Recorder uses the concept of Figures for handling of linework. Some software packages refer to these as "Chains".

At the bottom of the Evidence Recorder interface, you will see the Active Lines List button on the second row. When a new project is started, it will display [**<No Line>**] as the current, active line.

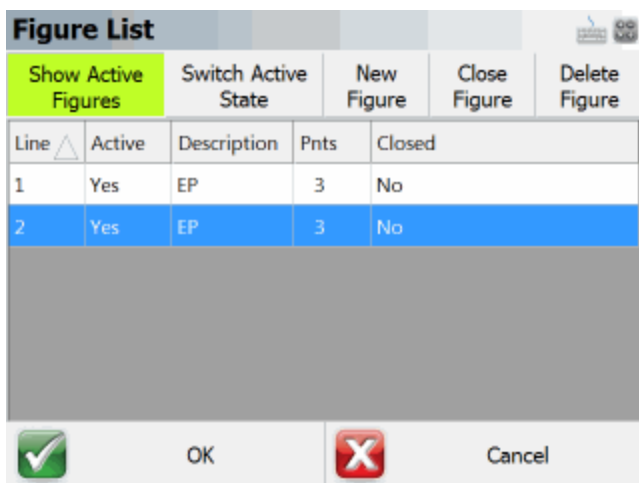
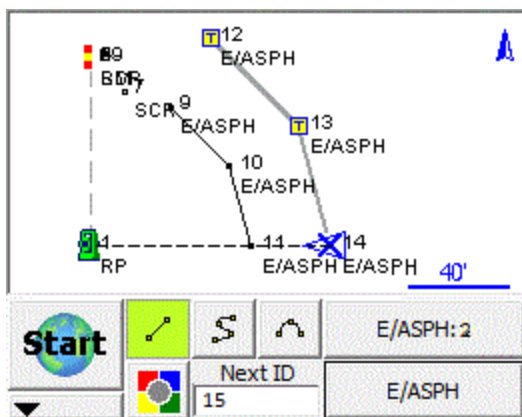
When a new line figure is about to be started, [**<Start line>**] will be displayed on the button. After the first point for a new line has been measured, the active line will be created, made current and displayed.



In the example shown, notice E/ASPH:1 on the button. This is the current Active Line. E/ASPH is the point description and 1 is the group number (added automatically). Since this is the first figure in the map, it is assigned group 1.

A Figure is a continuous series of Line, Curve and/or Arc segments. The Figure is identified by Point Description and a group number. Whenever a new line is started, a new Figure is created and added to the Active Lines list with an automatically assigned group number. The group number will increment by one when a previously used point description is used for a subsequent line. (Notice there are two E/ASPH lines in the example)

Furthermore, all linework in Evidence Recorder is handled in 3D.



- Automap Library

Figures

Tangents, arcs and curvy lines in Evidence Recorder are also called figures. Figures are created automatically for you as soon as you connect points in the drawing.

Figures can be created while you survey in realtime using our active linework or you can manually create the figure using the pencil tool.

Evidence Recorder Figures

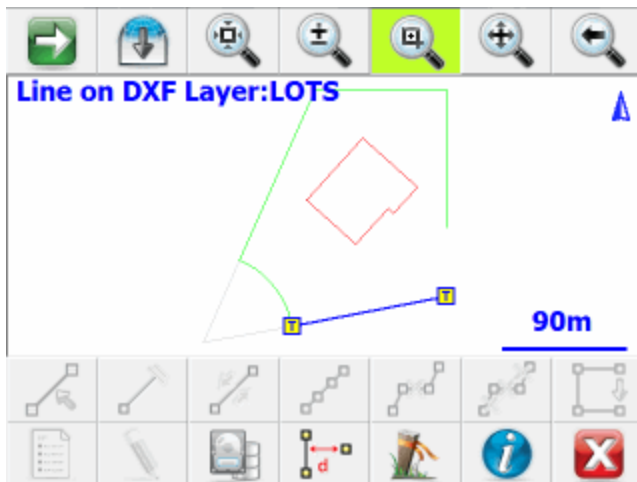
When you click on a figure the [Line Toolbar](#) will appear. You will also see bold text in the drawing area indicating what you selected.

DXF Linework

When you import a DXF drawing you will see all the linework that exists in the drawing. When you select a DXF line or arc you will see the [Line Toolbar](#) but everything will be greyed out except for the stake and perpendicular distance buttons. If you press the stake button or perpendicular offset to point button, they will open up their respective toolbars.

When you click on a DXF entity you will see bold text in the drawing area indicating that you picked a DXF line or arc, and it will display which layer it is on.

You can control the visibility of DXF layers through the [Layers Manager](#) screen.



Coordinate DXF Data

You can add coordinates to the DXF entity by pressing the Coordinate DXF Data button.



Information

You will see the inverse information based on the DXF entity you picked by pressing the Information button

Line Toolbar



When you tap on an existing line or arc you will see the line toolbar appear near the bottom of your screen. The line toolbar contains functions that are frequently used on line or arcs in your project. Following is an explanation of what each button will do.



Set Figure Current

Use this to make the current line or arc current in the Active Line List.



End Figure

Use this to mark a line as complete or finished.



Reverse Figure Direction

Use this to switch the direction of a figure so you can append to the opposite end.



Partition Line / Arc

You can partition (split) a figure or DXF line into smaller segments using this command.



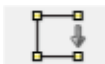
Delete Figure Segment

Use this to delete a segment from a figure.



Delete Entire Figure

Use the delete an entire figure.



Close Figure

Use this to close a figure so it finishes at the same point it started at.



Open Figure List

Use this to display the Active Line List.



Draw Tool

Use this to draw lines, points, and connect line work between existing points. This will open the [Draw Tool](#).



Convert Line to Spline

This will turn an existing figure that is comprised of straight lines into a curvy line, and vice-versa.



Offset Tool

Use this to open the offset tool.

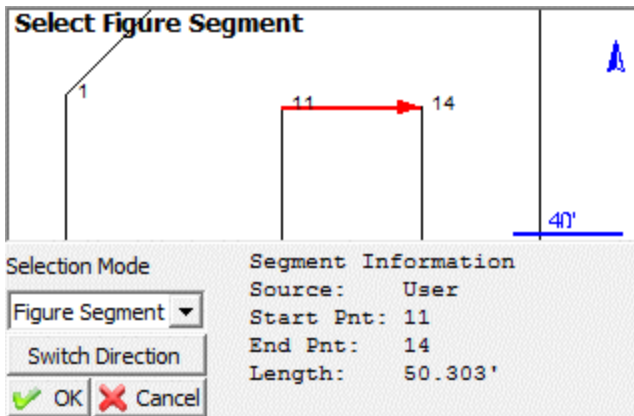


Information

This will display the inverse information of the segment you have selected, as well as the perimeter and area if it is part of a closed figure.

Select Line Toolbar

Various commands will use this toolbar to help you select a line.



Whichever Selection Mode you use, the selected line will be highlighted in red in the map screen along with a direction indicator. If necessary, you can press the **Switch Direction** button to reverse the start and end of the selected line. Press OK to accept the selected line and proceed to the next step.

Selection Mode: Figure/DXF

Pick this mode to select an existing figure or DXF entity by selecting the desired figure from the map screen. You can select any of the following:

- Figures containing lines and/or arcs (but not curvey splines)
- DXF lines, arcs, and/or polylines (but not splines, splined polylines, or fitted polylines)

Selection Mode: Figure Segment

Pick this mode to select an individual line or arc segment from a complex figure, by selecting the desired segment from the map screen. You can select any of the following:

- a line or arc segment from a Figure (but not a curvey segment)
- (line or arc segments from a DXF polyline cannot be selected)

Line Column

This is the group id assigned to the figure. Refer to the [Active Linework](#) topic for more information.

Active Column

If the figure is active, you will see the word **YES**. To make a figure not active, press the Switch Active State button.

Description Column

This is the name of your figure which will usually match the description of the first point that the figure is connected to.

Points Column

This is the total number of points that the figure is connected to.

Closed Column

If you [closed the figure](#) you will see the word **Yes**.

Show Active Figures

When this is selected (default setting) all of your active figures will be listed. You can select a figure that you would like to work on simply by selecting it in the list and pressing the OK button. If this is turned off, then all the figures in the project will be displayed.

Switch Active State

Use this to change the status of a figure to "finished". When this is done, it will no longer be displayed in the figure list of the Show Active Figures button is on. Once a figure is switched to a not active state, nothing can be added to it.

Figures that are not active, can be made active again simply by selecting the figure you want to use and pressing the Switch State button.

New Figure

Use this to create a [new figure](#) in the figure list.

Close Figure

Use this to [close a figure](#) so it will close back to the starting point.

Delete Figure

Use this to delete a figure that you have highlighted in the list. You can delete figures that are flagged as active, or not active. Review the [delete figures](#) topic for more info on deleting.

Using Active Figures

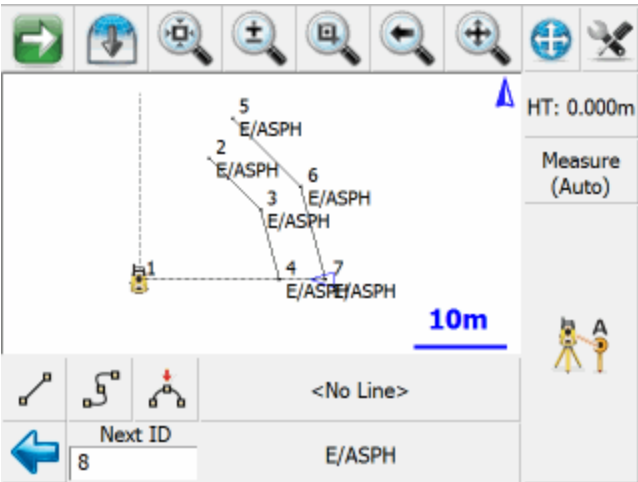
Active Linework Options

We have 3 Draw Options for Active Linework, selected from buttons that appear beside the Description and Active Lines drop down lists:

	Draw Lines button = Connect points with straight lines
	Draw Curvy Lines button = Connect Points with a best-fit curvy line.
	Draw 3-Point Arc button = Fit an arc through three measured points

Start the first Line in a Project

To start the first line in a new project, choose the desired point Description from the Description List and select the desired draw option before you start taking measurements. The Active Lines list will display <Start line> as shown. At this point, the next point measured will be the first point of a new Active Line using the E/ASPH Description. Use the measure button to measure the starting point for the new line.



After the shot to the first point for the new line is complete, the line will be added to the Active Lines list, identified by the current point description and an automatically assigned group number: E/ASPH:3. The group number is three, because this is the third figure using the description E/ASPH.

After the second point for this line has been recorded, the first segment will be created. From this point forward, simply continue taking shots to add to the now current Active Line: E/ASPH:3

Note the insertion of ":3", this is the group number. Re-use of the Description E/ASPH for a new line series in the current project will automatically increment the group number by one. This allows you track and store multiple active lines of the same description without the need for multiple entries in your AutoMap Library. For example, E/ASPH2, E/ASPH3, E/ASPH4...9 can now be replaced with a single E/ASPH entry.

Stop adding to a Line

If you wish to stop adding to the current line, simply deselect the current draw option (Line, Curvy line) before taking any more shots. After turning off the draw option, <No line> will display in the Active Lines list button.

Start a subsequent New Line

Much like the first line in the project, just select the desired description from the list and select the desired draw option before shooting the first point for the new line.

The key to note is the display of <Start line> in the Active Lines list. Once the first point for the new line has been measured, the Active Lines list will set and display the new line as current.

Change Description within an Active Line

You may change the description within one ongoing line. Simply choose a different description and continue taking shots. The ID of the Active Line will not change.

Figure Direction Marker

The current line in the map is always defined by a bold outline and a blue X at the end of the line. The blue X indicates the line direction so you know what end of the line the next measurement will be connected to.

You can see that the blue X is on point 29. After you take your next shot, it will be automatically connected to this point.



Once you select the figure, you will see the line toolbar. On this toolbar, select this button to reverse the direction. After you switch the direction, you will see the blue "X" move to the opposite end of the figure.



New Figure

Pre-selection of Line Descriptions

A list of Active Lines (Figures) may be pre-specified to aid in planning for a complicated project. Use the **New Figure** button on the Active Line List screen to specify a Line Description before taking any shots.

New Figure

New Figure will be

Choose Line Description:

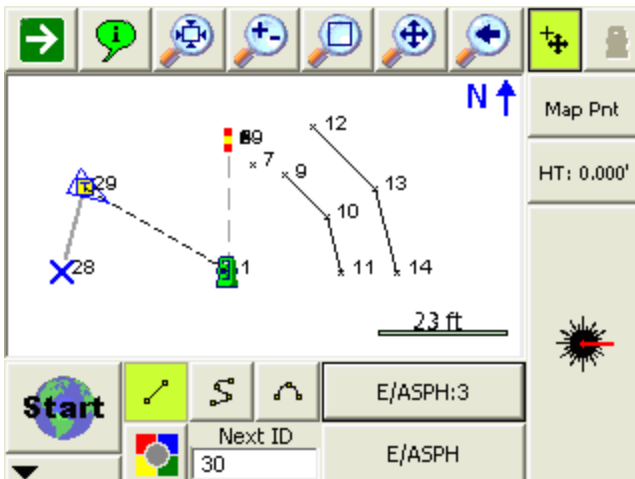
Enter a comment for this line:

 OK  Cancel

You have the opportunity to use a manually entered comment with this method but the new line will be linked to the selected Line Description. The comment will appear in the Active Lines list to aid correct selection of the line.

Switching Active Figures

You may work on several figures at once. As described, ongoing figures are listed in the [Figure List](#). You will notice that in this project there are three figures.



To change the current line, simply select the active line button which will open the Select Figure from List screen. In this example it is the "E/ASPH:3" button.

Figure List

Show Active Figures

Switch Active State

New Figure

Close Figure

Delete Figure

Line	Active	Description	Pnts	Close
1	Yes	E/ASPH	3	No
2	Yes	E/ASPH	3	No
3	Yes	E/ASPH	2	No

OK

Cancel

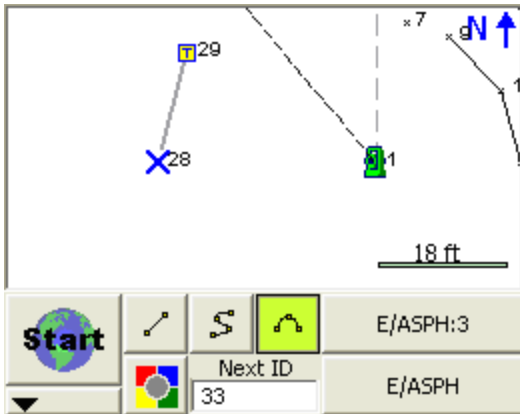
Select the desired figure from the list and continue taking shots to add to the selected line. All settings are stored for each line so there is no need to reselect the Description or draw option.

3-Point Arcs

To draw a three point arc on an ongoing Line, select the Draw 3-Point Arc button before shooting the second of the three points that will define the arc (POC). (Note that this is not the radius point). After measuring to the 2nd point, a dashed line will appear to illustrate that a 3-Point arc is in progress. Shoot the 3rd point and the arc will appear. The current draw option will change from Draw 3-Pt Arc to Draw Line after the third shot and the arc is complete.

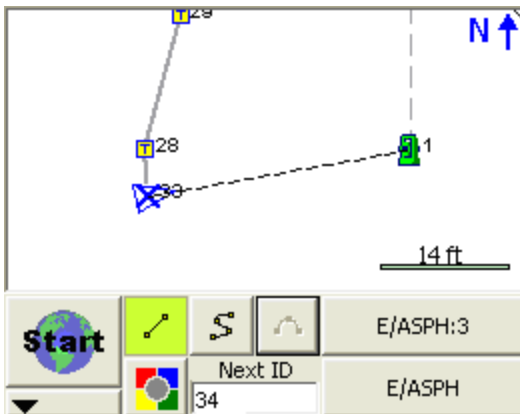


We are going to connect a three point arc to the E/ASPH:3 figure. Since we are shooting the mid point of the arc, you need to turn on the three point arc toggle.

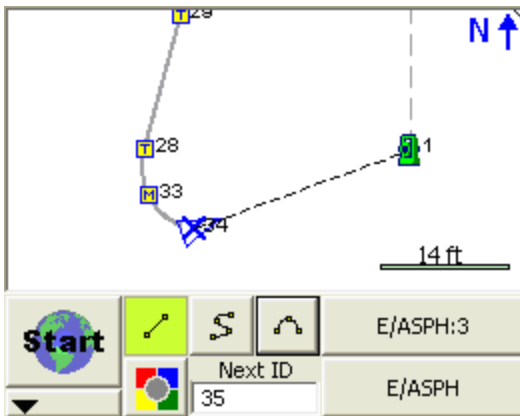


After you take the measurement, you will see the mid point drawn on the screen.

Since compound curves are not allowed, you will see that the three point arc toggle is disabled. Once you take a shot to define the end of the arc, it will become enabled again.



Once you finish measuring the third shot, you will see the arc drawn in the map.



Tip: Multiple three point arcs can be connected in series if needed.

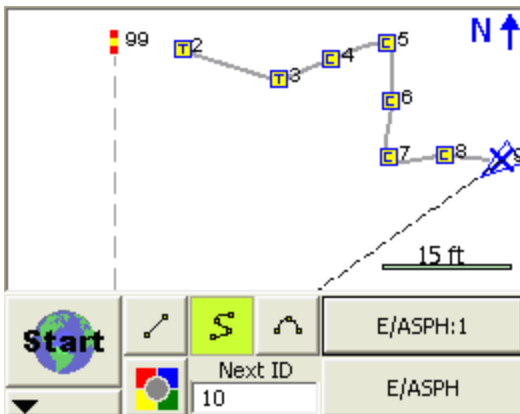
Splines (Curvy) Figures

Figures can contain splines. Splines are "best fit arcs" that are forced to go through the points that define the figure.

Splines can be attached to straight or three point arc segments.



To draw a spline, simply choose the spline toggle.



Changing Active Lines to Curvy Lines



Any Active Line series (figure) can be changed from a series of straight segments to a best-fit curvy line. Select the figure in the drawing to open the [line toolbar](#). On the toolbar press the **Line-Spline** button which will convert the line to a curvy line. If the line is already a curvy line, it will convert it to straight tangents between the points.

Note that any 3 point arcs or straight line segments will be lost when you use this function.

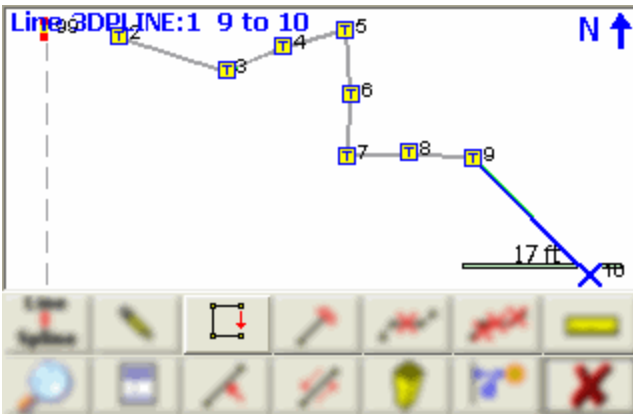
Complex Figure

Figures that contain straight segments, arcs and spline segments are said to be a complex figure.

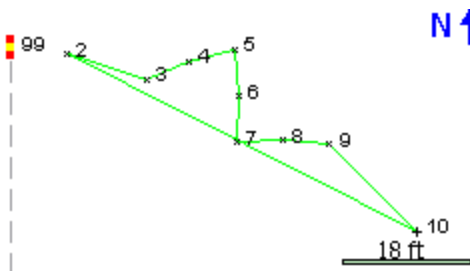
Closing Figures



To make a closed figure with an Active Line, select the **Close Current Line** button on the line toolbar. This will draw a line from the last point to the first point shot in the figure. The Line will be removed from the Active Lines list as it is now considered complete.



You will see that the figure now is closed back to the original start point.



In the active lines list, if you turn off the **Show Active Figures** you will see that the 3DPLINE figure is flagged as Active = NO and Closed = YES.

Figure List				
Show Active Figures	Switch Active State	New Figure	Close Figure	Delete Figure
Line 	Active	Description	Pnts	Closed
1	No	3DPLINE	10	Yes
1	No	No Desc	0	No






OK


Cancel

Alternatively, you can also close a figure in the [Figure List](#) screen by using the **Close Figure** button.

End (complete) a Figure



To mark a line as complete or finished, use the End Current Line button on the line toolbar. This will remove the line from the Active Lines list so that no more segments or arcs can be added.

This works similar to [closing a figure](#), but differs in that the figure will not be forced to close back on to the original start point.

Re-Activating Figures

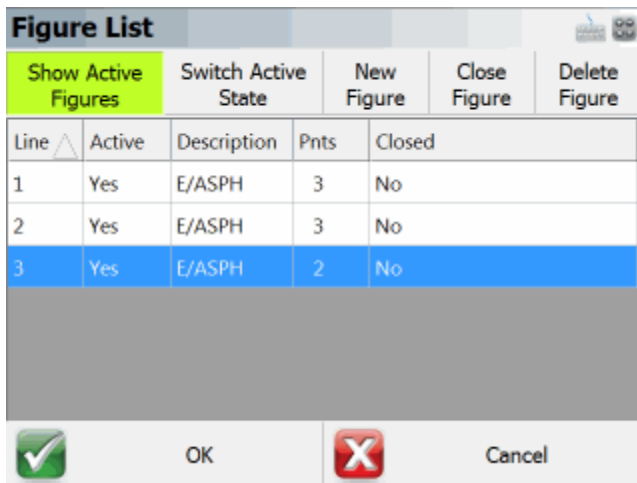
When a figure has been marked as complete, you can activate it again as follows:

From the Line Toolbar



You can visually pick on the map view the figure that you would like to re-activate. On the line toolbar, select the activate button which will make the selected figure active.

You can also open the active lines list and if you turn off the **Show Active Figures** button you will see the figures that are marked as not active. Simply select the figure you want and press the **Switch Active State** button which will set it to active.



To delete linework in your project simply select the figure you want to delete. When you select the figure, the [line toolbar](#) will open.

AutoMAP Line Work

☒ Connect Points

☒ 2D Connection

☐ 3D Connection

☒ Lines

☐ Polylines

:Width

In Evidence Recorder when the description is selected, the line toggle will be automatically turned on. As shown below, the line toggle has been automatically turned on when the E/ASPH description was selected from the list.



Curvy Lines

Choose the following to set the draw default for Evidence Recorder to Curvy Lines

AutoMAP Line Work

☒ Connect Points

☒ 2D Connection

☐ 3D Connection

☐ Lines

☒ Polylines

:Width

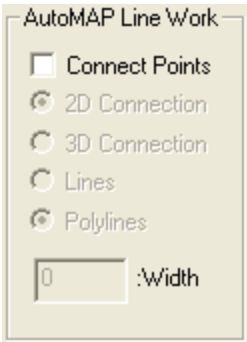
In Evidence Recorder when the description is selected, the curvey toggle will be automatically turned on.

As shown below, the curvy toggle has been automatically turned on when the E/ASPH description was selected from the list.



None

Choose the following to set the draw default for Evidence Recorder to None



As shown below, when the HUB description was selected, all line connectivity toggles are turned off.



Notes:

The 2D Connection and 3D Connection settings do not affect Evidence Recorder, we only make use of these settings as defaults in MapScenes. All Evidence Recorder figures are 3D. With Evidence Recorder data imported to MapScenes, there is no need to process Automap connections as Evidence Recorder figures are drawn automatically. For more details on the AutoMap Library, see your MapScenes Help System.

Drawing Tool

Main Menu | Survey Tools | Drawing Tool

Line Toolbar | Pencil button

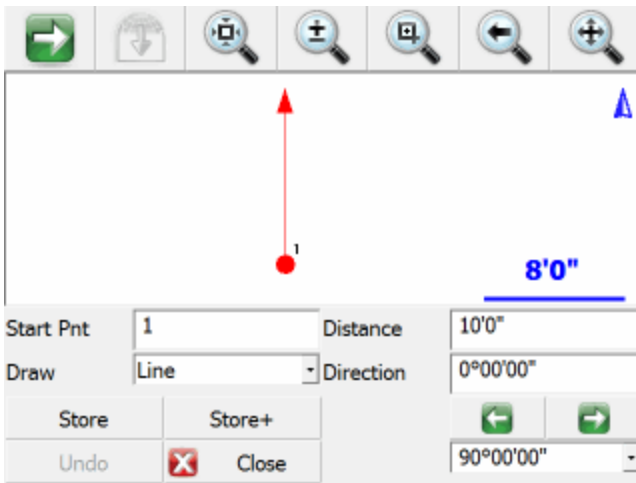
Point Toolbar | Pencil button

This tool allows you to quickly draw a plan such as a pad or a building footprint into your project, and is typically used to recreate plans from a paper hard-copy. You can use this to either calculate new points, or to connect existing points that are already in your project.

You must have at least one point in your project before you can start, to define the starting position for your plan. If a point does not yet exist (for example if this is the first command you run in a new project), you will be prompted to store a new point before you can proceed.

Line Mode

Use the Line draw mode to add straight line segments to your figure.



Start Point

Specify the start point for the new segment.

For starting a new plan, this should be set to an existing point in your project, typically a corner that you will begin drawing the plan from.

As you continue adding subsequent points/segments to your plan, you will see the Start Point field automatically advance for you.

Distance

Specify the length of the line segment you wish to draw.

Direction

Specify the direction (Azimuth or Bearing) of the line segment you wish to draw. The easiest way to do this is to use the right/left arrow buttons, which will increment/decrement the direction value by the amount shown in the pulldown list below the arrows. You can select a common angle from the choices in the list (90, 45, or 30 degrees), or you can type any value if you need to increment it by some other amount.

Store

After you have defined the segment to add, press this to store the new point and line segment into your project.

Store+

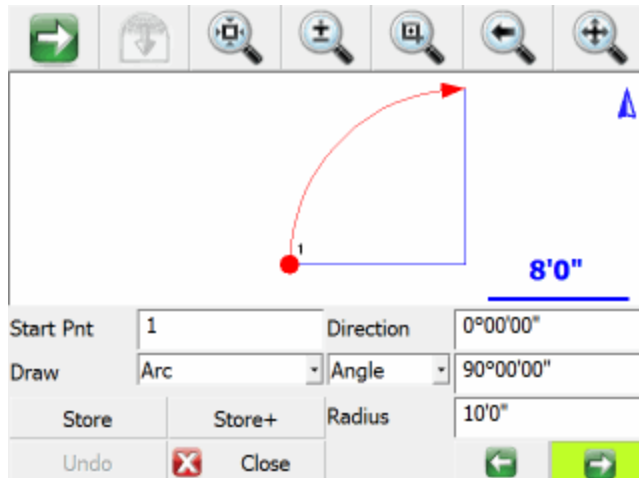
This does the same as the Store button, but you will see the [Store/Edit Point](#) screen. Use this to confirm or view the coordinates, or to specify a description.

Point by Line Mode

This is the same as the Line mode, except that when you press Store or Store+ it will only store the point, without drawing the line segment.

Arc Mode

Use the Arc draw mode to add arc segments to your figure.



Start Point

Specify the start point for the new segment.

For starting a new plan, this should be set to an existing point in your project, typically a corner that you will begin drawing the plan from.

As you continue adding subsequent points/segments to your plan, you will see the Start Point field automatically advance for you.

Direction

Specify the direction (Azimuth or Bearing) of the **tangent in** to the arc segment you wish to draw.

This will default to either the direction of the previous line segment or the tangent out of the previous arc segment, so as long as your arc is tangential to the previous segment you will not need to change this value.

Angle / Chord Length / Arc Length

Specify one of the three available methods to define your arc:

- Angle: Enter the interior delta angle of the arc.
- Chord: Enter the chord length of the arc.
- Arc: Enter the arc length of the arc.

Radius

Specify the radius to define your arc.

Clockwise / Counter-Clockwise Arrows

Use the Right/Left arrow buttons to define whether the arc rotates clockwise or counter-clockwise.

Store

After you have defined the segment to add, press this to store the new end and radial points, and draw the arc segment into your project.

Store+

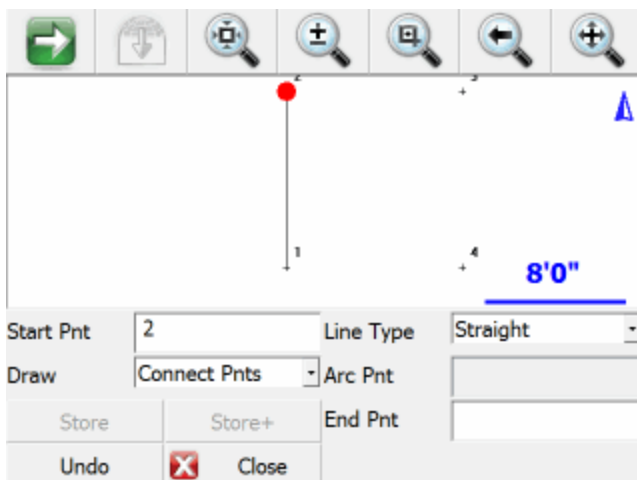
This does the same as the Store button, but you will see the [Store/Edit Point](#) screen. Use this to confirm or view the coordinates, or to specify a description.

Point by Arc Mode

This is the same as the Arc mode, except that when you press Store or Store+ it will only store the points, without drawing the arc segment.

Connect Points Mode

This mode lets you draw lines/arcs by connecting points that already exist in your project.



Start Point

Specify the start point for the new segment.

For starting a new plan, this should be set to an existing point in your project, typically a corner that you will begin drawing the plan from.

As you continue connecting subsequent points to your plan, you will see the Start Point field automatically advance for you.

Line Type

Specify one of the five available methods to define your next figure segment:

- **Straight:** this will draw a straight line between the specified Start Point and End Point.
- **Arc (CW):** this will draw a clockwise arc between the specified Start Point and End Point, with the specified Radial Point.
- **Arc (CCW):** this will draw a counter-clockwise arc between the specified Start Point and End Point, with the specified Radial Point.
- **Arc (3Pnt):** this will draw an arc (clockwise or counter-clockwise) between the specified Start Point and End Point, going through the specified intermediate Arc Point (any point directly on the arc, does not need to be the midpoint).
- **Spline:** this will draw a curvey line between the specified Start Point and End Point.

Store / Store+

The Store and Store+ buttons are disabled for this mode, because new points are not being calculated for your project. The line or arc segment will be automatically drawn into your project after you specify its parameters.

Undo

Press the **Undo** button to Undo the last segment you computed, removing both the point and/or the line segment (as appropriate) from your project. You can undo multiple steps.

Note, there is no Redo function.

Close

Press the **Close** button to exit from the Draw Plan command, and you will be returned to the [map screen](#).

Smart Tags

When you select an existing or create a figure in your drawing you will see smart tags appear on the points that make up the figure.

Smart Tag "T"

The T smart tag define points connected to straight line segments.



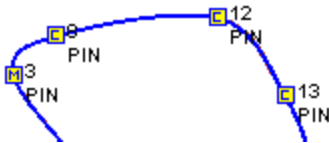
Smart Tag "M"

The M smart tag defines the mid point of an arc.



Smart Tag "C"

The C smart tag define points connected by a curvy line type.

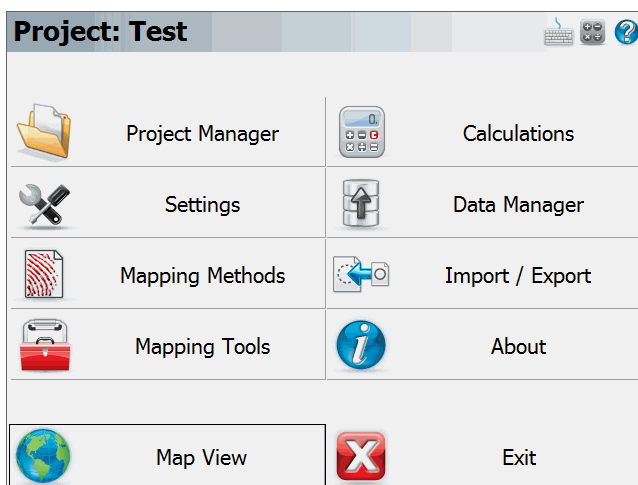


MAIN MENU

Main Menu

Main Menu

On the [main interface](#) of Evidence Recorder you will see the Evidence Recorder **Start** icon which will always activate the main menu or display the previously viewed sub-menu. When the button is pressed you will see the main menu screen:



On the main menu, pressing any of the buttons will take you to its sub-menu.

From any sub-menu, pressing the **Menu Home** button will return you to this menu.

The **Map View** button will close the main menu and take you back to the map view.

The **Exit** button will close Evidence Recorder.

Project Manager

Selecting this will allow you to create, open or delete projects. Please see the [Project Manager](#) topic for more information.

Settings

Select this to check or change settings for Evidence Recorder. Please see the [Settings Menu](#) topic for more information.

MappingMethods

Select this to select measurement modes such as occupying a point, checking a point, or measuring an offset. Please see the [MappingMethods Menu](#) topic for more information.

Mapping Tools

Select this to execute tools such as manually storing new points, deleting/undoing the previously measured point, or viewing the raw file. Please see the [MappingTools Menu](#) topic for more information.

Calculations

Select this to use our calculating functions such as COGO and inversing. Please see the [Calculations Menu](#) topic for more information.

Data Manager

Use this to manage your points, DXF files, and surfaces. Please see the [Data Manager Menu](#) topic for more information.

Import/Export

Select this to import or export ASCII files, and to export DXF, XML, and other files. Please see the [Import/Export Menu](#) topic for more information.

Please note, additional file types can be imported from the [Surfaces](#) and the [Map Data Layers](#) commands, both located in the [Data Manager menu](#).

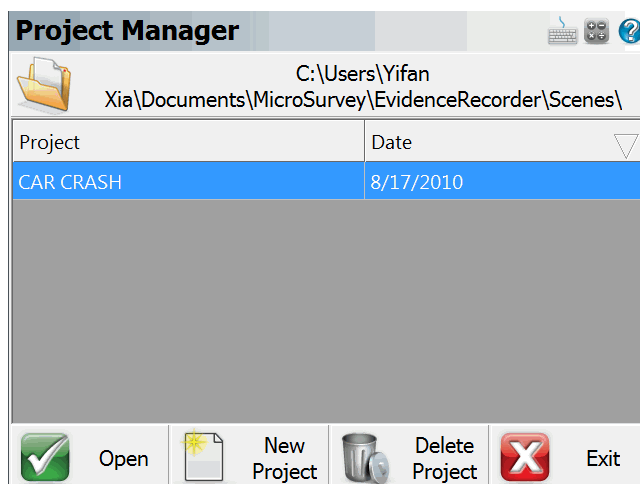
About

Select this to see what build and which modules you have registered for Evidence Recorder. Please see the [About Menu](#) topic for more information.

Project Manager

Main Menu | Project Manager

The Project Manager is used to create, open, or delete projects currently residing in your data collector. When you start Evidence Recorder this is always the first screen you will see.



By default the project manager will display the contents of the ...MicroSurvey EVR9\Scenes\ directory, which is the default location for all projects that you create. You can sort the list by project name or date by tapping on the column's header.

Scenes Folder

Press this button to specify a different project folder than the default. The default is...MicroSurvey EVR9\Scenes\. Once you set the directory it is written to the msurvey.ini file so it is used for all subsequent projects.

Open Project

To [open an existing project](#), simply select it in the list and press the **Open** button.

New Project

To [create a new project](#), simply press the **New** button. You will then see the new project screen which will allow you to enter a name, choose your automap library and set the units for the project.

Delete Project

To delete a project you first need to select it in the list and then press the **Delete** button. You will be asked to confirm that you really want to delete the project.

Notes:

- You can not delete a project that is currently open.
- Projects that have been deleted can not be restored.

Exit

To exit from the project manager press the **Exit** button.

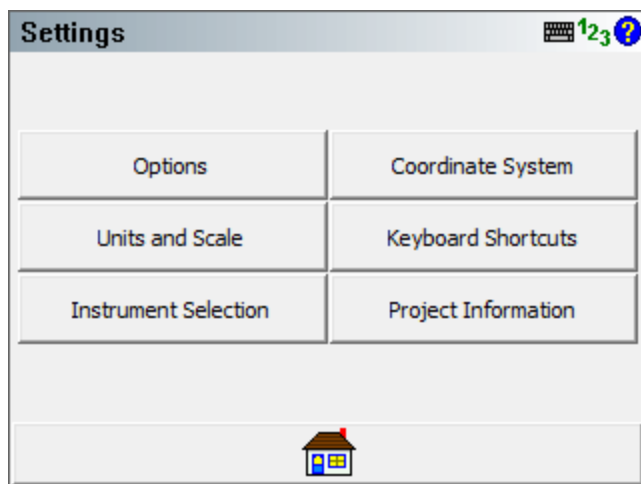
SETTINGS MENU

Settings Menu

Main Menu | Settings

The settings menu is used to setup and review settings that have been set for your current project. You can also specify default settings for new projects that are created.

Most of these settings are stored in a file named msurvey.ini which can be found in the ...\\M-icroSurvey EVR9\\Programs\\ directory. It is recommended that once you have defined your settings, that you make a backup of this msurvey.ini file.



Options

Use this to set or change settings that affect Evidence Recorder's functionality. Please see the [Options](#) topic for more information.

Units

Use this to set or change the units, bearings, distances and scale settings for your project. Please see the [Units Settings](#) topic for more information.

Instrument Selection

Use this to set the type of equipment that will be used with Evidence Recorder. If you're not connecting to anything, you can specify that you would like to enter your measurements manually. Please see the [Instrument Selection](#) topic for more information. (Note, you will not see this option if Evidence Recorder is running onboard your instrument.)

Coordinate System

Use this to define the coordinate system for your project. Please see the [Coordinate System Settings](#) topic for more information.

Keyboard Shortcuts

Use this to define shortcuts to Evidence Recorder commands and assign them to your keys. Please see the [Keyboard Shortcuts](#) topic for more information.

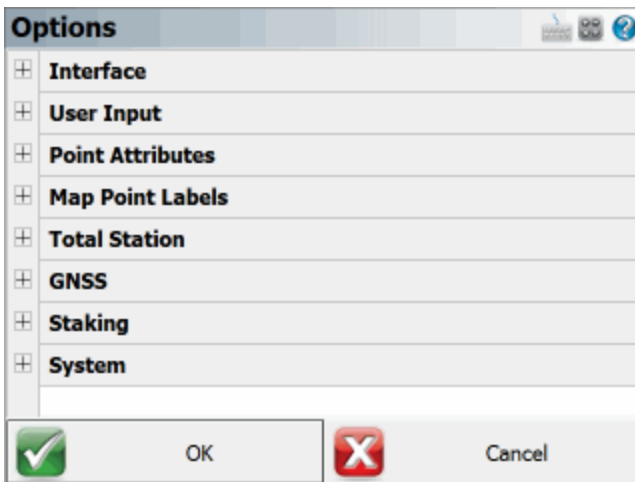
Project Information

Use this to enter and save information about your project. Please see the [Project Information](#) topic for more information.

Options

Main Menu | Settings | Options

The options screen helps you set settings that affect the look and feel of Evidence Recorder.



Press the [+] buttons along the left to expand (show) each section, and the [-] buttons to collapse (hide) it.

- [Interface Options](#)
- [User Input Options](#)
- [Point Attributes Options](#)
- [Map Point Labels Options](#)

- [Total Station Options](#)
- [GPS Options](#)
- [Staking Options](#)
- [System Options](#)

Interface Options

Monochrome Optimized

Use this to specify whether the main interface should display in full color, or in a way more suitable to monochrome screens.

Enable Full Screen

Use this to run Evidence Recorder in a full-screen mode (PocketPC devices only). This is required for proper operation on devices running the Windows Mobile operating system that have a landscape display.

Map Color

Use this to force the background color for the main drawing area to be white or black

Map Orientation

Using this will force the map screen to be oriented to the north or south. This is needed for coordinate systems that are referenced south, such as in South Africa. This is different from South Azimuth directions, as used in Hawaii.

Map Resolution

This option determines the number of segments that will be displayed in an arc on the screen. Reducing this number increases program speed; increasing this number slows down graphics display, but improves the quality of arcs and curvy lines displayed on the screen.

Text Size (Info/Grid)

Use this to force the text shown in the Information screens (such as the Observation toolbar and the COGO History screen) and grid screens (such as the Project Manager and Angle Offset shots) to use a small or large sized text.

Show Scale Bar

Use this to turn the scale bar shown on the main map screen on or off.

User Input Options

Extended Edit Boxes

Use this to control how you want to bring up the selected keypad when tapping in an edit box: either with a single tap, a double tap, or off. Users of devices with a keyboard should leave this set to Double Click, and users of devices without a keyboard should set this to Single Click. Setting this to Off disables both the keypad and any other commands that may be started directly from the edit field, such as the Point Chooser or Inverse Tool, so that edit fields can only be used for typing values from your physical keypad.

Menu Shortcuts

This will enable menu shortcuts so if you have a keyboard device you can press letter and number keys to navigate around the program.

Instrument Toolbar

You can define if the instrument toolbar is located on either the Right or Left Side of your map screen.

Map Position Select

If this is turned on, tapping a blank part of the map screen will display the [Map Select Toolbar](#).

Map Point Select

If this is turned on, then tapping on a point from the map screen will select it and open the [Point Toolbar](#).

Map Line Select

If this is turned on, then tapping on a line from the map screen will select it and open the [Line Toolbar](#).

SIP Type

Use this to specify which SIP keypad type you want to use, such as the full-screen MicroSurvey alphanumeric keypad (all devices), the small PocketPC qwerty keypad (PocketPC and Windows Mobile devices only), or the small MicroSurvey numeric keypad (PocketPC and Windows Mobile devices only).

Point Attributes Options

Coordinate Order

Use this to control the display of coordinate values in Evidence Recorder. Options are NEH, ENH, XYZ and will affect any area of the program where coordinates are displayed.

This option also affects whether the [ASCII Import](#) and [ASCII Export](#) commands use a N,E or E,N (X,Y) file format.

****Important note:** The imported format only affects display of the coordinates and the ASCII file itself. The internally stored point database, or raw file stored will always be stored as N,E,Z.

Alpha-Numeric IDs

When this is enabled you will be allowed to enter alpha-numeric point IDs such as 21a, AB3, EV2. If this isn't turned on, then Evidence Recorder will not accept anything but integer numbers. Alpha numeric input of point IDs can contain up to 31 characters. **Note:** Alpha-Numeric ID's are only supported in the MapScenes 2008 or newer desktop software. Previous versions of MapScenes do not support it.

Point ID Range - Minimum

Use this to force Evidence Recorder to limit the point numbers that are used to a specific range; here you would specify the minimum range value. If you try to use a point number that is less than this value, you will see a message that will ask you to select a different point number. **Note:** If you have the Alpha-Numeric IDs toggle turned on, then any values specified here are ignored.

Point ID Range - Maximum

Use this to force Evidence Recorder to limit the point numbers that are used to a specific range; here you would specify the maximum range value. If you try to use a point number that is greater than this value, you will see a message that will ask you to select a different point number. **Note:** If you have the Alpha-Numeric IDs toggle turned on, then any values specified here are ignored.

Alphanumeric Point ID's can have a maximum length of 31 characters.

New Description Prompt

This controls how Evidence Recorder deals with descriptions that don't match anything in your Automap library. If this is on, when you enter a description that isn't in the Automap library you will see a warning message asking you if you want to add it.

If it is off, any description that doesn't have a match in the Automap library will be automatically added to your project's Automap library.

Time Stamp Saved Points

This tells Evidence Recorder to write a timestamp into the raw file whenever a point is stored.

Map Point Labels Options

Show ID

This is used to show or hide the point number labels for your points.

Show Description

This is used to show or hide the point description labels for your points.

GPS Options

EP+ Records

When this is used the standard EP record type specified by the RW5 format will be slightly different. The main difference is that when turned on, the standard deviations for the X, Y, and Z components will be stored. Setting this to on is only required if you want to use Evidence Recorder with the OmniStar GPS service.

OnPOZ Tagging

Turn this on if you wish to use effigis' OnPOZ GNSS post processing software. If this is enabled then a measurement time start and end tag are written to the raw file. **Note:** An end tag is not written until you press the **Store Pnt** button in the [GNSS measurement](#) dialog. Remember, you must be logging GNSS data for this to work.

If this is turned on, during a measurement if the tolerances are met the store point screen will appear automatically. If this is off, then the user is required to press continue to get to the store point screen.

Auto Start Store

If this is turned on, the user will not see the store point screen. It is a fast way to store your GPS points and is useful when used in conjunction with the Auto Start Statistics option.

Correction Timeout

GPS data sent from a reference base had a time stamp of the start of the transmission associated with the positions being broadcast. When the rover processes the data, the time stamp is compared to the current time to ensure that there wasn't a big delay in receiving the position. Large time gaps can deteriorate the position quality at the rover. You can adjust the "time check" comparison value by adjusting the correction timeout value. Sometimes you have to increase this setting if you are far from your reference receiver, or are experiencing transmission interference. You can use any value between 0 and 20 seconds.

Staking Options

Note: You can also access these options directly from the [staking toolbar](#).

Tolerance

This is the error tolerance that the staking command will use. When your staking "[move by](#)" distances are equal to or less than this amount, your direction to a point will be indicated in green text in the Observation Toolbar at the top left hand corner of the screen. Green text will be displayed to notify you that you're meeting your tolerance; if you do not meet the tolerance, the text will switch to red.

Orientation Reference (Total Station & GNSS)

The user can set an orientation preference for either total station or GNSS layout. Depending on the equipment currently in use, Evidence Recorder will automatically use the defined orientation.

Orientation Reference = North

With the North orientation, North is the reference direction. The "move by" distances are standard cardinal directions.

North: This is the distance you need to move North.

South: This is the distance you need to move South.

East: This is the distance you need to move East.

West: This is the distance you need to move West.

Cut: This is the amount you have to go down from the current rod position to the stake point's elevation.

Fill: This is the amount you have to go up from the current rod position to the stake point's elevation.

Orientation Reference = Instrument

With the staking reference set to Instrument the map view will be twisted so the instrument is centered towards the top of your screen. The "move by" distances are with respect to the rod position looking towards the instrument. This view is useful when using a robotic instrument.

In: This is the distance you need to move towards the instrument.

Out: This is the distance you need to move away from the instrument.

Right: Facing the instrument, move right by this amount.

Left: Facing the instrument, move left by this amount.

Cut: This is the amount you have to go down from the current rod position to the stake point's elevation.

Fill: This is the amount you have to go up from the current rod position to the stake point's elevation.

Orientation Reference = Prism

With the staking reference set to Prism the map view will be twisted so the prism is centered towards the top of your screen. The "move by" distances are with respect to the instrument man looking at the prism. This view is handy when using a non-robotic instrument.

In: This is the distance you need to move towards the instrument.

Out: This is the distance you need to move away from the instrument.

Right: Facing the prism, move right by this amount.

Left: Facing the prism, move left by this amount.

Cut: This is the amount you have to go down from the current rod position to the stake point's elevation.

Fill: This is the amount you have to go up from the current rod position to the stake point's elevation.

Orientation Reference = User Point

With the User Point orientation, you can use an existing point in your project as the reference. The view will be twisted so that the selected point is centered towards the top of your screen.

In: This is the distance you need to move towards your user reference point.

Out: This is the distance you need to move away from your user reference point.

Right: Facing your user reference point, move right by this amount.

Left: Facing your user reference point, move left by this amount.

Cut: This is the amount you have to go down from the current rod position to the stake point's elevation.

Fill: This is the amount you have to go up from the current rod position to the stake point's elevation.

User Point

If you are using the "User Point" Orientation Reference (see above) then use this to specify which point ID you want to use for the reference point. If you are not using the "User Point" orientation then this does not have any effect.

Attached User ID

Use this to add a value to the point number you're currently staking. For example if the point your staking is point 8, and this field is set to 1000. In the raw file it will show that you staked point 1008 and will also store the staked position as point 1008 in the project database.

Turn Instrument Mode

If you have a motorized instrument, including robotics, you can control how Evidence Recorder turns the instrument during stakeouts. If you want Evidence Recorder to compute the horizontal and vertical angle needed to stake your point, use the **3D (HA + VA)** option. If all you want is the horizontal angle to be turned, and the vertical left alone, select the **2D (HA)** option.

Robotic Staking

If you're using a robotic instrument and this is turned on, if you stake a point Evidence Recorder will go into a dynamic staking mode. Using this mode will not force the instrument to turn to the stake point. It will go into a tracking mode and will dynamically tell you how far you're away from the stake point.

Fade Staked-Out Points

Place a check mark in this box if you would like to see out points displayed differently to out points. A out point will appear as a slightly greyed out inverted triangle. This is for you to make quick assessments of what has been done and what remains to be finished.

Display Point Screen

Place a check mark in this box if you would like to see the Point screen displayed. This screen will always be displayed if there are values in the Design Point Offset fields. This was done to ensure that you never a point with a forgotten (and wrong) offset.

Display Result Screen

Place a check mark in this box if you would like to see the Result screen displayed after out a point. This screen will always be displayed if the out point exceeds the tolerances.

Store Point

Place a check mark in this box if you would like the out point to be stored along with the raw data. If no check mark is in this box then only the raw data is stored, and the Store Point dialog will not be displayed.

By default this is checked. What will happen is when you store a staked position using the store button on the stake toolbar you will be prompted with a screen allowing you to assign a point number and description to the new point that will be created.

The point description will default to the current description from the Automap Library, as shown on your topo toolbar. If you choose a different description from the library, then it will be retained for all consecutive stakeout points.

Furthermore, when this feature is turned on it will use the value in the Add Id field to determine the point number for the recorded staked position. For example if you staked point 19 and you have an Attached User Id = 1000, then Evidence Recorder will automatically use 1019 as a point number. This can be changed by the user.

Show Staked-Stored Points

Place a check mark in this box if you would like to see the out point displayed on map. We provide you with the choice so that you can quickly see which points you have already out.

Use List

Place a check mark in this box if you would to use the list instead of out from the Points database. If you use a list, you will never have a measured point presented as a new point to out.

Find Next Nearest

Place a check mark in this box if you would like to search in the Points database (i.e. not in the list) for the nearest point from the current position, and present it as the next point to be out.

System Options

Language Resource

This is used for multi-language support. If you have installed a non-English version of Evidence Recorder, then set this option to your Language Resource file, for example "ResESM.dll" for Spanish (Mexico).

Tip of the Day & Application Tips

When turned on, a "Tip of the Day" will be displayed when Evidence Recorder is started, and tooltips will be displayed when you hover over any button.

Turning this off will hide the "Tip of the Day" dialog and will disable tooltips on buttons.

Communication Trace File

When turned on it will create a test file displaying information about the shot data going back and forth from Evidence Recorder and your instrument. It can be used to diagnose communication problems and should only be used in this situation. The text file will be named **tracets.txt** or **tracegps.txt** and will be located in your ...\\MicroSurvey EVR9\\Programs\\ directory on your device.

Bluetooth Persist On

By default Evidence Recorder always disconnects existing Bluetooth connections and also turns the power off for the Bluetooth radio in your data collector when you exit the program. The main reason we do this is to conserve battery power.

Some users prefer that power to the Bluetooth radio remains on no matter what. In this case, disable this feature. The default is OFF.

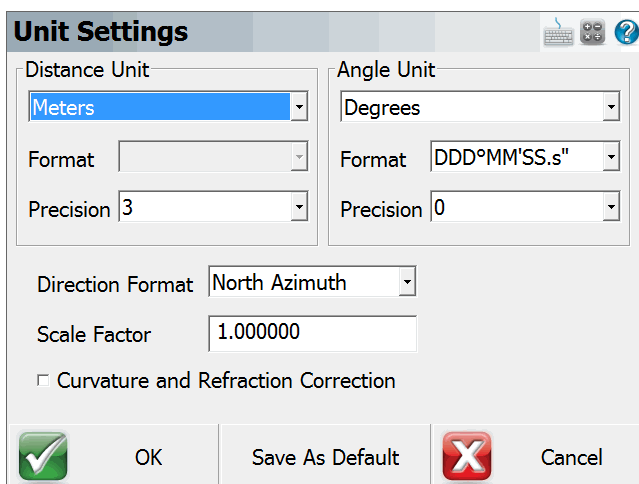
Unit Settings

Main Menu | Settings | Units

The units and scale menu allows you to specify settings for your project. Some of these settings are recorded in the raw file and the project's ini file, as well as recorded in the msurvey.ini file.

Notes:

- The Distance Unit (Meters or Feet) and Angle Unit (Degrees, Radians, or Gons) can only be set when creating a new project. After a project has been created, these will remain greyed-out and cannot be changed.



The Unit Settings dialog box is titled "Unit Settings" and contains the following controls:

- Distance Unit:** A dropdown menu with "Meters" selected.
- Angle Unit:** A dropdown menu with "Degrees" selected.
- Format:** Two dropdown menus. The first is empty, and the second is set to "DDD°MM'SS.s\".
- Precision:** Two dropdown menus. The first is set to "3", and the second is set to "0".
- Direction Format:** A dropdown menu with "North Azimuth" selected.
- Scale Factor:** A text input field containing "1.000000".
- Curvature and Refraction Correction:** An unchecked checkbox.
- Buttons:** "OK" (with a green checkmark icon), "Save As Default", and "Cancel" (with a red X icon).

You can set these settings as defaults for new projects by pressing the **Save as Default Settings** button. The default settings can also be set in the [Options](#) screen.

Note: the actual precision on distances and angles returned from your instrument may be limited to less than the precision you select here. Selecting a higher precision here will not increase the precision of values queried from your instrument.

Distance Unit

Choose the distance unit that you will be using: Meters, International Feet, or US Survey Feet. All distances will be displayed in the selected format. All distances will be recorded to the raw file in decimal format. Database coordinates are always stored with 6 decimal places, and rounded to the desired precision for display.

Meters

If you choose Meters as your distance unit, you can also specify the number of decimal places to display within Evidence Recorder, from 0 to 6.

International Feet / US Survey Feet

If you choose International Feet or US Survey Feet, then you can specify to use either a decimal format with a precision from 0 to 6, or a Fractional format with feet and inches.

If you use the **decimal** format, distances will be displayed in decimal feet, such as 10.5' to indicate 10.5 feet or 10feet-6inches.

If you use the **fractional** format, distances will be displayed in feet and fractional inches, such as 10'6 1/2" to indicate 10feet-6.5inches or 10.54166667 feet.

Angle Unit

Choose the angular unit that you will be using: Degrees, Gons/Gradients, or Radians. All angular values written into the raw file will be recorded in the selected format.

Degrees

If you select Degrees, then you can also select which format to use, either DDD°MM'SS.s" for degrees-minutes-decimal seconds, DDD°MM.m' for degrees-decimal minutes, or DDD.d° for decimal degrees. You can also specify the number of decimal places to use, from 0 to 8.

Gons (Gradients)

If you select Gons (Gradients) then you can also specify the number of decimal places to use, from 0 to 8.

Radians

If you select Radians then you can also specify the number of decimal places to use, from 0 to 8.

Direction Format

Choose the direction format that you will be using: North Azimuth, South Azimuth, or Bearings. When entering a direction, you can always override this setting by entering the angle with the cardinal quadrant indicated before or after the angle. If there is no quadrant specified, then the input angle will be interpreted as an Azimuth.

Scale Factor

You can use a scale factor to adjust ground distances to grid distances.

Distances measured with a total station will be recorded in the raw file with the unscaled, true measured slope distance. This scale factor is applied to the computation of coordinates only.

Distances entered using the Traverse/Intersect tool (COGO) will be scaled by the scale factor.

Distances calculated using the Inverse tool, or recalled using the pt..pt format will be scaled by the inverse of this scale factor. The result will be the inversed grid distance times the inverse of the scale factor, so that the ground distance is returned.

This Scale Factor does not affect any GPS measurements. Please see the [GPS Local Transformation](#) topic for information on using a GPS Scale Factor.

Save As Default

Use this to permanently write the current settings to the msurvey.ini file. When you create a new project, it will use these settings. The default settings can also be set in the [Options](#) screen.

Instrument Selection

[Main Menu](#) | [Settings](#) | [Instrument Selection](#)

The Instrument Selection screen allows you to choose the type of equipment you will be connecting to Evidence Recorder. An Instrument Profile can be created for each different instrument you will be working with, to make changing between different hardware a breeze. Once you have setup a profile for each different instrument you will be using, switching between them is a simple matter of selecting the appropriate profile and pressing **Connect**.

Note, this screen is not available if Evidence Recorder is running onboard your instrument.

For all future projects you create with Evidence Recorder, when you create a new or open an existing project you will see the Instrument Selection screen with the profiles you have already created. It will default to the last Profile you used, so if you are using the same instrument just press **Connect**. If you are using different equipment, just select the appropriate Instrument Type and Profile (or add a new profile if one does not yet exist for it), then press **Connect**.

Your profiles are stored in the file ...\\MicroSurvey EVR9\\Programs\\MSURVEY.INI so once you have configured one data collector, you can simply copy this file onto your other data collectors to make the profiles available on them. This file should also be backed up for easy recovery.

Total Station

When you select Total Station mode, you will be able to Add, Delete, or Edit a profile to setup parameters for connecting to your conventional and robotic total stations, as well as laser devices. See the [Total Station Configuration](#) topic for more details about configuration for your total station.

For more information on connecting to your instrument please refer to the [Conventional Total Station](#) and [Robotic Total Station](#) topics.

Total Station Demo

If you choose this you will have to manually enter your shots. Manually entered shots are recorded in the raw file and points are computed based on the values you enter. A profile is not needed for this mode, just press Connect to begin using the Total Station Demo mode.

GPS Rover / GPS Reference

When you set it to GPS Rover or GPS Reference you will be able to Add, Delete, or Edit a profile for your rover or reference receiver. When you edit a GPS Rover or GPS Reference profile, you will see the [Configure Rover](#) or [Configure Reference](#) screens. For more information about using Evidence Recorder for GPS surveying, you should review the [Starting GPS](#) topic.

If you have not purchased the GPS module for Evidence Recorder, then you will not have access to the GPS commands and you will see a "Requires GPS module license" message.

GPS Demo

When you set it to GPS Demo you will be able to Edit and Connect to a profile for a simulated rover receiver. When you edit the RTK Demo profile, you will see the [Configure Rover](#) screen. Feel free to play with the Tolerance Mode settings, but please do not change the Model and Communications settings. For more information about using Evidence Recorder for GPS surveying, you should review the [Starting GPS](#) topic.

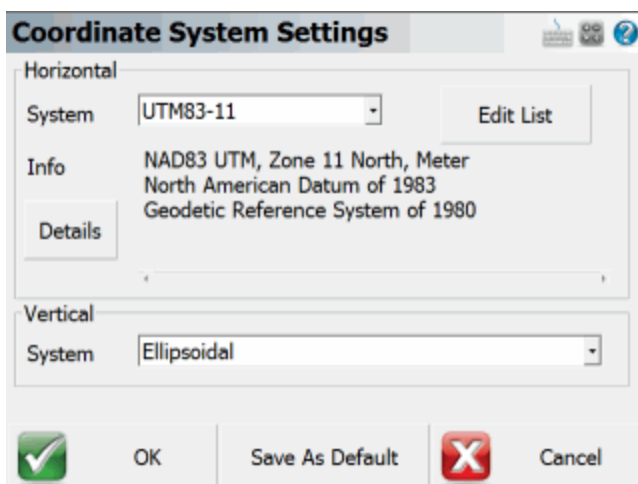
The GPS Demo will simulate connecting Evidence Recorder to a GPS Rover receiver. The coordinates in the GPS Demo are located outside our office in Westbank, British Columbia, Canada, so to use the GPS Demo mode you need to set your Coordinate System Settings to UTM Zones, NAD83, UTM83-11, Ellipsoidal.

None

Use this option if you're not connecting anything to Evidence Recorder and also don't need to manually enter any shot information. With this mode, the instrument toolbar will not be displayed in the map screen.

Coordinate System Settings

The datum settings are used to transform GPS derived curvilinear coordinates (latitude, longitude and ellipsoidal height) into Cartesian coordinates (northing/y, easting/x, and ellipsoid or orthometric height) for presentation on the drawing window and data storage.



Horizontal Group

This is where you define the coordinate system for your project.

You can choose "RTCM: Transformation" option to use coordinate systems transmitted from enabled CORS networks. (Only works with RTCM v3.1+ correction types)

Edit List

The **Edit List** button is used to create predefined or user-defined coordinate systems, create new coordinate systems, copy predefined systems, and edit or delete existing systems. When pressed, the Coordinate System List dialog will appear.

A **predefined coordinate system** is one that already exists and comes installed in Evidence Recorder by default, a **user-defined system** is one that you have created.

Details

This accesses a summary of all the parameters being used by the selected coordinate system. The following information is displayed:

1. What projection and parameters are being used?
2. What datum transformation method and parameters are being used?
3. What ellipsoid and parameters are being used? See section 4 for more details.

Vertical Group

This is where you define the vertical system also known as a geoid model for your project.

The default is ellipsoidal. If needed you can copy geoid separation files (a.k.a geoid model) into the Evidence Recorder mapping directory. Any new files you copy to the mapping directory can be selected here. Please review the [Geoid Model](#) topic for more details.

You can choose "RTCM: Transformation" option to use vertical systems transmitted from enabled CORS networks. (Only works with RTCM v3.1+ correction types)

Save As Defaults

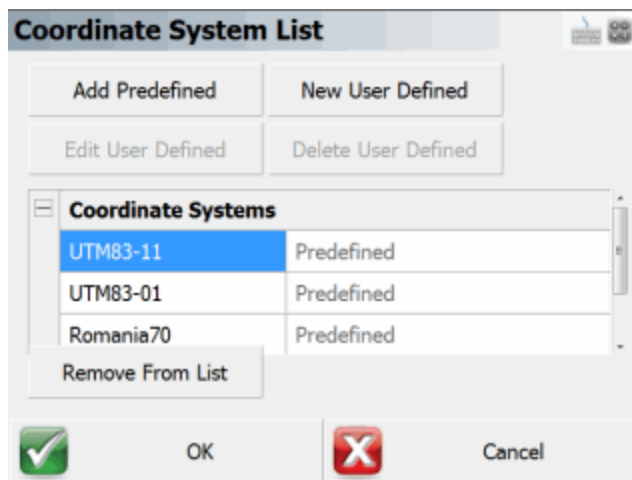
Saves the Horizontal and Vertical systems to the msurvey.ini file as defaults to be used for all new projects.

Select Horizontal Coordinate System

Evidence Recorder ships with a default coordinate system definition of UTM NAD83 zone 11. You can change this at any time.

The Coordinate System List dialog is where you can select an existing coordinate system or create a new user-defined coordinate system and add them to a "favourites" list.

This list allows you to define the coordinate systems you use most often for easy access from the Coordinate System Settings screen.



Add Predefined

Press this button to access a list of existing coordinate system. See the Add Predefined System section below for more details.

New User-Defined

This allows you to add a user-defined coordinate system to the coordinate system list. See the Add user-defined System section below for more details.

Edit User-Defined

This allows you to review and edit a user-defined coordinate system. Select a user-defined coordinate system from the list, and press the **Edit User-Defined** button. Doing so will display the Edit User-Defined System dialog.

Some predefined coordinate systems are read only and can't be edited. You will see a warning message when attempting to copy or edit system that can not be edited.

Delete User Defined

Pressing the button will delete the selected user-defined coordinate system. You will need to confirm that you want to delete it from the database. Since there is no und, you may want to use the [User Coordinate System Export](#) routine to save a backup copy of your coordinate system before deleting anything.

Some predefined coordinate systems are read only and can't be deleted. They can however be removed from the favourites list by using the **Remove From List** button.

Remove From List

If you select either a user-defined or predefined coordinate system and press this button, the selected coordinate system will be removed from the coordinate system list. It isn't deleted or removed from the mapping database.

OK Button

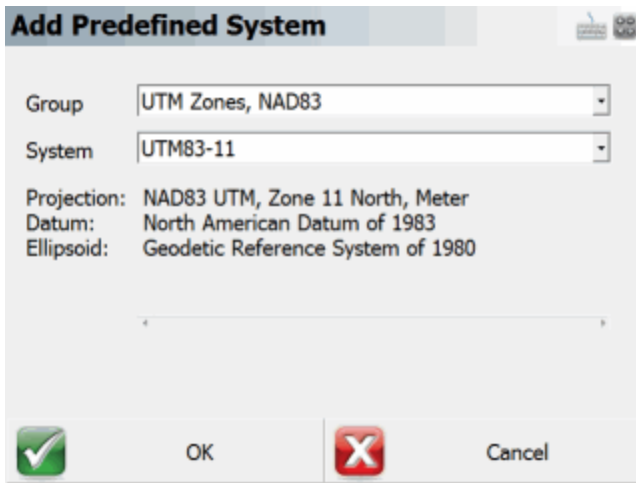
This will save the coordinate system favourites list to the msurvey.ini file.

Cancel Button

This will exit the dialog and will save nothing. You will be automatically returned to the Coordinate System Settings dialog.

Add Predefined System

When the **Add Predefined** button is selected you will be able to select an existing coordinate system from the mapping database.



Add Predefined System

Group: UTM Zones, NAD83

System: UTM83-11

Projection: NAD83 UTM, Zone 11 North, Meter
Datum: North American Datum of 1983
Ellipsoid: Geodetic Reference System of 1980

 OK  Cancel

Group and System Options

Coordinate systems are grouped into countries or mapping systems. Select the country or system that you are surveying in and then choose the coordinate system in the System drop down list.

Information Section

This section (below the System field) displays the projection, datum, and ellipsoid information related to this coordinate system.

Ok Button

This will add the selected coordinate system to the favourites list.

Cancel Button

This will cancel without saving. User returned back to the Select Coordinate System dialog.

New/ Edit user-defined System

From this dialog you will either create a brand new coordinate system or edit an existing one you previously saved.

New User-Defined System

System Name:

Description:

☐ **Ellipsoid Parameters**

Equatorial Radius (a)	
Polar Radius (b)	
Inverse Flattening (1/f)	Invalid

☐ **Datum Parameters**

Datum Type	<Select Type>

OK Cancel

System Name and Description

Enter a name for your coordinate system and optionally enter a meaningful name that helps describe it. The system name must have colon in the name.

Ellipsoid Parameters

To define the ellipsoid for the coordinate system you must enter the known equatorial and polar radiuses for the ellipsoid. The Inverse Flattening is not editable and will be computed automatically and can be used a check.

- Equatorial Radius (a)
- Polar Radius (b)
- Inverse Flattening (1/f) - Always a read only value, automatically computed from the two ellipsoid radiuses.

Datum Parameters

There are 7 datum types to select from:

- Three Parameter
- Four Parameter
- Six Parameter
- Seven Parameter
- Bursa / Wolf

- DMA Molodensky
- None

If none is selected then no transformation parameters will be applied to the coordinate system transformation.

If a datum other than none is selected then the user will be able to enter the following parameters:

- Delta X (m)
- Delta Y (m)
- Delta Z (m)
- X Rotation (")
- Y Rotation (")
- Z Rotation (")
- Scale (PPM)

Projection Parameters

The user can select one of nineteen projections.

- Lambert Conformal Conic (One Standard Parallels)
- Lambert Conformal Conic (Two Standard Parallels)
- Transverse Mercator or Gauss Kruger
- Universal Transverse Mercator
- Albers Equal Area Conic
- Rectified Skew Orthomorphic, Azimuth at Projection Center
- Mercator Cylindrical Projection with Standard Parallel
- Mercator Cylindrical Projection with Scale Reduction
- Lambert Azimuthal Equal Area
- Lambert Azimuthal Equidistant
- Miller Cylindrical
- Oblique Sterographic
- Polar Sterographic
- Sinusoidal Projection, Optionally Interrupted
- Equidistant Cylindrical

- Cassini
- Robinson Cylindrical
- Bonne Pseudoconical
- Krovac Oblique Conformal Conic, Czechoslovakia

Typical projection parameters for most cases are:

- Scale Factor
- Central Meridian
- Origin Latitude
- Origin Longitude
- False Northing
- False Easting

Ok Button

This will save the user-defined parameters to the CS-MAP coordinate system database files (coord-sys, datum and ellipsoid)

Cancel Button

This will cancel the current operation and nothing will be saved.

Automatic Backup

Whenever you add or edit a user-defined coordinate system, Evidence Recorder will automatically create and save your parameters to a file named **user-coordsys-backup.csmmap** to the mapping directory.

This backup file stores your user-defined coordinate systems. If you accidentally remove or overwrite your user-defined coordinate systems, you can re-import them from this backup file using the [Import user-defined Coordinate System](#) command.

Localization (Site Calibration)

Further coordinate transformations can be accomplished with the use of the Local Transformation function of Evidence Recorder. For localizing on a user-defined coordinate system, see the [GPS Site Calibration](#) section below.

These settings are stored in your project's .ini file, allowing you to easily use different coordinate systems for different projects.

Additional Grid Shift Files and Geoids

Additional grid shift files or geoids can be downloaded from the MicroSurvey helpdesk.

World Geoid models we support can be found [here](#).

World grid shift files we support can be found [here](#).

Older Evidence Recorder Mapping Files

Many of the horizontal datums and vertical geoid models require the use of "grid" files for coordinate computations. A desktop application has been provided with Evidence Recorder to extract user-defined areas from the original files to create smaller more manageable files for the data collector.

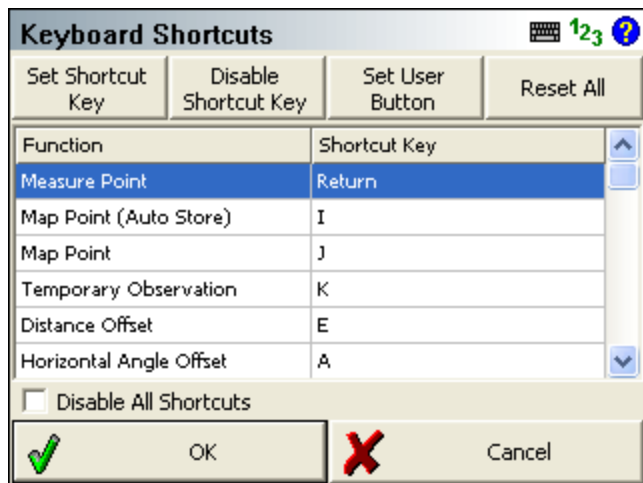
See the topic on [Datum Grid Editor](#) for more information.

Keyboard Shortcuts

Main Menu | Settings | Keyboard Shortcuts

You can now assign command shortcuts to keys on your data collector. This has been added to support our new keyboard layout on the newer Trackers but it also works with any device that has a keyboard.

The defaults for the shortcut keys are based on the MicroSurvey Tracker custom keyboard layout, but you can assign any key you want to the list of available commands. The shortcut definitions are stored in the msurvey.ini file so they're portable to your other data collectors if you've defined a custom layout.



Another great feature is that the EDM mode for the current instrument you have selected can have shortcut keys assigned to them. For example if you refer to the list above, you would press the 1 key to set your EDM mode on the instrument to IR Standard.

The shortcut keys will only function from the [map screen](#).

Set Shortcut Key

Use this to assign a command to a key on your keyboard. Highlight the command you want to modify, press the **Set Shortcut Key** button, then press the button on your keyboard to map the command to it. Your new key map will automatically be saved to the msurvey.ini file.

Disable Shortcut Key

Use this to disable individual shortcuts.

Set User Button



Use this to set the currently selected command to the User Button found on the main interface. The command currently set with the user button is indicated in the Function list with the same icon.

Reset All

This resets all the shortcuts to the factory defaults and all customized settings will be lost.

Disable All Shortcuts

This is a toggle that controls if the shortcut keys are disabled or enabled.

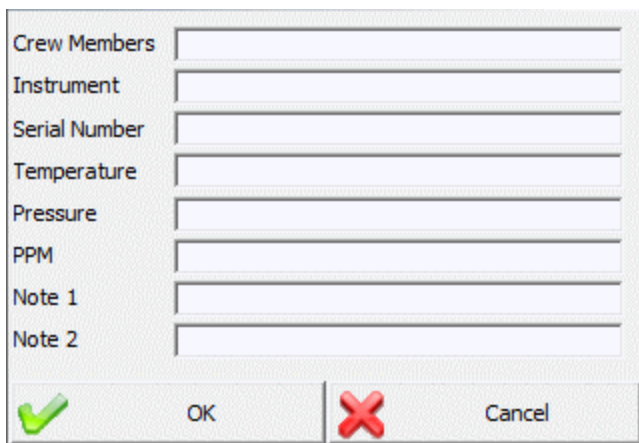
Default Shortcut Keys

Function	Shortcut Key
Measure Point	Enter
Map Point (Auto Store)	I
Map Point	J
Temporary Observation	K
Distance offset	E
Horizontal Angle Offset	A
Resection	R
Set Target Heights	T
Occupy Point	O
Check Backsight	N
Check Point	Q
Stake Points	S
Inverse	B
Calculator	F
Automap Library	D
Figure List	L

Toggle GPS Coordinates	G
Store Points	W
Undo Last Saved Point	Disabled
 Point Databse	P
Add Comment	X
Raw File Viewer	U
Menu Home	H
Map Data Layers	Backspace
SIP Enable/Disable	Disabled
EDM Mode 1	1
EDM Mode 2	2
EDM Mode 3	Disabled
EDM Mode 4	Disabled
EDM Mode 5	Disabled
EDM Mode 6	Disabled
EDM Mode 7	Disabled
EDM Mode 8	Disabled
Prism Search	Disabled
Prism Track	Disabled
Prism ATR	Disabled
Laser Pointer	Disabled
Guide Lights	Disabled
Robot Joystick	Disabled

Project Information

[Main Menu](#) | [Settings](#) | [Project Information](#)

A screenshot of a settings dialog box with a light gray background. It contains eight text input fields stacked vertically, each preceded by a label: 'Crew Members', 'Instrument', 'Serial Number', 'Temperature', 'Pressure', 'PPM', 'Note 1', and 'Note 2'. At the bottom of the dialog, there are three buttons: a green checkmark icon on the left, an 'OK' button in the center, and a red 'X' icon followed by a 'Cancel' button on the right.

Use this option to record job information about your project.

Tap **OK** to save your information to the raw file, or **Cancel** to exit without saving your changes. Each entry field can accept up to 64 characters.

This screen can also be accessed by pressing the "Modify Project Information" button located on the [Project Review](#) screen.

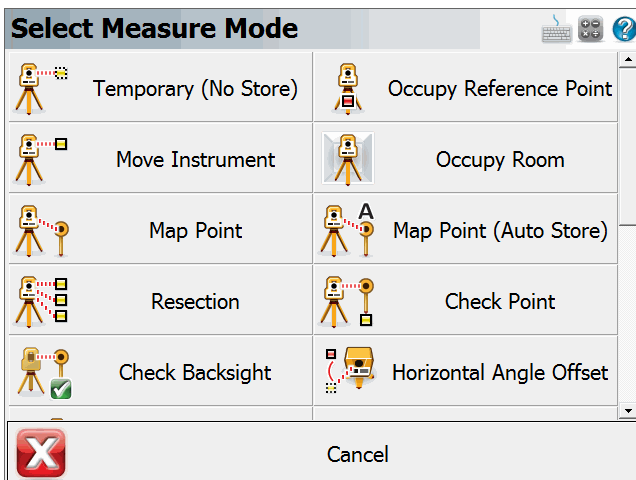
MAPPING METHODS MENU

Mapping Methods Menu

Main Menu | Mapping Methods

These are commands built into Evidence Recorder that will help you measure and map your points. The desired method must be selected before you begin a measurement.

For a faster way to get to this screen, you can also press the measure mode button which is located on the [instrument toolbar](#).



Use the vertical scroll bar along the side to access additional measurement modes if they cannot all fit on screen at the same time.

Note: Several of these modes will not be available until you have setup an occupy point and measured a backsight via the Occupy Reference Point, Occupy Room, or Resection commands. Most of these modes will also not be available if you are using GPS.

Temporary (No Store)

This will allow you to take a measurement without storing it. Please see the [Temporary \(No Store\)](#) topic for more information.

Occupy Reference Point

Use this to define an instrument setup. Please See "Backsight Method" topic for more information.

Move Instrument

This is a wizard that will help you establish a new reference point, and then will step you through moving your instrument. Please see the [Move Instrument](#) topic for more information.

Occupy Room

Use this to define an instrument setup so that one wall in the room becomes a baseline where one end of it is at 0,0. Please see the [Occupy Room](#) topic for more information.

Map Point

This mode allows you to measure a point. After the measurement, it will allow you to review your measurement data and allow you to make changes to the point id and description before it is stored. Please see the [Map Point](#) topic for more information.

Map Point (Auto Store)

This mode allows you to measure a point using the next available point id, and the description and line toggles specified on the main map screen. Using this is a very fast method for recording your measurements. Please see the [Map Point \(Auto Store\)following](#) topic for more information.

Resection

This will start the multiple point resection routine to allow you to determine your current instrument position by measuring to known points. Please see the Resection topic for more information.

Check Point

Use this to display a check measurement to an existing point in your project. Please see the [Check Shot](#) topic for more information.

Check Backsight

Use this to compare your backsight to your previously measured values. Please see the [Check Backsight](#) topic for more information.

Horizontal Angle Offset

This will start the angle offset routine. Please see the [Horizontal Angle Offset](#) topic for more information.

Vertical Angle Offset

This will allow you to compute the height of an object. Please see the [Vertical Angle Offset](#) topic for more information.

Distance Offset

This will start the distance offset routine. Please see the [Distance Offset](#) topic for more information.

Manual Distance

This will record a HA and VA for a shot, but the user can manually enter the distance. Please see the [Manual Distance](#) topic for more information.

Manual Entry

This will allow you to manually enter in a shot including HA, VA and SD. Please see the [Manual Entry](#) topic for more information

Two Line Intersection

This allows you to measure two baselines and Evidence Recorder will compute the intersection point. Please see the [Two Line Intersection](#) topic for more information.

Line - Angle Offset

This allows you to measure two points to define a baseline, measure an angle, and Evidence Recorder will compute the intersection point. Please see the [Line - Angle Offset](#) topic for more information.

Line - Distance Offset

This allows you to measure two points to define a baseline, then manually enter measured distances. These distances will be used to compute a new point based on the baseline. Please see the [Line - Distance Offset](#) topic for more information.

Line - Perpendicular Point

This allows you to measure two points to define a baseline, then you can select an existing point which will be used to compute a perpendicular intersection. Please see the [Line - Perpendicular Point](#) topic for more information.

Trilateration

This will allow you to compute new points by observing their distances from two known existing points. Please see the [Trilateration](#) topic for more information.

Baseline Offset

This will allow you to compute points offset from a baseline. Please see the [Baseline Offset](#) topic for more information.

Vertical Scene Projection

This will allow you to compute points on a user defined vertical plane. Please see the [Vertical Scene Projection](#) topic for more information.

Point Scanning

Use this to activate Point Scanning with your motorized reflectorless instrument. Please see the [Point Scanning](#) topic for more information.

Temporary (No Store)

[Main Menu](#) | [Mapping Methods](#) | [Temporary \(No Store\)](#)

The temporary mode will allow you to take a measurement with your instrument without storing a point or recording anything to the raw file. It also doesn't require you to have established a setup. It is the same as pressing the measure button on the instrument where all it does is report back to you the HA, ZA, SD, HD and VD.

When in this mode you will see the word **Temp** on the measure mode button.

No Setup Established

If you haven't established a setup and you use the temp mode, when you press the measure button you will see the results of your measurement.

Setup Established

If you have an instrument setup established when you use the temp mode and press the measure button you will see the measurement information as well as calculated coordinates in the observation toolbar. The coordinates will be based on the current setup and the reading from the temporary shot.

Note:

When measuring in temp mode, nothing will be recorded in the RAW file.

Occupy Reference Point

[Main Menu](#) | [Mapping Methods](#) | [Occupy Reference Point](#)

Use this command to specify the instrument location and orientation. You will be asked to specify the point your instrument is occupying, an instrument height and if you will be assuming a backsight direction or sighting an existing point. After you have established your setup and backsight, Evidence Recorder will graphically show you your setup points.



Occupied Point Location

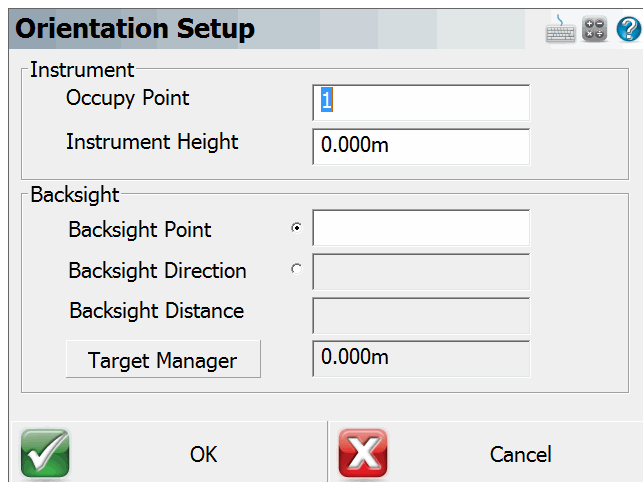


Backsight Point Location

Backsight Method: Direction

With the backsight method set to Direction you will be able to specify the point you want to setup on and specify a backsight direction.

When you go to measure you have the option of recording an angle and distance to the backsight, or the option of just recording an angle. If a distance is measured to the backsight you will have the option of storing a point for the backsight after you press the measure button.



The Orientation Setup dialog box is titled "Orientation Setup" and features a toolbar with icons for a keypad, a grid, and a help question mark. It is divided into two main sections: "Instrument" and "Backsight".

Instrument Section:

- Instrument:** A dropdown menu currently showing "Occupy Point".
- Instrument Height:** A text input field containing "0.000m".

Backsight Section:

- Backsight Point:** A text input field with a circular selection icon to its left.
- Backsight Direction:** A text input field with a circular selection icon to its left.
- Backsight Distance:** A text input field.
- Target Manager:** A button next to a text input field containing "0.000m".

Bottom Buttons:

- A green checkmark icon.
- An "OK" button.
- A red "X" icon.
- A "Cancel" button.

Occupy Point

Type in an existing point number, or double tap in this field to open the keypad or to select a point from the map. You will be able to create a new point, pick one from a list, or pick one from your drawing.

Instrument Height

Use this to enter your current instrument height.

Backsight Direction

Use this to specify the direction that will be used by Evidence Recorder. You can enter an azimuth or a quadrant bearing.

Target Height

Use this to enter your current [target height](#).

Backsight Method: Point

Use this method to specify the points that will be used for the current instrument location and back-sight.

Orientation Setup

Instrument

Occupy Point 1

Instrument Height 0.000m

Backsight

Backsight Point 2

Backsight Direction

Backsight Distance

Target Manager 0.000m

OK Cancel

Occupy Point

Type in an existing point number, or double tap in this field to open the keypad or to select a point from the map. You will be able to create a new point, pick one from a list, or pick one from your drawing.

Instrument Height

Use this to enter your current instrument height.

Backsight Point

Type in an existing point number, or double tap in this field to open the keypad or to select a point from the map. You will be able to create a new point, pick one from a list, or pick one from your drawing.

Backsight Direction & Distance

When you enter in your points Evidence Recorder will display the inversed horizontal distance and direction between the points you entered.

Target Height

Use this to enter your current [target height](#).

Measuring to the Backsight

Once you've established the backsight method, entered your points and instrument height you can move on to the next step by pressing the **Observe Backsight** button. You will be taken back to the map view where you will see the graphical position of your setup and backsight points. There are a few things you should take note of:

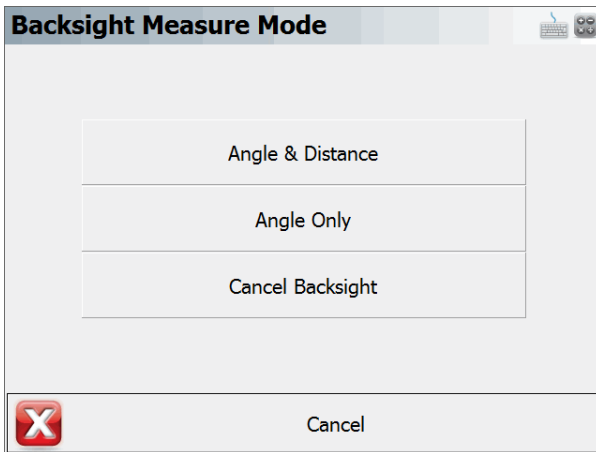
1. You can always tell what mode you're in by the "mode" text that appears near the top of your drawing. Since you're using the occupy point command you will see "Observe Backsight" near the top of the map area.
2. You have two measure modes available to you on the instrument toolbar. You can measure an angle and distance to the backsight, or measure only your current plate reading without measuring a distance. The two options are described in more detail in the [Backsight Measure Mode](#) topic.
3. You can cancel the setup by pressing the measure mode button and choosing "Cancel Backsight"
4. While in the backsight mode, you can use any of the controls from the information and display toolbar.
5. You can set the height of target by using the HT button on the instrument toolbar.
6. When you're ready to measure to the backsight, press the Measure button on the instrument toolbar.

Backsight Summary

After you have taken your measurement you will see a summary of your shot. From this screen you can choose to accept the shot or re-shoot it. You can also specify if you want the plate reading set to zero or a specific azimuth (if this is supported on your instrument). For more information see the [Backsight Summary](#) topic.

Backsight Measure Modes

Instrument Toolbar | Measurement Modes Button



When shooting to your backsight you have two options available and they can be accessed from the [instrument toolbar](#) using the measure mode button. The measure modes available are described as follows:

Angle & Distance

Specifying this will require you to measure a distance to the backsight either to a prism or reflectorless. It will also record the current plate reading on the instrument. Both the measure distance and plate reading will be used as the backsight reading in the raw file.

Angle Only

Specifying this will not require you to measure a distance to the backsight. All that will be recorded is the current plate reading on the instrument and this reading will be used as the backsight reading in the raw file.

Cancel Backsight

Use this to cancel your current backsight and occupy point command.

Backsight Summary

After you have taken your measurement you will see a summary of your shot. From this screen you can choose to accept the shot or re-shoot it. You can also specify if you want the plate reading set to zero or a specific azimuth.

Orientation Result

Backsight Observations

HA 99.9000gon VA 99.9932gon
SD 99.985m HD 99.985m
HI 0.000m HT 0.000m

Backsight Errors

Calc Horz Dist	100.000m	Error	-0.015m
Calc Elev	0.011m	Error	0.011m

☐ Reciprocate Traverse

Plate Setting

Do Not Modify

99.9000gon

 Accept

Observe Again

 Cancel

Backsight Observations and Errors

If you specified the point backsight method you will see a comparison between what you measured and the theoretical inverse. If you used the measure angle only mode, or defined a backsight direction you will not see a comparison as there isn't enough information available to compute the inverse.

Plate Setting

Finishing the Setup Routine

Accept

Once you've reviewed your backsight information you can complete it by pressing the **Accept** button. This will write a record to the raw file and exit the setup routine.

If you specified the direction backsight method you will be prompted to "Store the point observed at the backsight?" Press **Yes** to store a point for the backsight, or **No** to complete the setup without creating a new point at the backsight.

Observe Again

If you're not satisfied with the results or made a mistake you can re-shoot the backsight by using this button. Doing so will take you back to the main display where you can take another shot on the backsight.

Occupy Point Raw Records

When you accept your occupy point, points will be stored in the database for the setup and backsight if applicable. Also, the following records will be written to the raw file:

```
SP,PN2,N 918.0848,E 1057.3576,EL0.0000,--
--Orientation
LS,HI5.000,HR5.000
OC,OP1,N 1000.0000,E 1000.0000,EL0.0000,--
BK,OP1,BP2,BS145.00000,BC0.00000
BR,OP1,BP2,AR145.00000,ZE90.00000,SD100.00000
-- Orientation Notes (several comment lines)
```

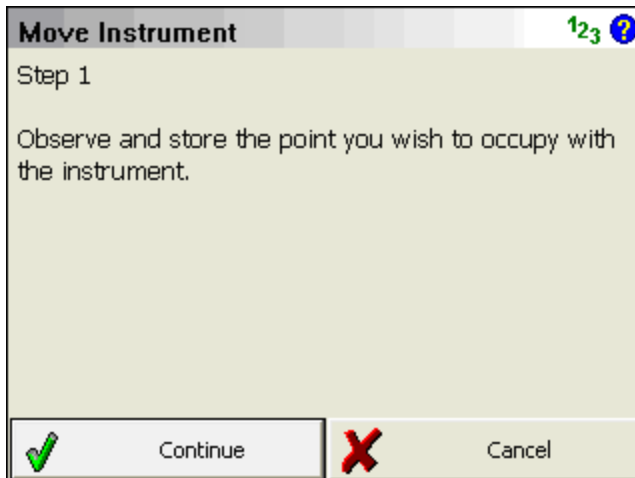
Move Instrument

[Main Menu](#) | [Mapping Methods](#) | [Move Instrument](#)

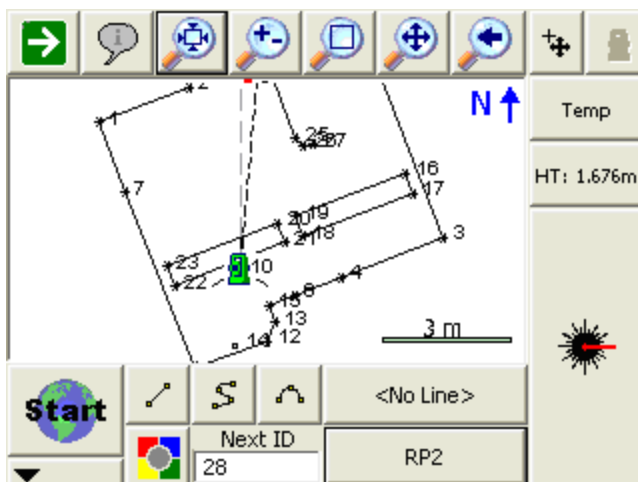
This is a wizard that will help you move your instrument to a new location in your scene. It steps you through the key procedures that need to be completed so you can successfully and accurately move your instrument.

Step 1 – Define new reference point

You need to establish the point you want to move your instrument to. You should mark the new reference point such that you can setup directly over top of it, such as placing a Pk-nail or a small paint mark on the ground.



Press **Continue** when ready. You can then sight your new point, and measure it's location.



After you measure the point, you will be asked to store it. Choose the point number you want to use to identify the point and choose a description for it.

Store Point

Point ID

34

Target Height

1.676m

Description

RP2

List

X

107.773m

Y

93.708m

Elevation

98.324m

Note

Tap to enter note

Review Measurement

GIS Attributes

Advanced

✓

Store Pnt

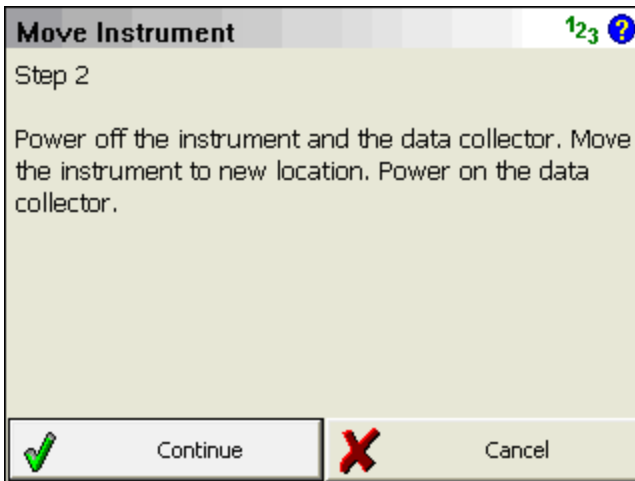
✗

Cancel

Press **Store Point** to complete this step.

Step 2 – Move Instrument

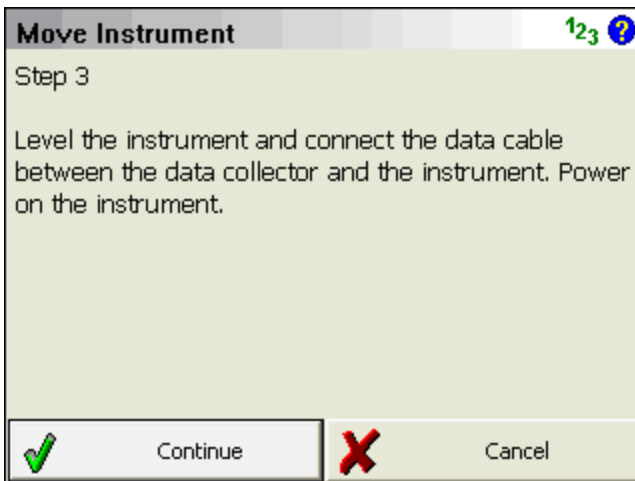
In step 2 all you do is move your instrument to the new location that was recorded in step 1.



Press **Continue**.

Step 3 – Connect to Instrument

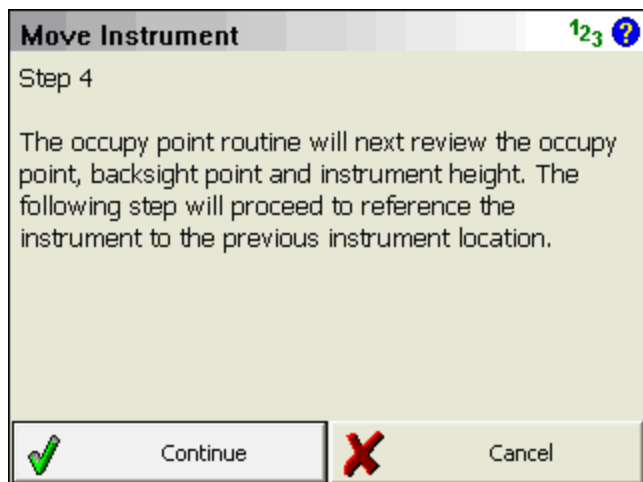
In Step 3, all you're doing is connecting to the instrument and powering everything back on.



Press **Continue**.

Step 4 – Complete Setup

Once you've connected and moved on to step 4, you will be ready to backsight the point you were originally setup on.



Move Instrument

Step 4

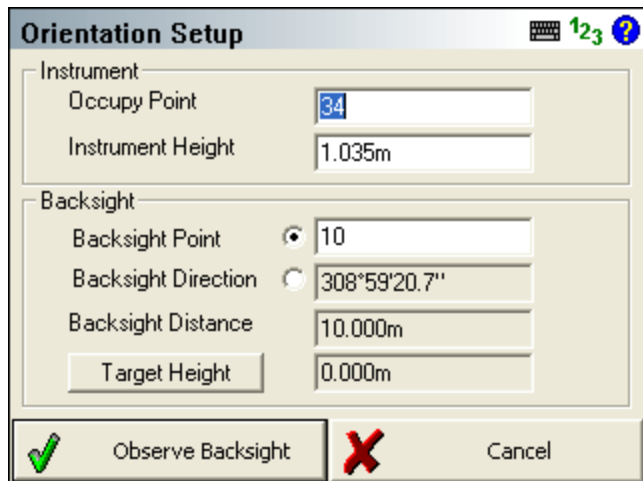
The occupy point routine will next review the occupy point, backsight point and instrument height. The following step will proceed to reference the instrument to the previous instrument location.

 Continue  Cancel

Press **Continue**.

Evidence Recorder should automatically select the correct Occupy and Backsight points for you.

All you need to do is enter in your new instrument and target heights.



Orientation Setup

Instrument

Occupy Point 34

Instrument Height 1.035m

Backsight

Backsight Point ☒ 10

Backsight Direction ☐ 308°59'20.7''

Backsight Distance 10.000m

Target Height 0.000m

 Observe Backsight  Cancel

Press **Observe Backsight**.

After you make a measurement to the backsight, you will see the reference measurement screen.

Confirm that you have the correct instrument and target heights. If you want to set a zero reading on the instrument, select the "Set Zero" option in the Plate Setting pull-down menu.

Orientation Result  

Backsight Observations
 HA 308°59'14.0" VA 86°17'00.0"
 SD 10.001m HD 9.980m
 HI 1.035m HT 0.000m

Backsight Errors

Calc Horz Dist	10.000m	Error	-0.020m
Calc Elev	100.007m	Error	0.007m

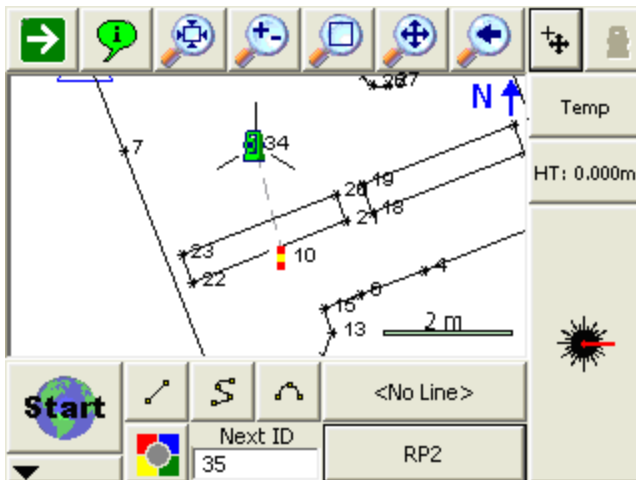
☐ Reciprocate Traverse

Plate Setting
 Do Not Modify  308°59'14.0"

 **Accept**  **Observe Again**  **Cancel**

Press **Accept** to finish.

You will now see your instrument icon on your new reference point (PN 34). The backsight icon should be located on the previous point you were setup on (PN 10).

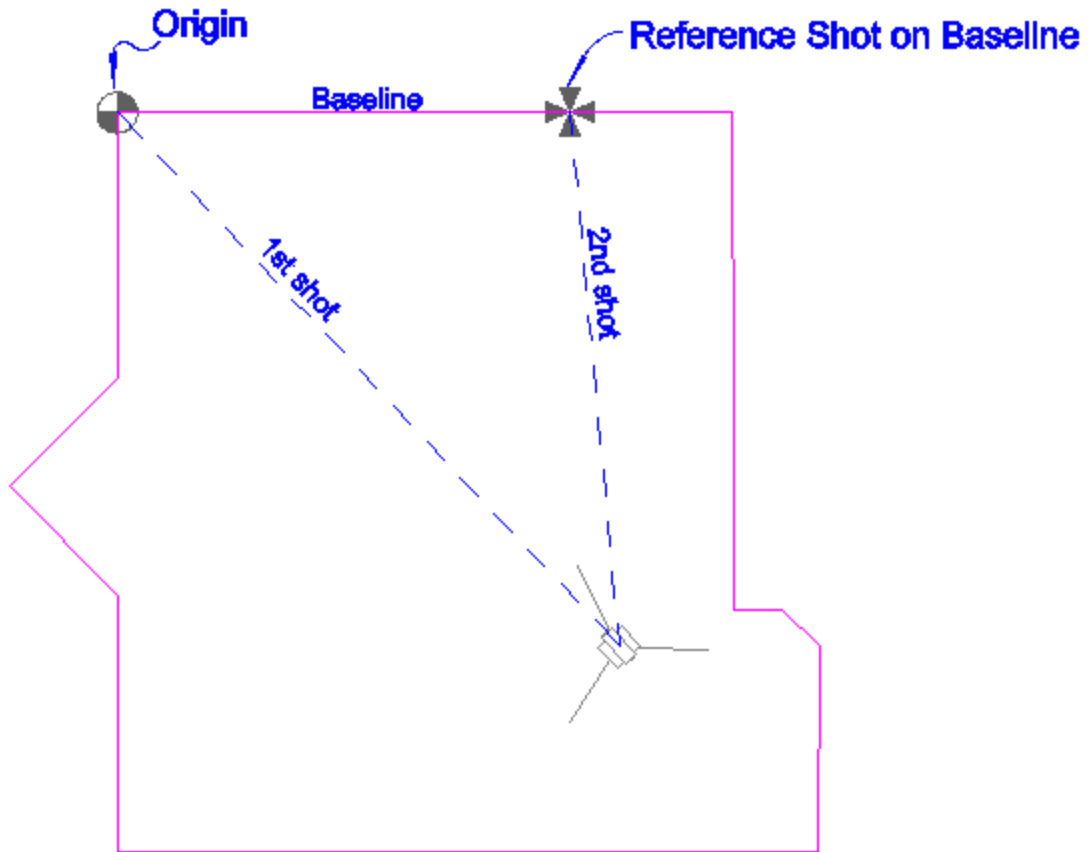


Occupy Room

[Main Menu](#) | [Mapping Methods](#) | [Occupy Room](#)

When setting up a total station in a room, in certain circumstances it is advantageous to define one of the room's walls as a baseline for the scene.

Using this method ensures that your room is square to your coordinate system. This makes the scene easier to work in Evidence Recorder and when imported into your desktop drawing program. Another benefit to using this feature is that all points mapped with the total station will be referenced to the origin and baseline.



Function

Usually this feature will be used in a new project, but it could be used in an existing scene if needed. In this example we will begin by creating a new scene.

From the Map Screen, go to **Main Menu | Mapping Methods | Occupy Room**.

Occupy Room ? Help

Baseline Orientation: North

Instrument Height: 0.000m

Position of Origin

X: 0.000m

Y: 0.000m

Z: 0.000m

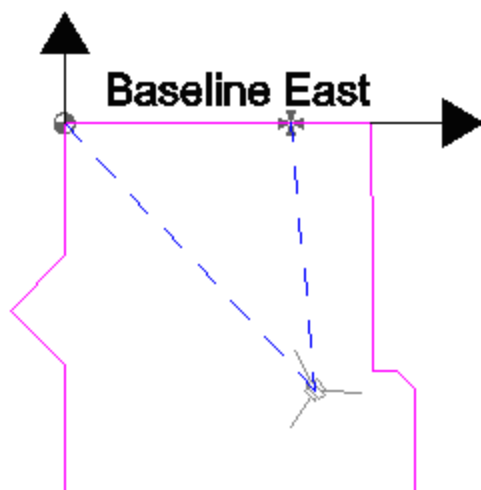
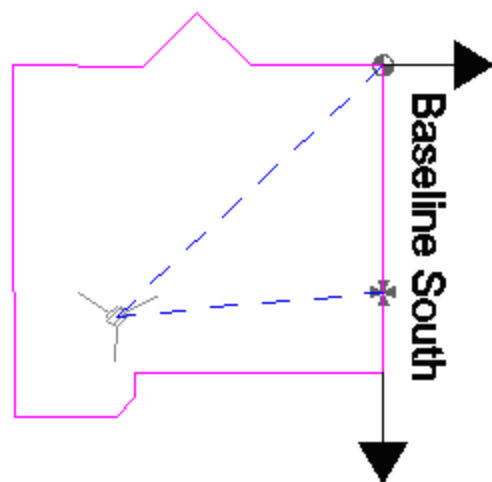
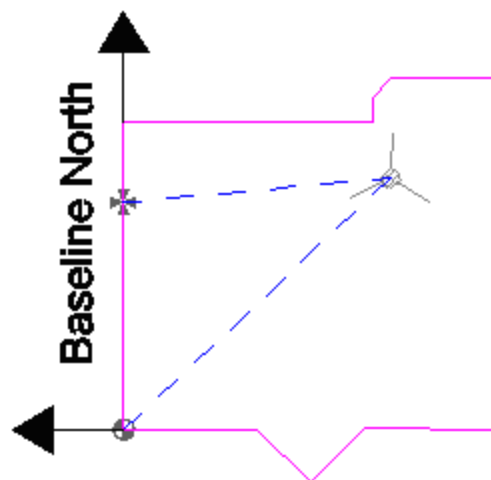
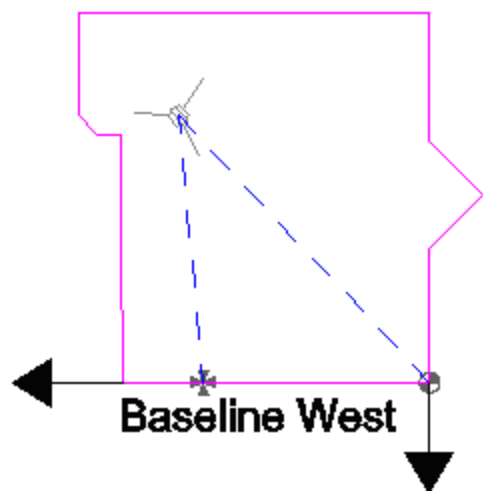
Measure Baseline Occupy Inst Close

In the Occupy Room screen you need to specify the orientation of the baseline, your instrument height and the position that you want to use for the origin point.

Baseline Direction

This is the direction that you want the wall "baseline" to face in your project. The direction that you use is totally up to you. You should pick a direction that will help you visually confirm that the points you're mapping are correct. If you refer to the image at the beginning of this document, the instrument was setup in the lower right corner of the room. From the instrument operator's perspective, it made sense to use a baseline set to East so the far wall would be horizontal along the X axis in the project. If you look at the image of the Tracker at the beginning of this topic, you will see that using this feature makes the room align with your scene's coordinate system.

In the examples below, the same origin coordinates and total station measurement were used. The only thing that was different, was the direction specified for the baseline.



Position of Origin

The default coordinates are 0, but any value could be used. The origin will be located and defined by your first measurement.

Usually you will want the bottom corner of the wall to be equal to the z value you define. Assuming you're using a reflectorless instrument, if you can't see the bottom corner directly with the instrument, you can measure up the wall and mark a point a known distance from the floor. Then sight this point with your instrument, but make sure you define the distance you measured as your new target height. Otherwise, if no target height is specified, the location you measure at the corner will be the origin.

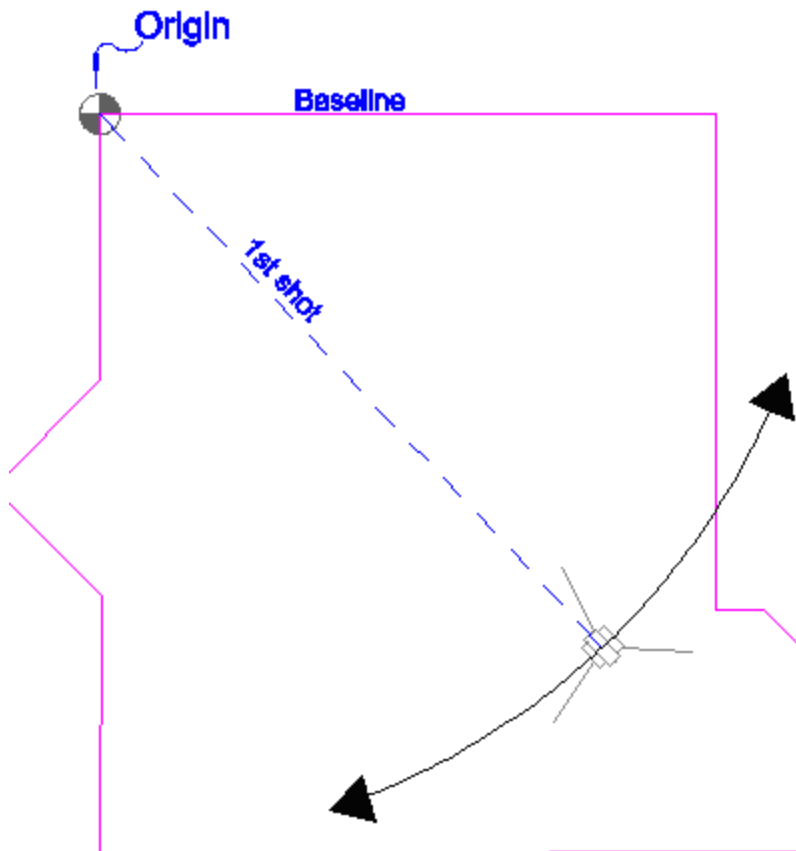
Measure Baseline

When you press this you will be required to measure two shots; one to define the origin and the other to define the location of the instrument in reference to the baseline.

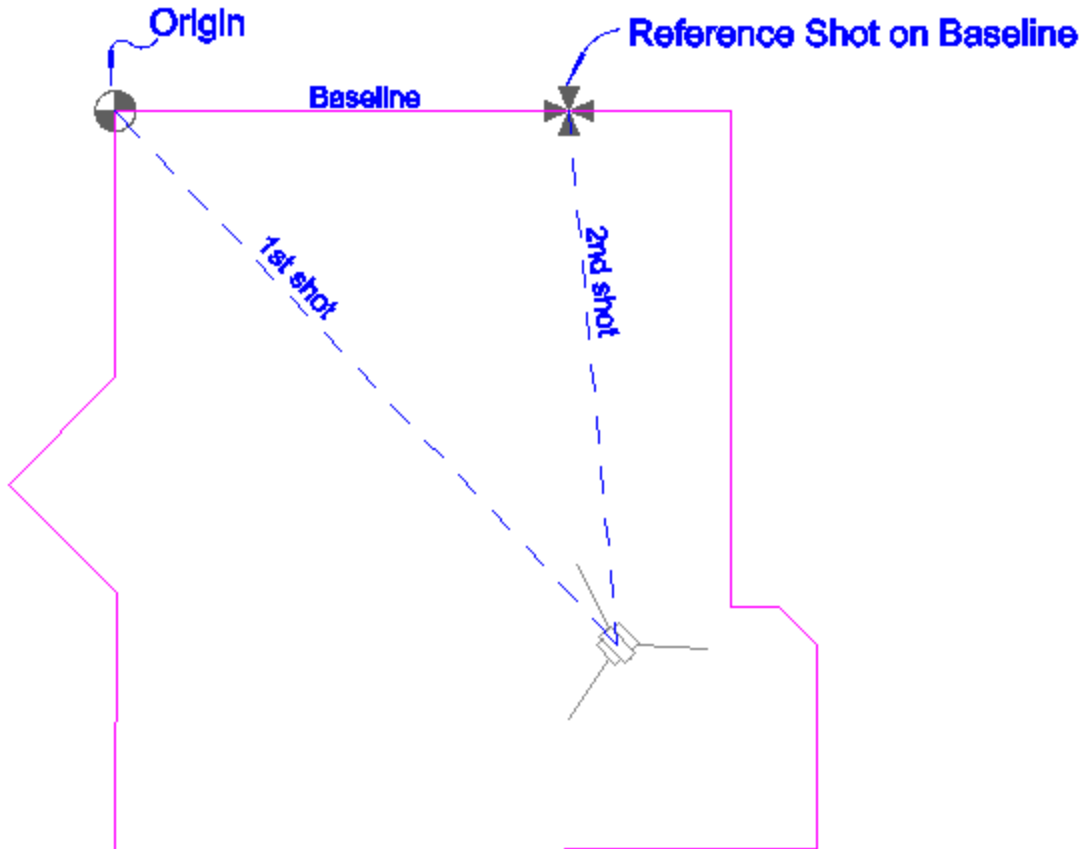
How it Works

Using the origin, and the baseline direction you specified, a "baseline" is created.

Using the first shot, the instrument position can not be accurately calculated yet. The instrument isn't referenced to the baseline yet, and hinges around the origin point.



Then using the second shot, the total station location in the room can be accurately computed.



Store Reference (Occupy) Position

After you finish measuring the necessary measurement, you will be taken back to the Occupy Room screen.

You will now see that the Occupy Inst screen is enabled. Press this to accept your measurements and Evidence Recorder will store a new point for the reference point. Also, in the raw file Occupy point records will be recorded along with the measurements made on the wall.

```
--Occupy Room
--Baseline Direction: East
--N 0.0000,E 0.0000,EL0.0000,--Origin Pnt
--HI1.310,HR1.514,AR25.16100,ZE88.26290,SD7.0790,--Pnt for Origin
--HI1.310,HR1.514,AR63.18170,ZE88.26220,SD5.1750,--Pnt on Baseline
OC,OP1,N -5.1514,E 4.8516,EL0.0115,--RP
```

```
| BK,OP1,BP0,BS316.42594,BC25.16100
| LS,HI1.310,HR1.514
|
```

You are now ready to continue mapping your scene.

Map Point

Main Menu | Mapping Methods | Map Point

If you like reviewing your shots prior to being stored in the database and raw file, then this is the mode you should use. When you press the measure button on the instrument toolbar, after the shot is measured you will see the store point screen prior to storing the point.

When you set this mode you will see the word **Map Pnt** on the measurement mode button.

When you take a shot using the measure button you will see the [Store/Edit Point](#) screen.

You can also confirm or change the Target Height used for this shot.

After reviewing the information you have three choices to make.

[Store Pnt](#)

Press this to store the coordinate in the database and create a sideshot record (SS) in the raw file.

```
| SS,OP350,FP3,AR0.00000,ZE94.50090,SD13.2700,--<No Desc>
|
```

[Cancel](#)

Press this to cancel the shot and not store anything.

Note: For more information on the other buttons found on this screen please read the [Store / Edit Points](#) topic.

Map Point (Auto Store)

[Main Menu](#) | [Mapping Methods](#) | [Map Point \(Auto Store\)](#)

Use this when you have production in mind and you don't need to review your shots before they're recorded in the database and raw file. The measure mode allows you to press the measure button and it will store the point in the database and plot it in the drawing without asking you for any further information.

When in this mode you will see the words **Map Pnt (Auto)** on the measure mode button.

It will use the following settings from the main interface when storing the point:

Next Point Number ID

The current point ID on the topo toolbar will be assigned to the point.

Description

The current description on the topo toolbar will be assigned to the point.

Height of Target

The current HT on the instrument toolbar will be used to compute the elevation of the point.

Note:

When measuring in the Auto Store mode, a SS record will be recorded in the raw file.

Resection

[Main Menu](#) | [Mapping Methods](#) | [Resection](#)

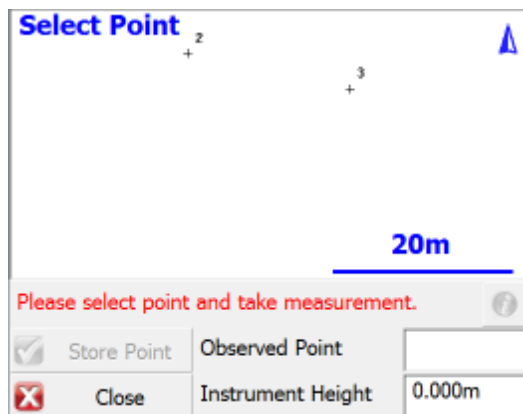
Evidence Recorder has a multi-point resection routine that can be used to compute a point for a setup. It will use a least squares solution to determine the coordinates from the measurements you make to your points. The goal at the end of a resection is to compute the unknown coordinates of the instrument's current location based on measurements made to other known points in the project.

- As a minimum you need to have two points to resect to.
- You can shoot the resection point in the direct or reverse face.
- You can take multiple shots to the same resection point.
- There is no limit to the amount of points you can resect to.
- When you store your resection point, an occupy record will be created for you automatically.

Specify the Resection Reference Points

First Shot

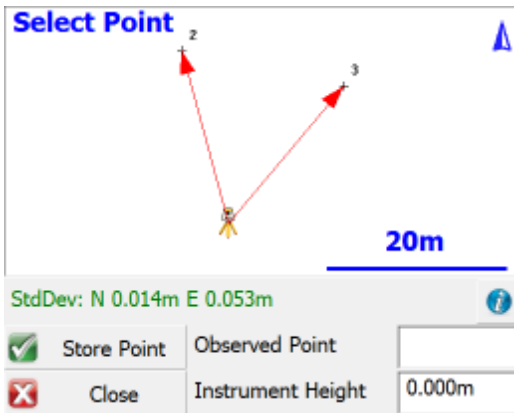
When you start the command you will see the reference point toolbar. Specify your instrument height and select a reference point to measure. After you select a point, you can press the **Measure** button to record a shot.



Second Shot

To record the second shot, simply select it from the map screen, then press the **Measure** button. A minimum of two points are needed to compute a position for the instrument, but you can shoot more points if needed to increase the accuracy of the instrument position. The estimated accuracy of the instrument location will be displayed for you on the toolbar. If the estimated error is within your own tolerances, then you can go ahead and store the point by pressing the **Store Point** button. All successful solutions will be displayed with green text starting with the characters **StdDev:**.

Press the **Close** button to cancel out of the routine. You may need to do this if the solution does not converge, and you need to restart the routine.



Three or More Shots

If you have more points to reference to you can continue measuring them using the same process as you did when you shot the second point. As you record more points you should notice that the standard deviations for the northing and easting will begin to get smaller.

Standard Deviation

This is the computed precision for the overall geometry of the resection. Small errors indicate that the measured data "fits" very well with the geometry defined by the known points.

Large errors can indicate that bad measurements were recorded, either due to careless measurement practices such as not holding the prism pole straight or not carefully sighting the prism. Large errors can also happen if the geometry defined by the known points, is not "in the same place" as it was when the points were previously measured.

Please note that while the Standard Deviation relates to the quality of your resection, it is possible to have a low StdDev yet still have a high positional error. As such, it is important that you also look at the angle and distance errors shown in the Information screen when considering the overall accuracy of your resection.

Information (Horizontal and Vertical Filters)

You can enter this screen by pressing the **Information** button  on the top right corner of the reference point toolbar. When you do, you will see a detailed summary of the measurements.

Valid Solution:
StdDev: N 0.014m E 0.053m

Point	Backsight	Use H	Use V	HA Error	HD Error	VD Error
2	☒	☒	☒		0.010m	0.000m
3	☐	☒	☒	-0°00'07"	0.010m	0.000m

 Close

You can determine how each shot to the reference points should be used to compute the resection point. By default each observation you make will be used to compute both the horizontal and vertical position of the resection solution, but you can override this by setting the **Use H** and **Use V** options for each measurement.

Use H	Use V	Result
✓	✓	This shot will be used to compute both the horizontal and vertical position.
✓	✗	This shot will be used to compute only the horizontal position.
✗	✓	This shot will be used to compute only the vertical position.
✗	✗	The shot will be ignored in the computation.

You can also select which observation is to be your backsight point.

HA Error

The horizontal angle error is computed as follows. Using the computed resection point and the measured horizontal angle, a theoretical direction is computed to the reference point. This direction is then compared to the direction measured (plate reading) and the difference is noted in the HA Err column.

HD Error

The horizontal distance error is computed as follows. An inverse is made between the resection point and the reference point. This inversed distance is then compared to the measured distance and the difference is noted in the HD Err column.

VD Error

The vertical distance error is computed as follows. Using the resection elevation, and the observation to the reference point, a new elevation is computed for the reference point. This computed elevation is

then compared to the reference point's original elevation and the difference is noted in the VD column.

Resection Modes

At any time during the collection of your observations you can choose to shoot an **Angle & Distance** or **Angles Only** measurement. You can control this by pressing the measurement mode button on the [instrument toolbar](#) after you have started your resection.

Store the Resection Point

When you're satisfied with the resection point you can store its new position by pressing the **Store Pnt** button. This will then display the store / edit screen.

Finally you will see the [backsight results](#) screen.

The screenshot shows a software interface for recording backsight observations. It is divided into three main sections: 'Backsight Observations', 'Backsight Errors', and 'Plate Setting'. At the bottom are three buttons: 'Accept' (with a green checkmark icon), 'Observe Again' (with a red 'X' icon), and 'Cancel'.

Backsight Observations			
HA	345°00'00"	VA	90°00'00"
SD	19.969m	HD	19.969m
HI	0.000m	HT	0.000m

Backsight Errors			
Calc Horz Dist	19.979m	Error	-0.010m
Calc Elev	100.000m	Error	0.000m
☐ Reciprocate Traverse			

Plate Setting	
Do Not Modify	345°00'00"

The backsight point that will be stored will be based on which point you selected in the Information screen shown above, which by default is the first reference point you observed. You do not need to take another measurement to the backsight as it has the original measurement you made. At this point you can do the following:

- Confirm the instrument and target heights.
- Decide if you would like to sight it again and take another measurement.

Raw File Record

After your store you point, several records will be written to the raw file.

```
--Resection
SP,PN5000,N 1009.1534,E 1000.0000,EL100.3244,--
SP,PN6034,N 1006.1995,E 1002.8319,EL99.7321,--FS
SP,PN6035,N 1001.4706,E 1004.8775,EL99.7361,--FS
RS,PN5000,CR359.59590,ZE87.49010,SD9.1600
```

```
RS,PN6034,CR24.33000,ZE92.03450,SD6.8280
RS,PN6035,CR73.13080,ZE92.43050,SD5.1010
SP,PN6036,N 999.9998,E 999.9998,EL100.0011,--
OC,OP6036,N 999.9998,E 999.9998,EL100.0011,--
SP,PN5000,N 1009.1534,E 1000.0000,EL100.3244,--
BK,OP6036,BP5000,BS0.00039,BC0.00000
--Occupy Check
-- Observed Values: HA 0°00'00.0" VA 87°49'22.0" SD 9.160m HD 9.153m
-- Distance Calculated: 9.154m
-- Distance Error: -0.000m
-- BS Elevation: 100.324m
-- BS Elevation Error: 0.001m
```

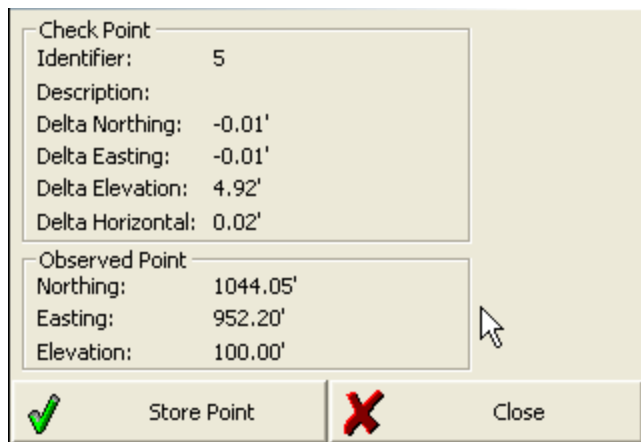
Check Point

Main Menu | Mapping Methods | Check Point

Use this to measure a check shot to an existing point. When you start the command you will see the point chooser appear where you can create a new point or pick an existing one from a list or from the screen. After you choose your point you will be ready to measure. You will note the measure mode will be set to **Check Pnt** and if you need to cancel the operation you can do it by pressing the measure mode button and choose to cancel it.

Check Point Summary

When you're ready to record the shot press the **Measure** button on the instrument toolbar. You will be presented with a screen that compares your measured values to the ones that were computed for the check shot point.



The image shows a software dialog box titled "Check Point". It contains two sections: "Check Point" and "Observed Point". The "Check Point" section lists: Identifier: 5, Description: (empty), Delta Northing: -0.01', Delta Easting: -0.01', Delta Elevation: 4.92', and Delta Horizontal: 0.02'. The "Observed Point" section lists: Northing: 1044.05', Easting: 952.20', and Elevation: 100.00'. At the bottom, there are two buttons: "Store Point" with a green checkmark icon and "Close" with a red X icon.

Check Point	
Identifier:	5
Description:	
Delta Northing:	-0.01'
Delta Easting:	-0.01'
Delta Elevation:	4.92'
Delta Horizontal:	0.02'

Observed Point	
Northing:	1044.05'
Easting:	952.20'
Elevation:	100.00'

 Store Point  Close

The deltas that are displayed are computed by subtracting the shot coordinates from the known coordinates. In other words if you add the deltas to the shot point coordinates you will end up at the known point.

Store Point

Pressing this will exit the function and write several notes to the raw file summarizing your check shot, and allow you to store the shot using the [Store/Edit Point](#) screen.

```
--Check Point
-- Check Point ID: 110
-- Check Point dNorthing: -4.59'
-- Check Point dEasting: -1.82'
-- Check Point dElevation: -4.96'
-- Check Point dHorizontal: 4.94'
-- Observed Values: HA 45°00'00.0" VA 90°00'00.0" SD 23.00' HR 5.00'
-- Observed Point Northing: 5016.26'
-- Observed Point Easting: 5016.26'
-- Observed Point Elevation: 95.00'
```

Close

This will exit the check shot function and not write anything to the raw file or storing a new point.

Check Backsight

[Main Menu](#) | [Mapping Methods](#) | [Check Backsight](#)

Use this to check your backsight. Evidence Recorder will compare your newly measured value to the one that was stored for your current setup. You will be able to review difference and optionally update your current setup with the new shot to the backsight.

When you start the command you will be taken back to the map screen and the measure mode will be set to **Check BS**. You have two measure modes available when taking a check shot to your backsight. Please see the [Backsight Measure Mode](#) topic for more information.

Check Backsight Summary

When you're ready to record the shot press the **Measure** button on the instrument toolbar. You will be presented with a screen that compares your measured values to the ones that were stored for the current backsight.

Backsight Setup:	0°00'00"
Backsight Measured:	359°58'24"
Backsight Error:	-0°01'36"
Distance Calculated:	100.00'
Distance Measured:	99.87'
Distance Error:	0.13'

Update Backsight

 Close

Update Backsight

Pressing this will create a record in the raw file updating your setup and backsight record with the shot information from your check shot. Several notes will also be written to the raw file summarizing your shot. When you choose to update the backsight, a new OC and BK record is saved as well as the shot information. You will also see the word (Updated) which indicates that the user selected the Update button.

```

OC,OP5,N 763.8748,E 1000.0000,EL0.0000,--
SP,PN1,N 1000.0000,E 1000.0000,EL100.0000,--start
BK,OP5,BP1,BS0.00000,BC0.00000
LS,HI0.000,HR5.000
--Backsight Check (Updated)
-- Observed Values: HA 0°00'00.0" VA 90°00'00.0" SD 163.12'
-- Backsight Setup: 0°00'00"
-- Backsight Measured: 0°00'00"
-- Backsight Error: 0°00'00"
-- Distance Calculated: 236.13'
-- Distance Measured: 163.12'
-- Distance Error: 73.01'

```

Close

Pressing this will exit the function and write several notes to the raw file summarizing your check shot.

```

--Backsight Check (Not Updated)
-- Observed Values: HA 0°00'00.0" VA 90°00'00.0" SD 236.10'
-- Backsight Setup: 0°00'00"
-- Backsight Measured: 0°00'00"
-- Backsight Error: 0°00'00"
-- Distance Calculated: 236.13'

```

-- Distance Measured: 236.10'

-- Distance Error: 0.03'

Horizontal Angle Offset

Main Menu | Mapping Methods | Horizontal Angle Offset

Evidence Recorder includes a flexible angle offset routine. It allows you to shoot the angle and distance to a point that can not be occupied by the rod. An example of where you would use this is if you wanted to record the center of a large object, such as a tree.

When you choose the Horizontal Angle Offset measurement mode you will see the following screen.

FieldGenius

Horizontal Angle Offset

	Angle (Center)	Distance
HA		
VA		
SD		
HR		
HI		

No Solution

Observe Angle

Observe Distance

Store Point

X

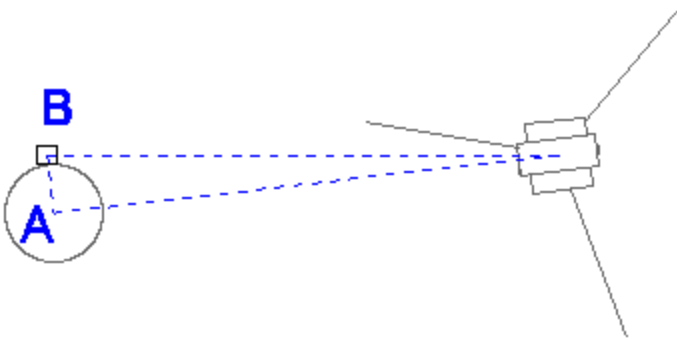
Cancel

Two observations are required: one to record the angle to the center of the object, and a second to measure a distance perpendicular to the object's center.

On this screen you determine what order you will make these two measurements. All you need to do is press either the **Observe Angle** or **Observe Distance** button.

Note: You can increase the size of the text shown in the grid by setting the Text Size option in the [Options screen](#).

Note: The Quick Measure Modes option in the [Options screen](#) will affect what happens when you press the Observe buttons when you are using the offset routines. If Quick Measure Modes is on, a measurement will automatically be taken. If it is off, the Observe button doesn't actually trigger your total station to take a measurement; it simply takes you to the map screen where you can press the  measure button once you are ready to take the measurement.



Angle (Center)

This will record the total station's horizontal angle. When measuring the angle, you should point the total station towards the center of the new point that will be created. This would be measurement "A" in the diagram shown above.

Note: You do not need to sight a prism to record the angle, simply sight the new point and press the **Observe Angle** button.

Distance

This will record a distance, measured to a prism which is located at the side of the object. You should try to locate the prism so that it is perpendicular to the center of the object and the line-of-sight from the total station. This is measurement "B" in the diagram shown above.

Note: The target height is important on this shot, because the new point will have the same elevation.

Storing the Shot

After you record your measurements you can store the new point by pressing the **Store Point** button.

FieldGenius

Horizontal Angle Offset

	Angle (Center)	Distance
HA	125°46'20"	125°46'20"
VA	88°49'53"	88°49'53"
SD	--	27.342m
HR	--	0.000m
HI	1.220m	1.220m

Horizontal Distance: 0.000m

Observe Angle

Observe Distance

Store Point

X

Cancel

After you store the point, you can continue using the offset command to record additional points, or exit it by pressing the **Cancel** button.

Raw File Record

In the raw file the OF records represent the measurements that were made and the SS record is derived using the two OF records

| OF,AR94.49380,ZE88.41340,SD27.3163 |

| OF,OL93.25450,--Right Angle Offset |

| SS,OP1,FP23,AR93.25450,ZE88.41340,SD27.3081,--ROAD |

Vertical Angle Offset

Main Menu | Mapping Methods | Vertical Angle Offset

When you begin the vertical angle offset routine, you will see the following screen.

Two observations are required, one to record the top or bottom of the object, and a second to measure a distance that is directly underneath or above the new point.

Vertical Angle Offset		
	Angle (Height)	Distance
HA		
VA		
SD		
HR		
HI		

No Solution

Observe Angle Observe Distance Store Point  Cancel

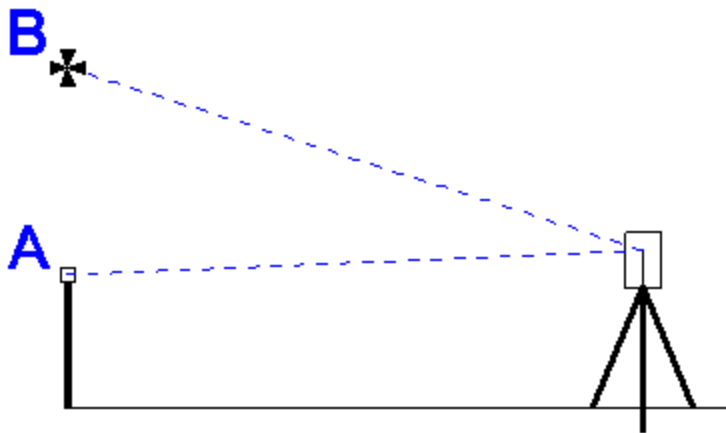
On this screen you determine what order you will make these two measurements. All you need to do is press either the **Observe Angle** or **Observe Distance** button.

Note: You can increase the size of the text shown in the grid by setting the Text Size option in the [Options screen](#).

Note: The Quick Measure Modes option in the [Options screen](#) will affect what happens when you press the Measure button when you are using the offset routines. If Quick Measure Modes is on, a measurement will automatically be taken. If it is off, the measure button doesn't actually trigger your total station to take a measurement; it simply takes you to the map screen where you can press the



measure button once you are ready to take the measurement.



For example if point "B" was the bottom of an underpass, you could measure it's height. Usually it is easier if you position the prism so it is directly beneath the point you want to shoot. You would then record a distance observation to this location which will also be the horizontal position for the new point. Then without turning your instrument, you could rotate the scope vertically so it is sighted on the bottom of the overpass. You could then record this observation which will be used to compute the elevation for the new point.

Once you've recorded these two measurements, you will be able to store the new position.

Storing the Shot

After you make your measurements, you will be able to store the new point. Press the **Store Point** button to store the point.

Raw File Record

In the raw file the OF records represent the measurements that were made. The SS record is the record that was used to compute the coordinate point for the angle offset and will be a compilation of your two shots.

```
| OF,AR52.53170,ZE91.12240,SD9.5616 |
| OF,ZE91.12240,--Vert Angle Offset |
| SS,OP1,FP2,AR52.53170,ZE91.12240,SD9.5616,--<No Desc> |
```

Distance Offset

Main Menu | Mapping Methods | Distance Offset

Evidence Recorder allows you to do a distance offset to specify an offset forward or backward along the line of sight, left or right, and vertically up or down.

When you choose distance offset command and take a measurement, you will see the following screen:

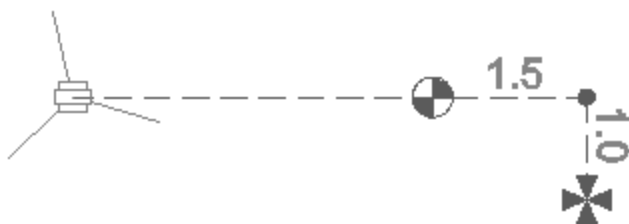
Distance Offsets

☒ Offsets viewed from the instrument
☐ Offsets viewed from the prism

Forward Offset
 Right Offset
 Up Offset

All distances are with respect to the horizontal plane.

Store Point Cancel



From this screen you can specify if the offsets are with respect to the instrument or prism.

- Offset buttons act as toggles, which allow you to easily define the direction the offset should be applied.
- A negative offset will automatically be converted to a positive value.
- The elevation of the point will be computed from your shot. This elevation will remain unchanged unless you specify a vertical offset.
- The distance is assumed to be horizontal.

Forward / Back Offset

Enter the offset distance from the shot position to the new position.

Right / Left Offset

Enter the perpendicular offset distance from the shot position to the new position.

Up / Down Offset

Enter the vertical offset distance from the shot position to the new position.

Store Point

After you have entered your offsets you can press the **Store Point** button to save the point

Raw Record

A sideshot (SS) record will be computed to represent the shot. The new SS record will use the original observation plus any offsets defined in the distance offset screen.

```
OF,AR55.00000,ZE90.00000,SD12.0000
OF,HD1.5000,--Horizontal Distance Offset
OF,LR1.0000,--Left / Right Offset
OF,VD0.0000,--Elevation Offset
SS,OP1,FP6028,AR59.14110,ZE90.00000,SD13.5370,--
```

Note: Offsets that are to the left, back or down will be stored in the raw file with a negative value.

Manual Distance

[Main Menu](#) | [Mapping Methods](#) | [Manual Distance](#)

Use this mode to shoot an observation where only the horizontal and zenith angles will be measured with the instrument. You will be then prompted to enter the distance.

When you set the measurement mode to manual distance and press the measure button the horizontal and vertical angles will be read from your total station. Since this is only measuring angles, you do not need to have a prism to shoot to.

Following this you will see a screen allowing you to enter a horizontal distance.

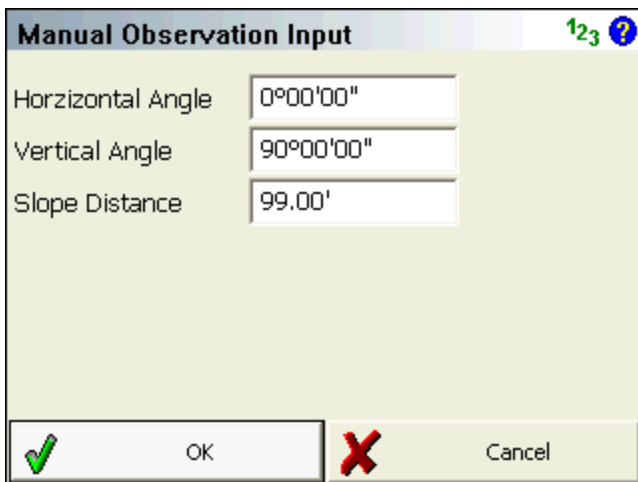
Press **OK** to save the point. You will now see the measurement info screen.

A regular sideshot record will be created in the raw file.

Manual Entry

[Main Menu](#) | [Mapping Methods](#) | [Manual Entry](#)

When you set the measurement mode to manual entry on the instrument toolbar you will be required to manually input your measurements. When you press the measure button you will see the following screen:



The image shows a software dialog box titled "Manual Observation Input". It has a title bar with a green "123" icon and a blue question mark icon. The dialog contains three input fields: "Horizontal Angle" with the value "0°00'00\"", "Vertical Angle" with the value "90°00'00\"", and "Slope Distance" with the value "99.00'". At the bottom, there are two buttons: "OK" with a green checkmark icon and "Cancel" with a red X icon.

Press **OK** to Store the point.

A normal sideshot record will be written to the raw file just as if you shot it with a total station.

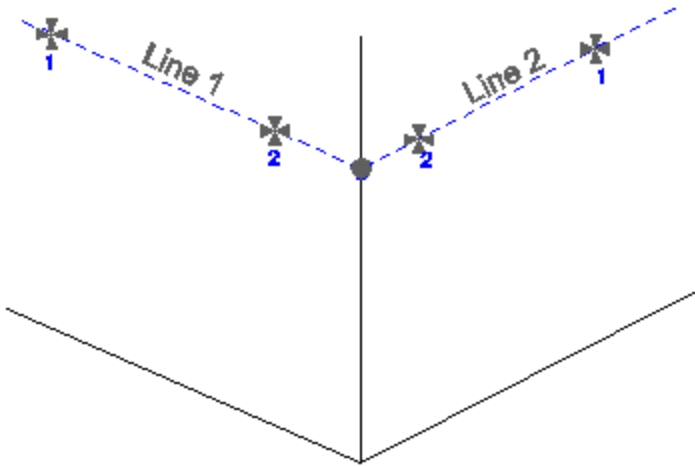
Tip:

You can also use the Manual Entry mode for repeating your last shot. If you have previously taken a measurement, then the angle and distance values on this screen will default to those of your previous shot.

Two Line Intersection

[Main Menu](#) | [Mapping Methods](#) | [Two Line Intersection](#)

The two line intersection command is used to locate the corner of an object, whose corner can not be directly measured. Two intersecting lines will be defined by four measurements, two shots on each line. The intersection of these two lines will define the corner of the object. This routine is intended to be used with a reflectorless total station.



Measure Points

When you start the two line intersection command, you will see an empty list. Each row represents a measurement to a point on one of the two lines needed to compute the intersection.

Highlight the row that you would like to make a measurement for and simply press the **Measure** button to begin the measuring process.

If you need to redo a measurement, simply highlight it in the list and press the measure button.

Notes:

1. You can shoot the points in any order you like, Evidence Recorder will determine what direction to go in to compute an intersection
2. The x and y values for the new point will be computed using the intersection of the two lines.
3. The two lines you define will rarely intersect at exactly the same point. The elevation of where the lines intersect will be averaged, and used as the z value for the new point.

Two Line Intersection

123

Highlight a point and press the measure button to record an observation.

Point	Horizontal Angle	Vertical Angle
Line 1 - Pnt 1	272°27'03.0"	49°24'56.0"
Line 1 - Pnt 2	339°07'04.0"	63°38'59.0"
Line 2 - Pnt 1	47°03'37.0"	75°26'09.0"
Line 2 - Pnt 2	24°16'52.0"	72°56'40.0"

Measure

Store Pnt

Close

Note: You can increase the size of the text shown in the grid by setting the Text Size option in the [Options screen](#).

Store the Point

Once you've made measurements to the four points that will define the two intersection lines, you can press the Store Point button. This will store a point in the map screen, store a point in the database as well as record information to the raw file.

Raw File

Everything about the intersection is stored in the raw file.

--Two Line Intersection

--HI1.340,HR0.000,AR280.55220,ZE81.15170,SD6.8350,--Pnt 1 of Line 1

--HI1.340,HR0.000,AR276.59380,ZE81.05590,SD6.4400,--Pnt 2 of Line 1

--HI1.340,HR0.000,AR287.18580,ZE81.13350,SD6.7960,--Pnt 1 of Line 2

--HI1.340,HR0.000,AR296.06280,ZE80.14520,SD6.0940,--Pnt 2 of Line 2

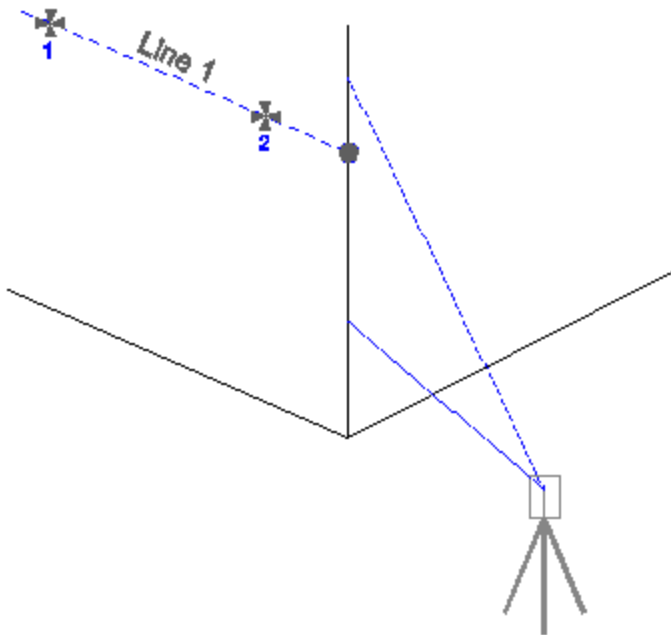
SP,PN3,N -0.0039,E -0.0060,EL0.5325,--

Line - Angle Offset

[Main Menu](#) | [Mapping Methods](#) | [Line - Angle Offset](#)

[Main Menu](#) | [Measure Modes](#) | [Line - Angle Offset](#)

The line-angle offset command is used to define two points that will be used to establish a reference line then measure an angle that intersects this reference line, and Evidence Recorder will automatically compute the coordinate at the intersecting point.



An example of where you might use this is to locate the corner wall of a building. Simply shoot two points on one of the walls, then turn the instrument so it is pointing anywhere along the corner of the building. This command is intended to be used with reflectorless total stations.

Measure Points

When you start line angle offset command, you will see an empty list.

Highlight the row that you would like to make a measurement for and simply press the **Measure** button to begin the measuring process.

If you need to redo a measurement, simply highlight it in the list and press the measure button.

Notes:

1. You can shoot the points in any order you like, Evidence Recorder will determine what direction to go in to compute an intersection
2. The x and y values for the new point will be computed using the intersection of the line and the angle that was read.
3. The z value for the new point will be computed using the projected elevation along the reference line to the point where an intersection is computed.

Line - Angle Offset

123 ?

Highlight a point and press the measure button to record an observation.

Point	Horizontal Angle	Vertical Angle
Line - Pnt 1	358°32'26.0"	75°51'37.0"
Line - Pnt 2	19°40'52.0"	75°26'50.0"
Angle Offset	24°22'49.0"	75°26'52.0"

<

>

Measure

Store Pnt

Close

Note: You can increase the size of the text shown in the grid by setting the Text Size option in the [Options screen](#).

Store the Point

Once you've made your measurements that will be used to compute the intersection, you can press the **Store Point** button. This will store a point in the map screen, store a point in the database as well as record information to the raw file.

Raw File

Everything about the intersection is stored in the raw file.

--Line - Angle Offset

--HI1.340,HR0.000,AR280.55530,ZE81.12550,SD6.8330,--Pnt 1 of Line

--HI1.340,HR0.000,AR277.37420,ZE80.47010,SD6.5020,--Pnt 2 of Line

--HI1.340,HR0.000,AR283.46460,ZE86.15500,--Angle Offset

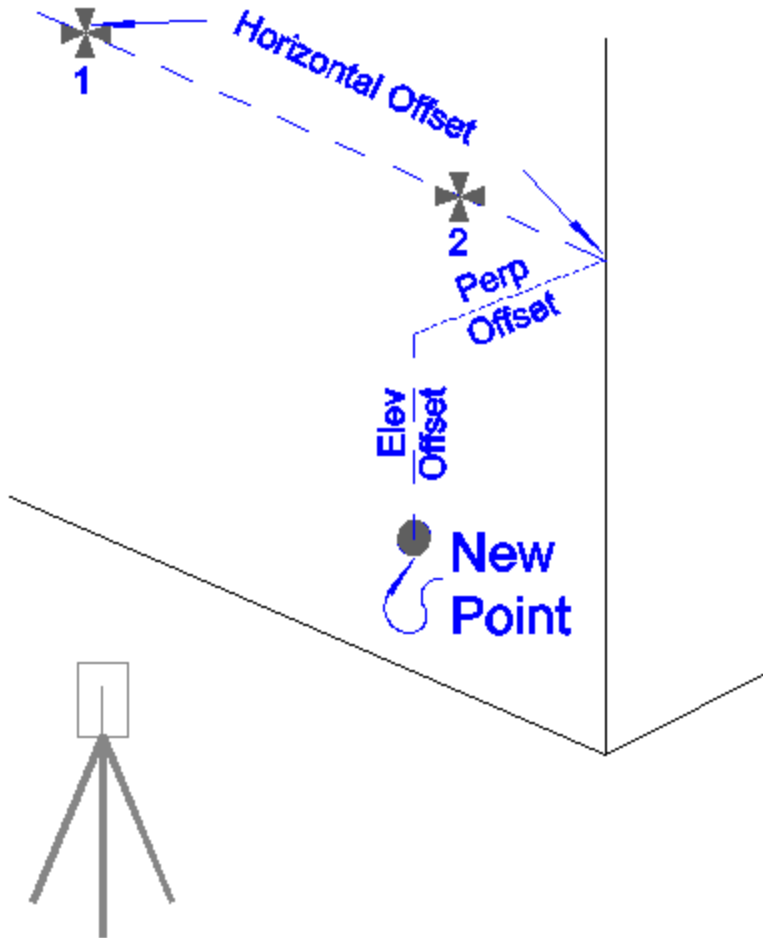
SP,PN4,N -0.0050,E 0.0051,EL0.5761,--

Line - Distance Offset

[Main Menu](#) | [Mapping Methods](#) | [Line - Distance Offset](#)

The line distance offset command is used to define two points that will be used to establish a reference line. Once the reference line is established you can then specify offsets along the reference line to the new point.

This is a very powerful offsetting tool that can be used in a lot of different situations.



When you define your reference line, there are three types of offset that can be applied.

You can define a horizontal offset, a perpendicular offset and a vertical (elevation) offset. Each offset button is a toggle that allows you to toggle how the offset is to be applied in relation to the reference line.

When you define the offset direction, you can then enter in the value that you want to offset by.

If the horizontal offset remains set to zero, perpendicular or elevation offset will be applied in relation to point one on the reference line.

Offsets

Horizontal Offset

The horizontal offset can either be left or right of the first point on the reference line. From the total station's perspective, if the new point is to the right of point 1, then you would use the Horz Offset Right of Pnt 1. If it is to the left, then logically, it would be a left offset so you would use the Horz Offset Left of Pnt 1 setting.

Perpendicular Offset

The perpendicular offset is a horizontal distance applied perpendicular to the reference line. From the total station's perspective, when moving perpendicular from the reference line, if the new point ends up being closer to the total station, then you would set the perpendicular offset to Perp Offset Towards Inst. Alternatively, if the new point ends up being farther from the total station, then you would use the Perp Offset Away From Inst.

Elevation Offset

This is the vertical offset from the reference line to the new point. If the new point is above the reference line, then you would set this to Elev Offset Up. If the new point is below the reference line you would set it to Elev Offset Down.

Measure Points

When you start line angle offset command, you will see an empty list.

Highlight the row that you would like to make a measurement for and simply press the **Measure** button to begin the measuring process.

If you need to redo a measurement, simply highlight it in the list and press the measure button.

Notes:

1. The x and y values for the new point will be computed using the horizontal and perpendicular offsets defined by the user. These horizontal offset is referenced to point 1 on the reference line. The perpendicular offset is a perpendicular offset from the reference line.
2. The z value for the new point will be computed using the projected elevation along the reference line, plus or minus any elevation offsets defined by the user.

Line - Distance Offset   

Highlight a point on the line and press the measure button to record an observation. All offsets are respect to Point 1.

Point	Horizontal Angle	Vertical Angle	Σ
Line - Pnt 1	357°09'12.0"	81°12'25.0"	2
Line - Pnt 2	353°50'43.0"	80°46'59.0"	2

◀ ▶

Horz Offset Right of Pnt 1
 Perp Offset Away From Inst
 Elev Offset Up

Measure  Close

Note: You can increase the size of the text shown in the grid by setting the Text Size option in the [Options screen](#).

Store the Point

Once you've made your measurements that will be used to compute the intersection, you can press the **Store Point** button. This will store a point in the map screen, store a point in the database as well as record information to the raw file.

Raw File

Everything about the intersection is stored in the raw file.

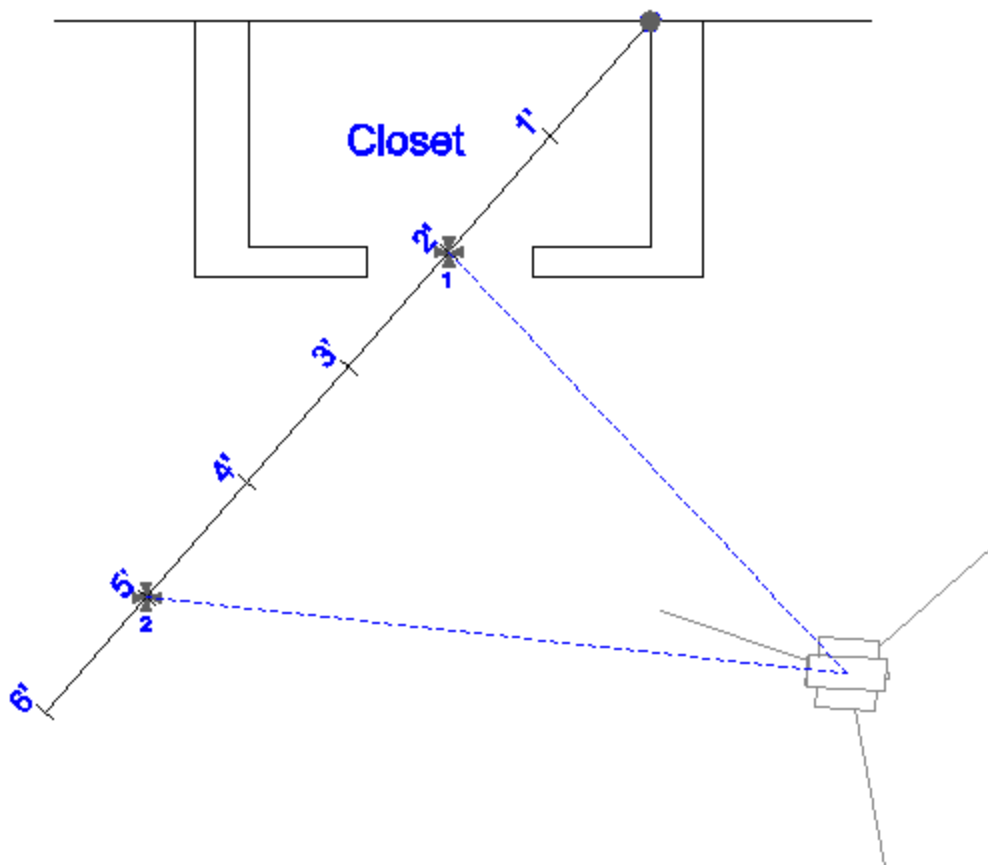
```
--Line - Distance Offset
--HI0.000,HR0.000,AR357.09120,ZE81.12250,SD22.4114,--Pnt 1 of Line
--HI0.000,HR0.000,AR353.50430,ZE80.46590,SD21.3255,--Pnt 2 of Line
--Horizontal Offset: 2.000
--Perpendicular Offset: 0.000
--Elevation Offset: 0.000
SP,PN1018,N 123.5558,E 100.2931,EL103.4035,--EV2
```

Example

The top corner in a closet needs to be located, but it isn't visible from the total station.

So the user lays a hand tape on the floor, with the start of the tape located at the bottom corner of the closet, directly below the point that needs to be recorded. The direction of the tape is then laid out such that two measurements can be made on the tape.

Essentially, the tape now becomes the reference line. Two shots are taken, one at the 2 foot mark, and the other at the 5 foot mark.



After you take your two measurements, all you need to define is the offset distances. In this example, the corner is two feet to the right of the first measurement (point 1), and 8' up from the floor. After you define the offset directions and offset amounts, you can press the **Store Pnt** button to store the new point.

Line - Distance Offset   

Highlight a point on the line and press the measure button to record an observation. All offsets are respect to Point 1.

Point	Horizontal Angle	Vertical Angle	Σ
Line - Pnt 1	356°23'58.0"	85°54'35.0"	2
Line - Pnt 2	350°02'09.0"	85°33'33.0"	2

< >

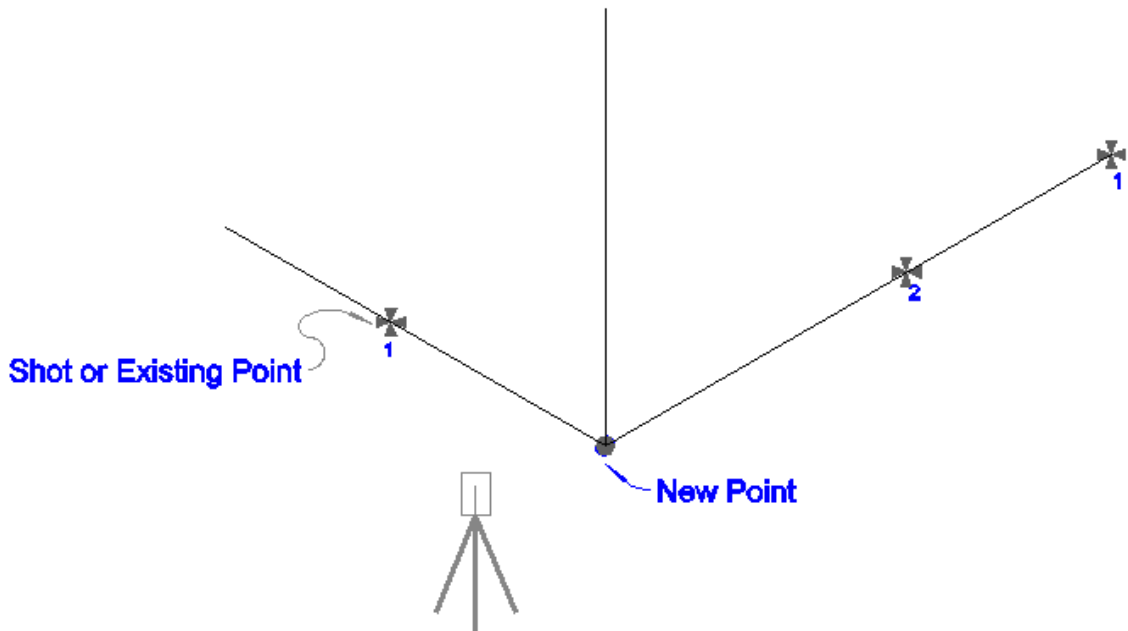
Horz Offset Right of Pnt 1
 Perp Offset Away From Inst
 Elev Offset Up

Measure  Close

Line - Perpendicular Point

[Main Menu](#) | [Mapping Methods](#) | [Line - Perpendicular Point](#)

This offset command is used to define two points that will be used to establish a reference line. Once the reference line is established, you can specify a point that will be used to compute a perpendicular intersection from the point to the reference line. The point can either be shot or you can select an existing point from your scene database or map.



An example of where you could use this is to pick up the corner of a building, whose corner can not be scene from the total station. You could take two shots on one wall to define the reference line, and then take another shot on the intersecting wall. A perpendicular intersection will be computed, which in this case would be the corner of the building.

Measure Points

When you start the command, you will see an empty list.

Highlight the row that you would like to make a measurement for and simply press the **Measure** button to begin the measuring process.

If you need to redo a measurement, simply highlight it in the list and press the measure button.

Notes:

1. The x and y values for the new point will be computed by computing a perpendicular intersection between the reference line and a point defined by the user.
2. The z value for the new point will be computed using the projected elevation along the reference line to the point where a perpendicular intersection occurs.

Line - Perpendicular Point

123

Highlight a point and press the measure button to record an observation. The perpendicular point can either be observed or selected from the points database.

Point	Horizontal Angle	Vertical Angle	S
Line - Pnt 1	353°49'13.0"	80°47'36.0"	2
Line - Pnt 2	357°07'26.0"	81°13'02.0"	2
Perp Pnt	12°10'23.0"	83°00'58.0"	1

<

>

Select Perpendicular Pnt

Measure

Store Pnt

Close

Note: You can increase the size of the text shown in the grid by setting the Text Size option in the [Options screen](#).

Select Perpendicular Point

You can define the perpendicular point one of two ways. The first is to simply take a measurement that will define the perpendicular point. The shot is only used to make an intersection, a point isn't stored at the measurement location.

The other method is to choose an existing point that exists in your scene. Press the Select Perpendicular Pnt button to select a point.

Store the Point

Once you've made your measurements and defined a perpendicular point that will be used to compute the intersection, you can press the Store Point button. This will store a point in the map screen, store a point in the database as well as record information to the raw file.

Raw File

Everything about the intersection is stored in the raw file. In the following example, if you shot the perpendicular point you will see a third shot that records the measurement.

--Line - Perpendicular Point

--HI1.340,HR0.000,AR353.49130,ZE80.47360,SD21.3386,--Pnt 1 of Line

--HI1.340,HR0.000,AR357.07260,ZE81.13020,SD22.4245,--Pnt 2 of Line

--HI1.340,HR0.000,AR12.10230,ZE83.00580,SD19.8819,--Perpendicular Pnt

SP,PN6,N 123.3028,E 100.0209,EL104.7737,--RM

If the perpendicular point exists in your scene and you selected it using the point chooser, then you will see a store point recorded as a note. The last store point is the new point that was computed.

```
--Line - Perpendicular Point
--HI1.340,HR0.000,AR353.49520,ZE80.46560,SD21.3419,--Pnt 1 of Line
--HI1.340,HR0.000,AR357.07330,ZE81.12210,SD22.4147,--Pnt 2 of Line
--SP,PN7,N 119.2906,E 104.1611,EL103.7580,--Perpendicular Pnt
SP,PN8,N 123.3107,E 100.0504,EL104.7751,--SCR
```

Trilateration

[Main Menu](#) | [Mapping Methods](#) | [Trilateration](#)

This routine allows you to trilaterate the position of new points by observing their distances from two known positions. The two known points will make up a baseline, from which a distance-distance intersection will be calculated to determine the position of each new point.

The primary use of this routine is for GPS users so they can locate inaccessible points. They can locate two points with GPS, and then use the Trilateration routine to locate the inaccessible points.

This routine can accept distances measured with the Leica Disto.

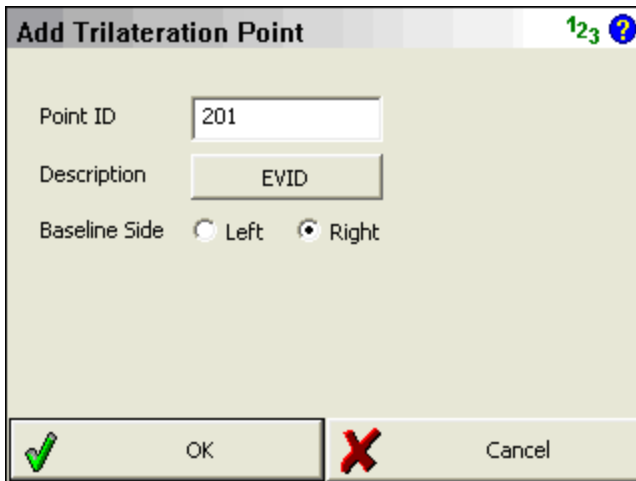
New Pnt	Pnt 1 Dist	Pnt 2 Dist	Side	Saved

Static Points (Baseline)

Select your two baseline points, from which you will be observing the distances to the new points.

Add Point

Use this to add a new unknown point to solve for. When you press this, you will be prompted for the new point number and description, and whether it is on the left or right side of the baseline.



Add Trilateration Point

Point ID: 201

Description: EVID

Baseline Side: ☐ Left ☒ Right

OK Cancel

Save Point

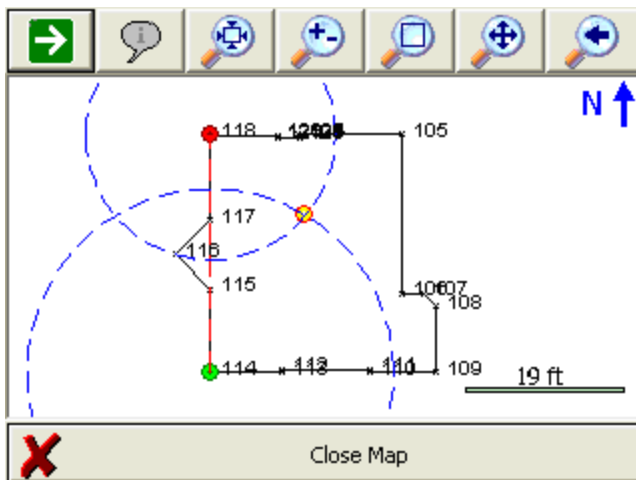
This saves the selected New Point into your project.

Switch Side

This toggles the selected New Point to the Left or Right side of the baseline.

Map View

This takes you to a map view showing your baseline, the distance measured from each point, and the calculated position of the new point.



If desired, you can press the World View button on the [Display toolbar](#) to hide unnecessary data.

Measure from Point 1

Press this to record the distance from Point 1 of your baseline to the selected New Point.

Measure from Point 2

Press this to record the distance from Point 2 of your baseline to the selected New Point.

Baseline Offset

[Main Menu](#) | [Mapping Methods](#) | [Baseline Offset](#)

Overview

Use this function to define a baseline using two existing points, and calculate new points by using a distance and offset on the baseline.

Pnt 1	100	Distance	10.000m	☒ Left	Store
Pnt 2	101	Offset	7.000m	☐ Right	Close

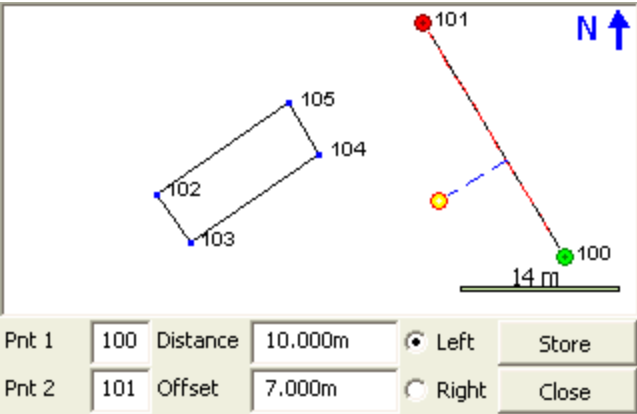
Define Baseline

You can manually type in the point numbers that define the baseline or pick the points from the map. The left/right side will be based on looking down the baseline from point 1 to point 2.

Entering a Distance and Offset

Once you've defined a baseline, you can manually enter a distance and offset and Evidence Recorder will compute a point for you. Simply type in the distance and offset values, and specify whether the offset is to the left or the right of the baseline.

You can also double tap within either the Distance or Offset fields to open up the [calculator](#) or the [inverse](#) command, or to measure the distance with a Leica Disto.

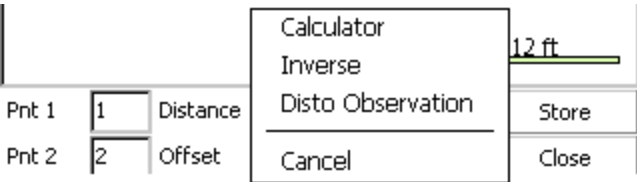


In this example, the baseline is from point 100 to point 101. You will see that an orange dot is displayed in the drawing at the location defined by the point 10m down the baseline and offset 7m to the left.

You can press the **Store** button to save the point using the [Store / Edit Points](#) command.

Disto Distances

If you have a Leica Disto, you can send distances back to the distance edit fields. Simply double tap the distance field.



Select "Disto Observation" which will then set Evidence Recorder in a "waiting" mode. Take the measurement with the Disto, press the Bluetooth icon on the Disto, and the measured distance will be accepted by Evidence Recorder and will appear in that distance field.

Vertical Scene Projection

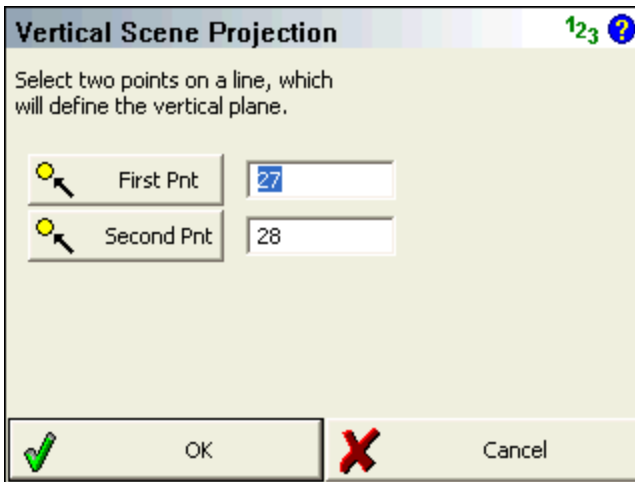
[Main Menu](#) | [Mapping Methods](#) | [Vertical Scene Projection](#)

This function is for locating multiple points on a vertical plane defined by two previously measured points. The program will calculate the distance for each shot taken to an un-measurable position so that coordinates can be generated for the shot.

An example of how you could use this would be to shoot two corners of a wall to define a vertical plane. Then you could sight four corners for window on the second floor and Evidence Recorder will use the HA and VA values and compute the intersection with the vertical plane. Once the intersection is computed, the point will be stored.

Function

When the command is started you will see a screen that will allow you to specify the points that will form the baseline for the vertical plane.



Note: You need to measure and store the points that will be used to define the vertical mapping plane, prior to starting the Vertical Projection command.

When ready to continue, press the **OK** button.

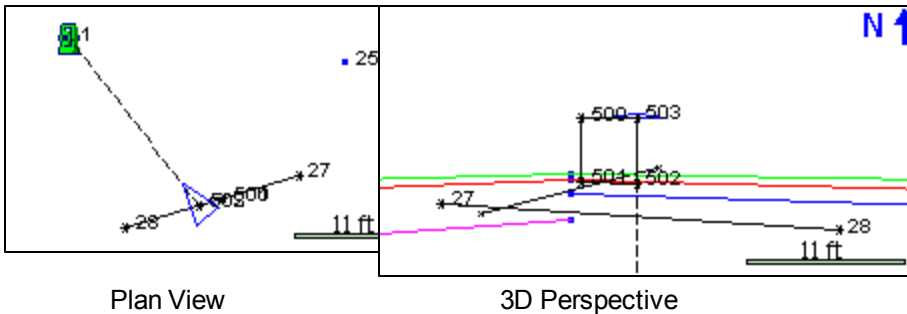
You will now be in the Vertical projection mode which will be indicated by the measurement mode button on the instrument toolbar. To begin calculating points on the vertical plane, you need to point the total station at the new point you want to create. To complete the shot, press the measure button, and then store the point.

Note: You do not need to use a prism when measuring points on the vertical plane. Simply point the instrument at the point you want to create.

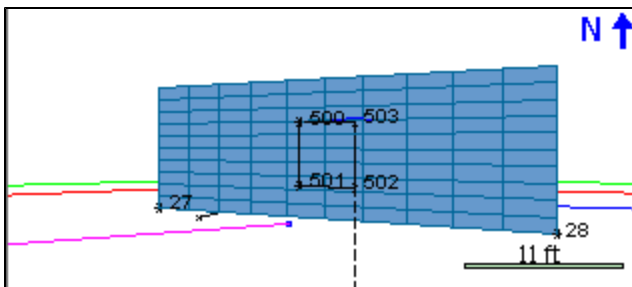
Since vertical planes represent 3D data, it is sometimes necessary to rotate your perspective of the project to help you see the point you're computing on the vertical plane.

Press the 3D View button on the [display toolbar](#) which will open the 3D toolbar. If you press the Planar View button, your scene will be rotated so it matches your perspective. For example, a vertical plane was defined by points 27 and 28. When the planar view option is used, you can see your work in

a 3D perspective. You can now see the 4 measurements (points 500 – 503) that were made to record the position of a window on the vertical plane.



You can also hide objects that are behind the vertical plane from viewing by pressing the **Vert Grid** button. In the example below, you will see that after this is turned on, some of the line work is hidden from view.



To exit this routine, simply switch to a different measurement mode.

Raw File

Each point that is computed on the vertical plane will also have a computed sideshot stored in the raw file.

```
--VS, PA27, PB28
SS, OP1, FP503, AR142.24510, ZE78.37170, SD17.8888, --VERTICAL
```

For each shot you record you will see a note before the shot in the raw file indicating which points were used to define the vertical plane.

Special Notes

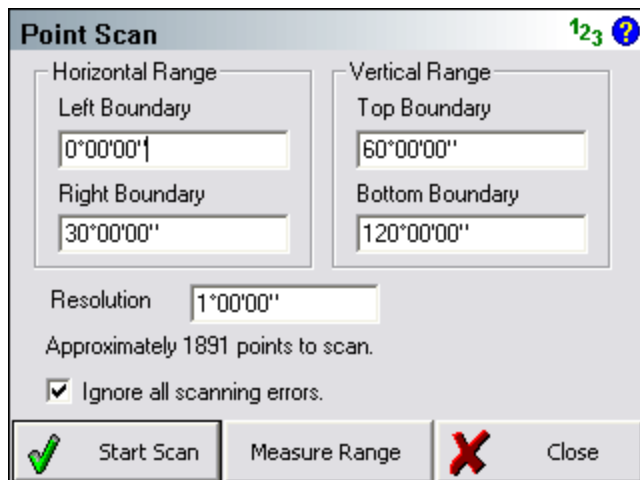
Vertical projection measurements will automatically be recognized by your MapScenes desktop software. Please refer to the MapScenes help file for more information regarding importing vertical projections.

Point Scanning

[Main Menu](#) | [Mapping Methods](#) | [Point Scanning](#)

[Main Menu](#) | [Measure Modes](#) | [Point Scanning](#)

Evidence Recorder supports point scanning which allows you to create a point cloud of data. To use this routine you need a reflectorless instrument that has servo motors.

The image shows a software dialog box titled "Point Scan". It has a title bar with a green "123" icon and a blue question mark icon. The dialog is divided into two main sections: "Horizontal Range" and "Vertical Range". Under "Horizontal Range", there are two input fields: "Left Boundary" with the value "0°00'00\"/>

Point Scan	
Horizontal Range	Vertical Range
Left Boundary	Top Boundary
0°00'00"	60°00'00"
Right Boundary	Bottom Boundary
30°00'00"	120°00'00"
Resolution: 1°00'00"	
Approximately 1891 points to scan.	
☒ Ignore all scanning errors.	
Start Scan	Close

To start, you will be asked to define a scan area by pressing the Measure Range button and pointing the instrument at the Bottom-Left and Top-Right corners of the area you want to confine the scanning to.

Once the scan area is defined, you can define the scan resolution by using an angular value. For example if you set it to 0°30'00", Evidence Recorder will create a pattern confined to the limits you defined, and scan at 30 minute intervals both horizontally and vertically. Once you've defined the scan area and resolution, Evidence Recorder will display an estimate of how many points will be stored.

You also can control how Evidence Recorder deals with measurement errors while scanning. If you turn on "**Ignore all scanning errors**", Evidence Recorder will ignore measurement errors and continue without interruption. If you don't turn this on, Evidence Recorder will stop and display a message allowing you to stop the scanning process, or continue on with the next measurement.

Press the **Start Scan** button to select the desired reflectorless EDM Mode and initiate scanning. Evidence Recorder will display an estimate of the time remaining for the scan to complete.

Points will be stored using the description defined in the map screen. The point number of the first point will be set to the "next available" id and will increment sequentially. The shots are stored in the raw file as sideshots so you have a record of the observations.

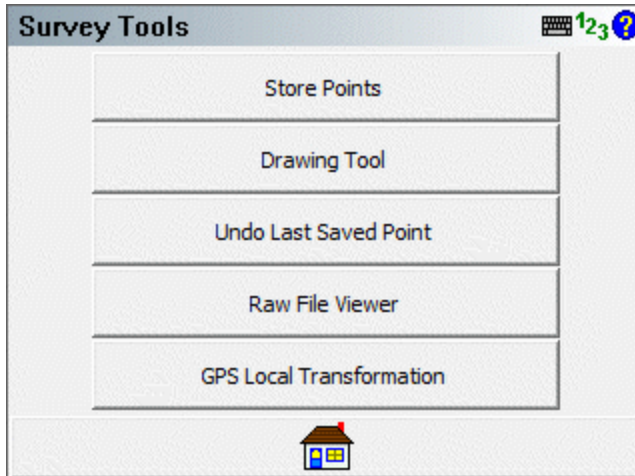
Upon completion, you will receive a summary showing the total number of successful measurements and errors received.

MAPPING TOOLS MENU

Mapping Tools Menu

Main Menu | Mapping Tools

This menu contains functions pertaining to the data in your project.



Store Points

Use this to enter new coordinates into your scene's database. Please see the [Store Points](#) topic for more information.

Drawing Tool

This starts up the [draw plan](#) tool.

Undo Last Saved Point

Use this to "undo" up to ten of the last points that were saved. Please see the [UndoLast Saved Point](#) topic for more information.

Raw File Viewer

Use this to open a viewer that will display your current raw file. Please see the [Raw File Viewer](#) topic for more information.

GPS Local Transformation

Use this to specify transformation parameters that can be used to localize GPS data or to perform a transformation on your points collected with conventional survey methods. Please see the

[Transformation Setup](#) topic for more information.

Store / Edit Points

Main Menu | Mapping Tools | Store Points

This is a multi use function that is used by many parts of the program. Essentially any time a point needs to be stored or edited, it will done via the store point screen. Depending on what it is you're doing, certain parts of the dialog will be disabled or not editable. Following is an explanation of what you should expect.

Measured or Calculated Points

Points that were measured or computed via any of our commands will automatically have their Survey Role set to **measured**. When these types of points are edited, only the description can be changed; the point id and coordinate values will be non editable. The reason we do this is so the coordinates don't accidentally get altered. You can check a point's survey role by pressing the Advanced button. You can override this by changing the survey role type to "null".

Certain commands in Evidence Recorder are allowed to ignore the measured survey role, such as the overwrite option that is triggered when you try to store a point using a point id that already exists in the project.

Manually Entered or Imported Points

Point that have been manually entered or imported from an ASCII file for example, will have their Survey Role set to **null**. Points that have a Survey Role set to null can be edited except for the point id.

Store Point

Point ID	2	
Description		List
X	312331.176m	Review Measurement
Y	5523914.377m	GIS Attributes
Z	386.017m	Advanced
Note	Tap to enter note	
Prism Hgt	0.000m	

Store Pnt
 Cancel

Point ID

Enter in the point number you would like to assign to the point. Note that by default it will display the next available point number. If you're editing an existing point, this field will not be editable.

Line/Spline/Arc Buttons



This is used to toggle on and off the draw lines function. When turned on as you shoot your points in the drawing they will be connected with a line. This button can only be used if you're storing a point after a measurement.



This is used to toggle on and off the draw curvy lines button. This function will draw a best-fit curve through your points as you shoot them. This button can only be used if you're storing a point after a measurement.



3-Point arcs can be started using the same method as for a Line or Curvy Line. This button can only be used if you're storing a point after a measurement.

Description

This is where you can enter a description for your point. This field is associated with your Automap library so as soon as you start typing in descriptions, a list appears displaying descriptions that match what you've entered. Simply press your **Enter** Key to accept your entry. You can also have Evidence Recorder notify you when the description you've entered isn't in your Automap library. To do this you need to make sure you have the **"New Description Prompt "** toggle turned on in the [Options](#) menu.

List Button

Press this to open the AutoMap Library screen. You will be able to choose the description that will be assigned to the point.

X, Y, Elevation

Input your coordinate values in these fields when manually creating a new point using the add point function. If measuring a point, you can not manually enter or edit coordinates.

Note Button

Press this to enter a note or record an audio note for the point. See the [Notes](#) topic for more information.

Prism Hgt (Height) / GPS Hgt (Height)

When storing a point measured by a total station, you can set the Prism Height. When storing a point measured by a GPS receiver, you can set the true or measured Antenna Height.

Review Measurement Button

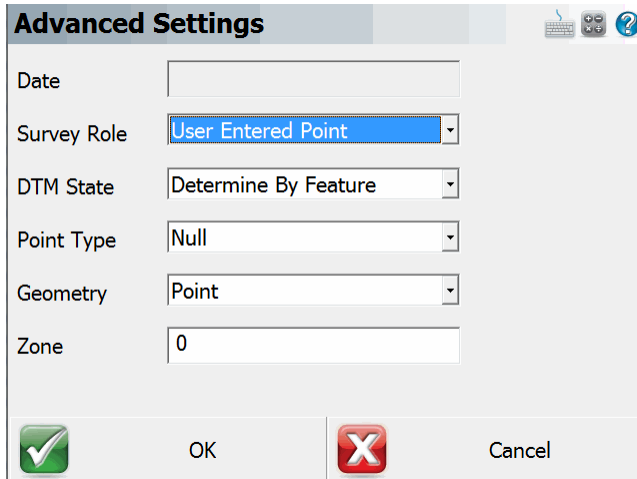
This button is available when you have taken a measurement, and can be used to review the distance and angles measured.

GIS Attributes Button

If you loaded a feature list, then this button will be enabled. It allows you to access the your [feature list](#) so you can edit feature attributes.

Advanced Button

Use this button to add or edit advanced tags to your point.



The image shows a dialog box titled "Advanced Settings". It has a header bar with a keyboard icon, a settings icon, and a help icon. The dialog contains several fields: "Date" (empty text box), "Survey Role" (dropdown menu with "User Entered Point" selected), "DTM State" (dropdown menu with "Determine By Feature" selected), "Point Type" (dropdown menu with "Null" selected), "Geometry" (dropdown menu with "Point" selected), and "Zone" (text box with "0"). At the bottom, there are three buttons: a green checkmark icon, "OK", and a red X icon, "Cancel".

DTM Attribute: Use this to choose the DTM attribute that will be written to the database file. Ground is the default value, if you don't want the point used in Evidence Recorder's modeling commands, you can set the DTM value to Do not Include.

Survey Role: Use this to edit the survey role for the point. By default points that are measured will have a role of Measured. Points with a Measured role type are read only when they're viewed with the store and edit screen.

Point Type: Use this to enter a point type that will be written to the database file.

Geometry: Use this to enter a geometry type that will be written to the database file.

Zone: Use this to enter a zone number that will be written to the database file.

Drawing Tool

[Main Menu](#) | [Survey Tools](#) | [Drawing Tool](#)

[Line Toolbar](#) | [Pencil button](#)

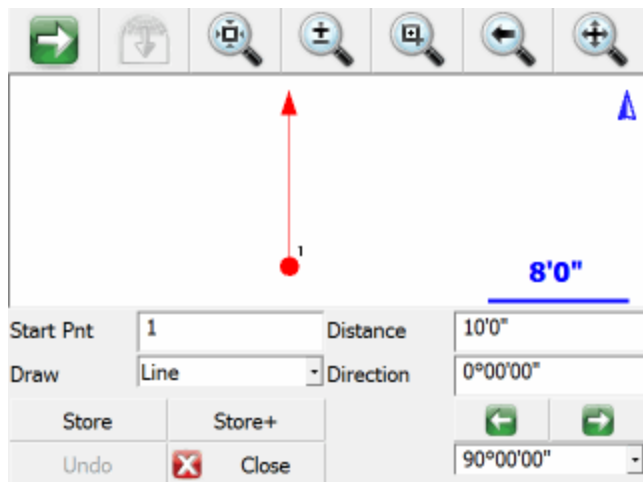
[Point Toolbar](#) | [Pencil button](#)

This tool allows you to quickly draw a plan such as a pad or a building footprint into your project, and is typically used to recreate plans from a paper hard-copy. You can use this to either calculate new points, or to connect existing points that are already in your project.

You must have at least one point in your project before you can start, to define the starting position for your plan. If a point does not yet exist (for example if this is the first command you run in a new project), you will be prompted to store a new point before you can proceed.

Line Mode

Use the Line draw mode to add straight line segments to your figure.



Start Point

Specify the start point for the new segment.

For starting a new plan, this should be set to an existing point in your project, typically a corner that you will begin drawing the plan from.

As you continue adding subsequent points/segments to your plan, you will see the Start Point field automatically advance for you.

Distance

Specify the length of the line segment you wish to draw.

Direction

Specify the direction (Azimuth or Bearing) of the line segment you wish to draw. The easiest way to do this is to use the right/left arrow buttons, which will increment/decrement the direction value by the amount shown in the pulldown list below the arrows. You can select a common angle from the

choices in the list (90, 45, or 30 degrees), or you can type any value if you need to increment it by some other amount.

Store

After you have defined the segment to add, press this to store the new point and line segment into your project.

Store+

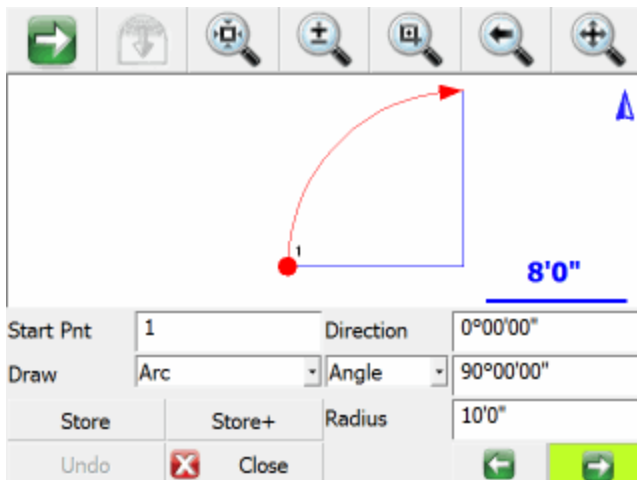
This does the same as the Store button, but you will see the [Store/Edit Point](#) screen. Use this to confirm or view the coordinates, or to specify a description.

Point by Line Mode

This is the same as the Line mode, except that when you press Store or Store+ it will only store the point, without drawing the line segment.

Arc Mode

Use the Arc draw mode to add arc segments to your figure.



Start Point

Specify the start point for the new segment.

For starting a new plan, this should be set to an existing point in your project, typically a corner that you will begin drawing the plan from.

As you continue adding subsequent points/segments to your plan, you will see the Start Point field automatically advance for you.

Direction

Specify the direction (Azimuth or Bearing) of the **tangent in** to the arc segment you wish to draw. This will default to either the direction of the previous line segment or the tangent out of the previous arc segment, so as long as your arc is tangential to the previous segment you will not need to change this value.

Angle / Chord Length / Arc Length

Specify one of the three available methods to define your arc:

- Angle: Enter the interior delta angle of the arc.
- Chord: Enter the chord length of the arc.
- Arc: Enter the arc length of the arc.

Radius

Specify the radius to define your arc.

Clockwise / Counter-Clockwise Arrows

Use the Right/Left arrow buttons to define whether the arc rotates clockwise or counter-clockwise.

Store

After you have defined the segment to add, press this to store the new end and radial points, and draw the arc segment into your project.

Store+

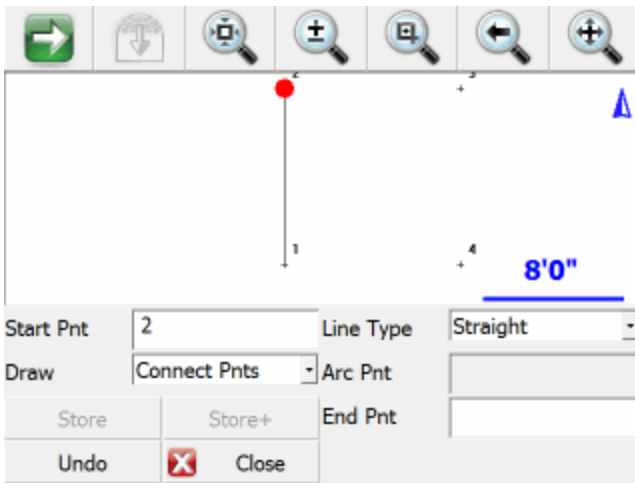
This does the same as the Store button, but you will see the [Store/Edit Point](#) screen. Use this to confirm or view the coordinates, or to specify a description.

Point by Arc Mode

This is the same as the Arc mode, except that when you press Store or Store+ it will only store the points, without drawing the arc segment.

Connect Points Mode

This mode lets you draw lines/arcs by connecting points that already exist in your project.



Start Point

Specify the start point for the new segment.

For starting a new plan, this should be set to an existing point in your project, typically a corner that you will begin drawing the plan from.

As you continue connecting subsequent points to your plan, you will see the Start Point field automatically advance for you.

Line Type

Specify one of the five available methods to define your next figure segment:

- **Straight:** this will draw a straight line between the specified Start Point and End Point.
- **Arc (CW):** this will draw a clockwise arc between the specified Start Point and End Point, with the specified Radial Point.
- **Arc (CCW):** this will draw a counter-clockwise arc between the specified Start Point and End Point, with the specified Radial Point.
- **Arc (3Pnt):** this will draw an arc (clockwise or counter-clockwise) between the specified Start Point and End Point, going through the specified intermediate Arc Point (any point directly on the arc, does not need to be the midpoint).
- **Spline:** this will draw a curvey line between the specified Start Point and End Point.

Store / Store+

The Store and Store+ buttons are disabled for this mode, because new points are not being calculated for your project. The line or arc segment will be automatically drawn into your project after you specify

its parameters.

Undo

Press the **Undo** button to Undo the last segment you computed, removing both the point and/or the line segment (as appropriate) from your project. You can undo multiple steps.

Note, there is no Redo function.

Close

Press the **Close** button to exit from the Draw Plan command, and you will be returned to the [map screen](#).

Undo Last Saved Point

Main Menu | Mapping Tools | Undo Last Saved Point

Use this to undo the last point that was saved. When you undo a point, a record is written the raw file indicating which point was undone. Also, when this function is used, the user is asked to enter a comment as to why they decided to undo the point. His or her comment is saved in the raw file. You can only undo up to the last ten points that have been stored.

When you select the undo command, you will be asked to confirm that you would like to undo the last saved point.

Press **Yes** to undo.

Press **No** to cancel.

If you select Yes, you will be asked to enter a comment explaining why you want to undo the point. Your comment is saved in the raw file. If you choose not to enter a comment, a note will be written to the raw file indicating that you didn't enter a comment.

Press **OK** to finish.

The point is now removed from the project's map and database, but the original measurement data and the reason for the undo remains in the raw file.

Raw File

Using the example from above, this is what you will see in the raw file.

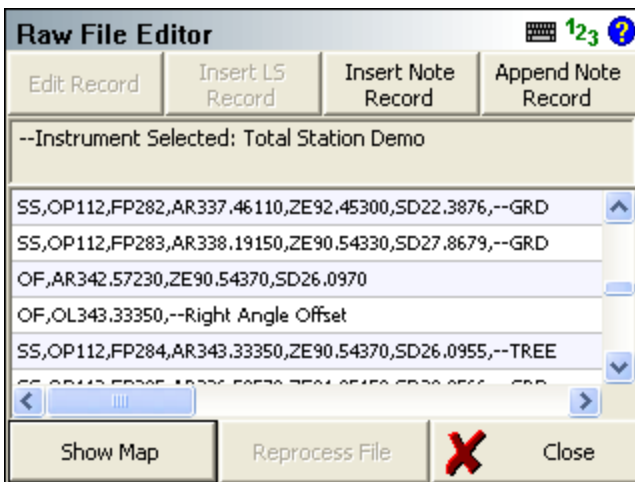
```
| SS,OP34,FP36,AR270.00000,ZE121.16010,SD2.5060,--TABLE |
| --Undo PN 36 |
| --Reason for Undo: Accidentally pressed the measure button |
| DP,PN36 |
```

The first line is the shot to point 36. The second and third lines are comments indicating which shot was undone and the reason for the undo. The last line is a delete point record which is used to remove the point from the database.

Raw File Viewer

Main Menu | Mapping Tools | Raw File Viewer

Use this button to open the raw file viewer. The raw file editor displays your scene's raw file and allows you to review it in an easy to read grid. For reference on the different raw file record types that Evidence Recorder uses you can refer to the [Raw File Record Types](#) topic for more information.



Insert Note Record

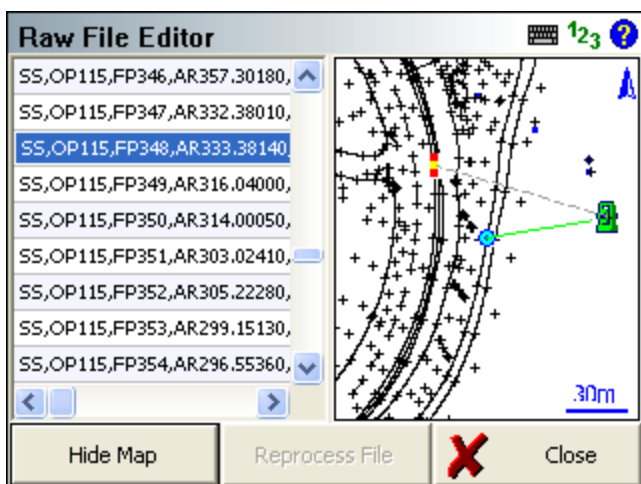
This will allow you to enter a [comment](#). The comment will be inserted above the current line you have highlighted in the grid.

Append Note Record

This will allow you to enter a [comment](#). The comment will be appended to the end of the raw file.

Show Map

This will change the raw file viewer to a split-screen display with a map view of your scene on half of the screen. When certain raw file records are selected, you will be shown the reference and backsight points, and the selected measurement record will be highlighted on the map.

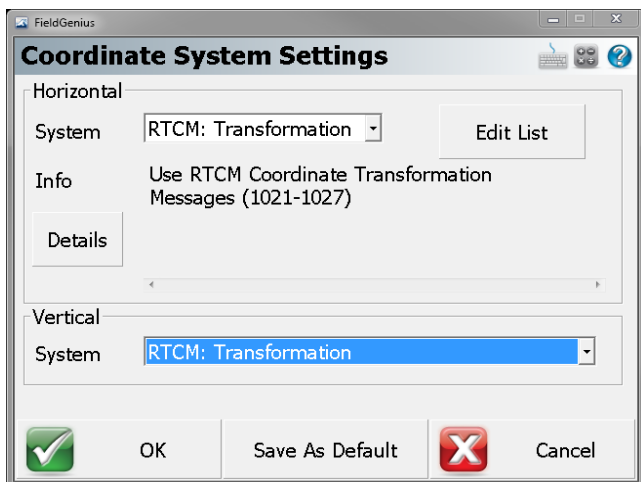


RTCM: Transformation

[Project Manager](#) | [Default Settings](#) | [Coordinate System](#) | [RTCM: Transformation](#)

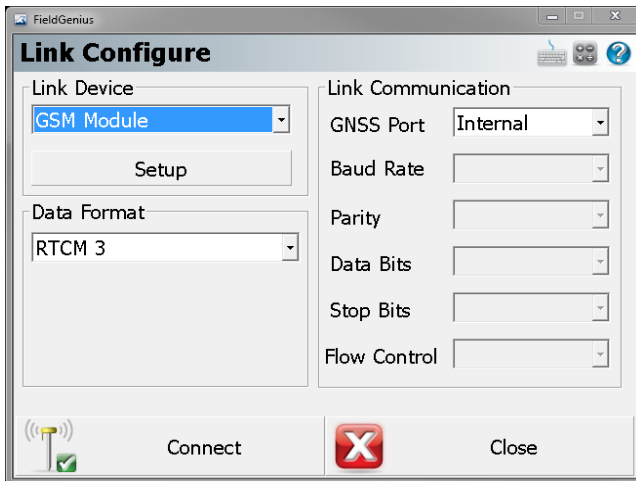
[Main Menu](#) | [Settings](#) | [Coordinate System](#) | [RTCM: Transformation](#)

Evidence Recorder has an new GNSS feature called RTCM: Transformation. This routine allows the RTK Network Caster to automatically select the appropriate horizontal coordinate system for the project location and if needed request a specific Geoid file to be used for the vertical system. This eliminates the coordinate system guess work when using RTK GNSS equipment.



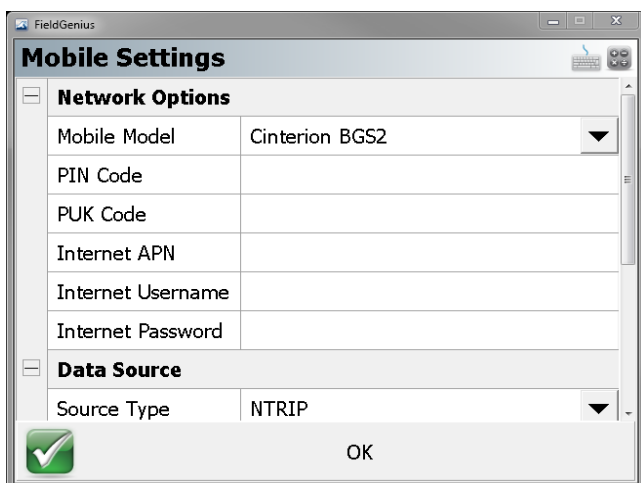
Procedure

To start the RTCM: Transformation routine the user must go into either the Settings menu from the Main Menu of a current job or when creating a new one, select Project Defaults to bring up the Project Settings dialog to select "Coordinate System." From this screen using the pull down menu for System rather than picking a pre-defined or user defined system we choose "RTCM: Transformation." The user can also select RTCM: Transformation for the Vertical System as well. Press "OK" to continue to confirm the project settings and continue to connect to the GPS receiver.



After connection to the GPS receiver has been achieved Evidence Recorder will proceed to the Link configure screen. Users will now be asked for the Link Device they wish to use and for the Data Format RCTM 3 must be selected here for the RTCM: Transformation routine to work.

Press the "Setup" button to enter in your GSM SIM card information in the Network Options Section or if you are using Data Collector Internet the Network Options is not required. In both cases the Data Source section will require valid information to be inputted for the connection to work. Click on the "Press to Modify" button to allow you to enter in these parameters. Evidence Recorder allows multiple NTRIP caster settings to be stored and used.

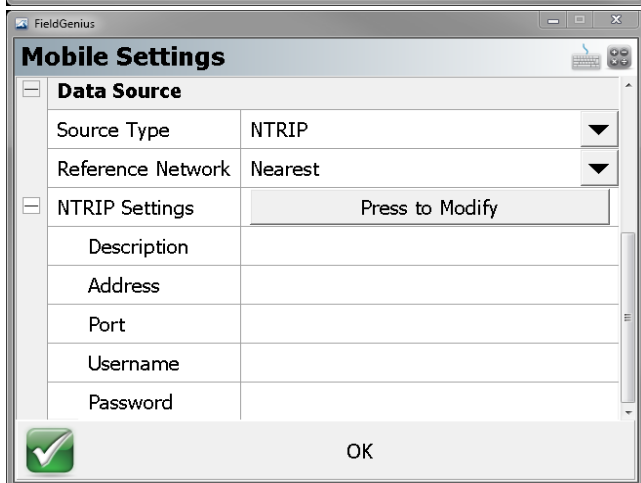


The screenshot shows the 'Mobile Settings' window in the FieldGenius application. The 'Network Options' section is expanded, showing fields for Mobile Model (Cinterion BG52), PIN Code, PUK Code, Internet APN, Internet Username, and Internet Password. The 'Data Source' section is collapsed. At the bottom, there is a green checkmark icon and an 'OK' button.

Network Options	
Mobile Model	Cinterion BG52
PIN Code	
PUK Code	
Internet APN	
Internet Username	
Internet Password	

Data Source	
Source Type	NTRIP

OK



The screenshot shows the 'Mobile Settings' window in the FieldGenius application. The 'Data Source' section is expanded, showing fields for Source Type (NTRIP), Reference Network (Nearest), and NTRIP Settings (Press to Modify). Below these are fields for Description, Address, Port, Username, and Password. At the bottom, there is a green checkmark icon and an 'OK' button.

Data Source	
Source Type	NTRIP
Reference Network	Nearest
NTRIP Settings	Press to Modify
Description	
Address	
Port	
Username	
Password	

OK

Verify all information is correct and press "OK" to bring you back to the Link Configure screen and then press the "Connect" button to connect to the caster. It will ask the user to either Request a Sourcetable or select the previously used one. Ensure the selected Sourcetable supports the RTCM 3 transformation message or this process will fail.

- If you are using a Tablet/PC please ensure that the Bluetooth PAN connection is established before attempting to connect to the Caster.

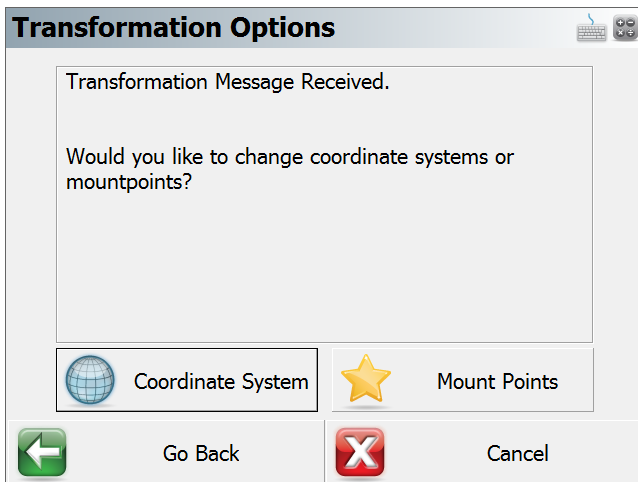
- The Reference Network pull down menu must have something other than the "NONE" option selected. In this example I have chosen the "Nearest" option and the Correction Format is set to RTCM 3.
- Using the Data Collector Internet method is the preferred one for the RTCM Transformation. Using the GSM method may have limited device support.

RTCM Transformation Info	
Information	Description
Mountpoint	1101-RTCM3-HT2_0_QUADRATIC
Data Age	1.0 sec
Data Quality	Waiting for update
Status	RTK Corrections not received.
RTCM Transformation	Message Received.
Target System	RTCM: UTM11 - HT2_0_QUADRATIC
Projection Type	Transverse Mercator (Msg 1025)

 OK  Options

When the connection is complete, the RTCM Transformation Info screen will appear and display the related information for the current project including the Mount Point used, the status of the RTK corrections and Projection Type. Because the RTCM Messages are not being sent out on the same frequency as the RTK corrections it may take some additional time before they are received. Once they have been received, it will update it to say "Message Received" and provide the Target System and Projection Type.

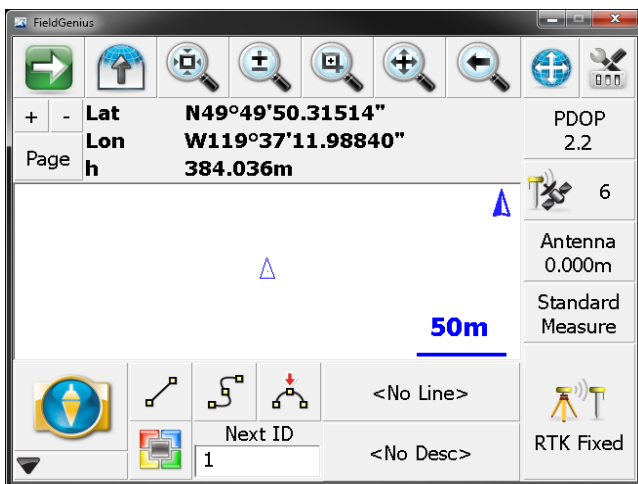
Note: If you did not receive an RTCM Transformation message the OK button will not active and you need to go into the Options to try a different solution.



In the Transformation Options screen you will have the following actions.

- Coordinate System - Press this button to abandon the RTCM: Transformation coordinate system and select either a Pre-Defined or a user created Coordinate System.
- Mount Points - Press this button if you want to connect to another Mount Point to continue with the RTCM Transformation.

Once in the Map View screen click on the Observation Tool bar to verify you are receiving a valid position before taking a shot.



Modify Control

Main Menu | Survey Tools | GPS Local Transformation

Evidence Recorder has an new option when using the "Similarity" method for applying a Local Transformation. This option called "Modify Control" allows the user to Add, Edit and Delete control points to the localization routine. The first thing you need to do is specify the points that will be constrained. You can do this by using the **Add Control** button.

Pnt ID	Horz	Vert	ΔN	ΔE	ΔH	Local North	Local East

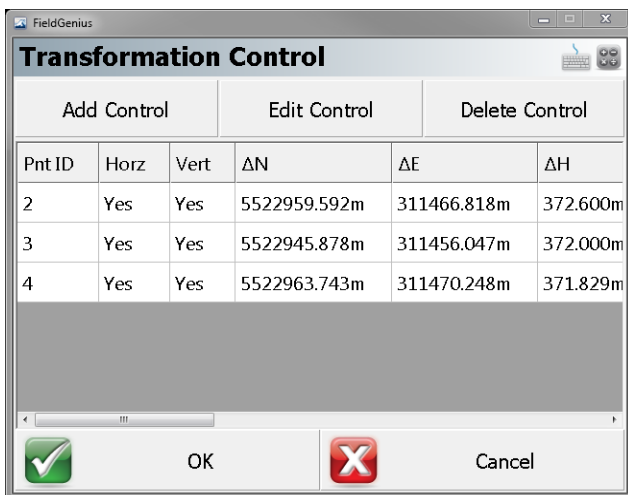
Pressing the "Add Control" Button will bring up the Transformation Control screen where you will prompted to select the Local Control point and the GNSS Control point that matches.

Point	Select Existing
ID	110
Desc	GRD
North	5523852.434m
East	312301.880m

East	312301.880m
Elev	393.474m

Point	Select Existing

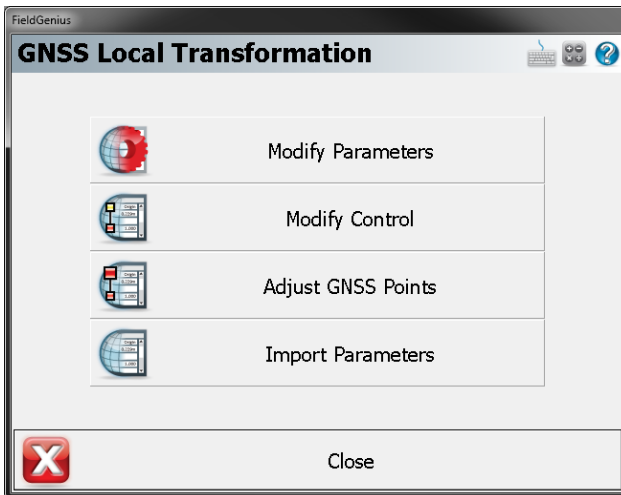
- The Local Control section only allows the user to select from the existing database.
- The GNSS Control section allows the user to either select from an existing point in the database or to measure one.



Pnt ID	Horz	Vert	ΔN	ΔE	ΔH
2	Yes	Yes	5522959.592m	311466.818m	372.600m
3	Yes	Yes	5522945.878m	311456.047m	372.000m
4	Yes	Yes	5522963.743m	311470.248m	371.829m

Normally only one control point is used for the Vertical portion of a transformation. Click on the points you do not wish to use the Vertical Portion and press the Edit Control and de-select the Apply Vertical check box to remove their vertical data from the transformation parameters.

Continue to add control to the Transformation routine until you are satisfied with the residuals. If you are done press the OK button to take you back to the Map View screen then continue to the GNSS Local Transformation screen and press the "Adjust GNSS Points" button to apply the Transformation.



Control Points

You can think of the control points as a "fixed" coordinate system that you are wanting to transform your measurement to. For example if you are using a GPS receiver and you want to localize to a local system, your local points would be considered control points for the constraining. The points you derive with GPS need to be transformed, so these are the measured points.

Delta values are shown to help you determine how well your points match up with one another. Once you specify your constrain points, you can press the Calculate Parameters button which will compute the transformation parameters. The deltas shown are the differences between the control points and the measured points if the transformation parameters were applied.

When you're satisfied with the transformation parameters, the control point pairs and transformation parameters will be saved to the .loc file upon exit.

Transformation Parameters

Main Menu | Survey Tools | GNSS Local Transformation | Modify Parameters

Evidence Recorder includes a flexible localization utility. The first thing you need to do is specify which method for transformation you wish to use. There are three options available for completing a transformation; None, Similarity, and Helmert. Each selection requires a different method for information to be inputted.

FieldGenius

Transformation Parameters

General	
Method	Similarity
Parameters	Calculate Using Control
Calculate Scale	☒
Calculate Slopes	☒
Similarity Parameters	
Origin North	0.000m
Origin East	0.000m
Translate North	0.000m

 OK  Cancel

FieldGenius

Transformation Parameters

Method	Similarity
Parameters	Manually Define
Parameters	Press to Reset
Similarity Parameters	
Origin North	0.000m
Origin East	0.000m
Translate North	0.000m
Translate East	0.000m
Rotation	0°00'00"

 Cancel

Similarity Method

Selecting this from the "Method" pull down menu gives the user two options to choose from in the "Parameters" pull down menu.

- The first option is "Calculate Using Control" where it will require the use of control points to calculate the Similarity Parameters values below and prevent any custom values from being entered in that section.

- The second option is to "Manually Define" the transformation parameters. This option allows the user to enter in the Origin North and East, Translate North and East, Rotation Degree, Scale Factor, Translate Height and a Slope North and East.

You should only use vertical slopes if you do not have a geoid model to use for your point's elevations. Use this feature with care as it can cause distortions in your elevations if it is used incorrectly.

You can force Evidence Recorder to compute these values by turning on the "Calculate Slopes" toggle.

The Scale Parameters section will remain active in all three methods and the user will have three options for how to define any scaling they want applied. There must be a check mark placed in the "Calculate Scale" box for the transformation to apply any scaling values.

FieldGenius

Transformation Parameters

Method: Helmert

Parameters: Press to Reset

Helmert Parameters

Tx (mm)	0.0
Ty (mm)	0.0
Tz (mm)	0.0
Rx CCW (mas)	0.000
Ry CCW (mas)	0.000
Rz CCW (mas)	0.000

OK Cancel

Helmert Method

The second option is the "Helmert" method or otherwise known as the 7- Parameter method. This method allows the user to manually enter in the Translation X, Y and Z as well as the Rotation X, Y, and Z values and a single Scale factor.

None Method

The last option is "None" and means just that. No transformation will be calculated and applied but the option to enter in a Scale Parameter is still active.

Scale Parameters

Users will always have three choices to apply a scale to the local transformation; "User Defined", "Select from Database" and "Measure GNSS Position."

The "User Defined" method allows the user to manually enter in the desired Grid Factor and Elevation Factor to determine the Combined Factor.

The "Select from Database" method gives the user the ability to select an existing measured GNSS point in the database to automatically calculate the Grid Factor, Elevation Factor and the Combined Factor.

The "Measure GNSS Position" method will require the user to take an observation. The Grid, Elevation and Combined Factors are then automatically inputted into their respective fields.

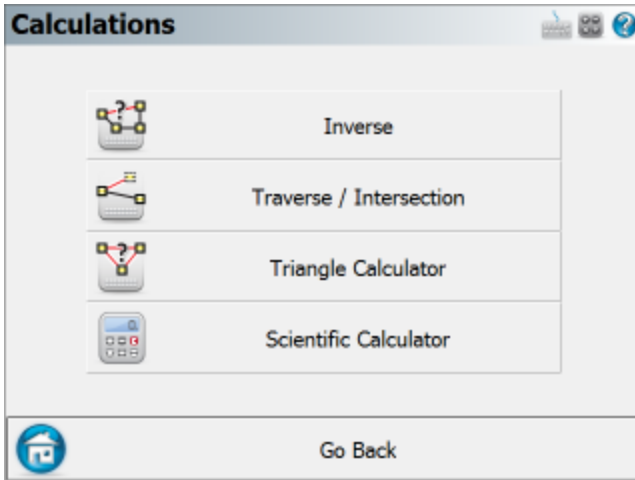
Whenever you compute transformation parameters, they're automatically written to the .loc file when you exit the command.

CALCULATIONS MENU

Calculations Menu

Main Menu | Calculations

The calculation menu contains calculation based functions that can be used to compute points, lines and other data.



Inverse

Use this to inverse between points. Please see the [Inverse](#) topic for more information.

Traverse / Intersection

This will open the Traverse / Intersect toolbar. You can enter in directions and distances and perform common intersections such as bearing / bearing, distance/distance and many more. Please see the [Traverse / Intersection](#) topic for more information.

Triangle Calculator

Use this to compute a triangle solution using known angles or distances. Please refer to the [Triangle Calculator](#) topic for more information.

Scientific Calculator

Use this to display the RPN calculator. Please see the [Calculator](#) topic for more information.

Traverse / Intersection

Main Menu | Calculations | Traverse / Intersection

Evidence Recorder includes a powerful COGO function that allows you to compute new points. The toolbar allows you to specify the solution type, point numbers, directions and distances. When you enter enough information to compute a solution it will be draw visually on the screen. Pressing the Store Pnt button will store the point that you just solved.

Input

You can type in the point ID, or select a point by tapping on the map screen.

The direction and distance fields support the [direction](#) and [distance](#) recall feature. To learn more about this, refer to these topics in the Calculating With Evidence Recorder section.

If you are measuring distances with a Leica Disto, just double tap in the distance field and choose the "Disto Observation" option.

Disto Distances

If you have a Leica Disto, you can send distances back to the distance edit fields. Simply double tap the distance field and select "Disto Observation" which will then set Evidence Recorder in a "waiting" mode. Take the measurement with the Disto, press the Bluetooth icon on the Disto, and the measured distance will be accepted by Evidence Recorder.

Calculator

You can open our calculator by double-tapping the Direction or Distance fields then pressing Calculator on the Keypad screen.

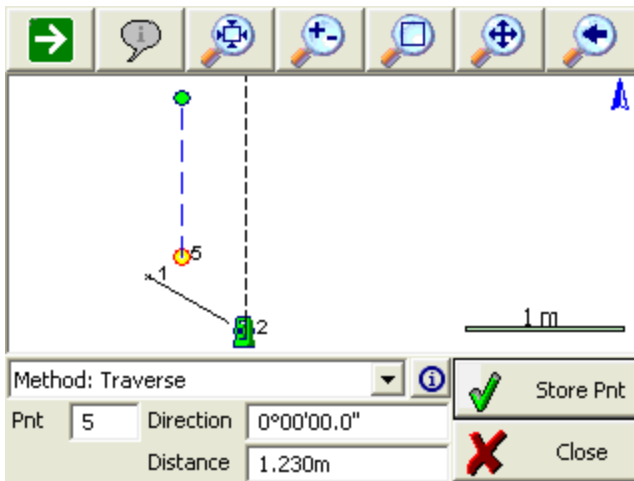
Information

You can review the results of your calculation by pressing the "i" information button. For intersections with multiple solutions, the results of both solutions will be displayed.

Solution Methods

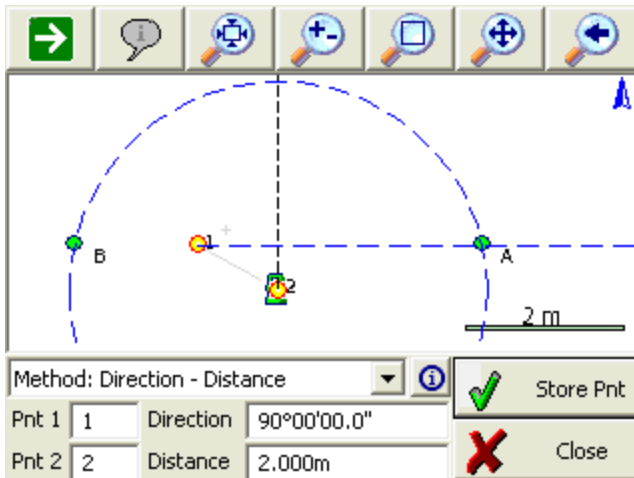
Method: Traverse

The traverse method allows you to define a direction and distance that you want to traverse. After you solve your point and store it, it will become the new start point.



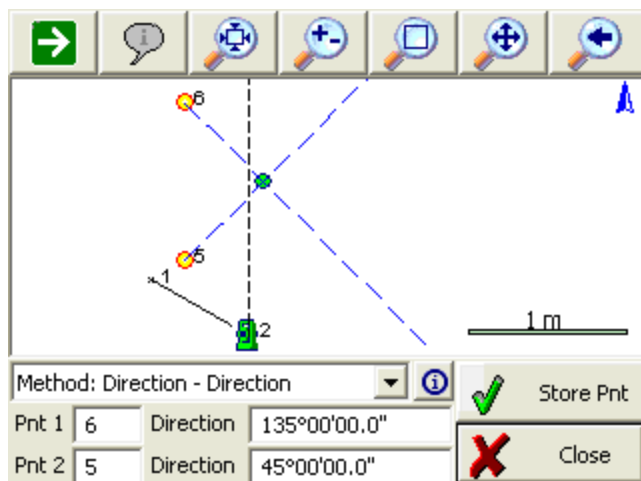
Method: Direction - Distance

This will compute two solutions based on the values you input. To store the solution, simply press the **Store Pnt** button which will ask you what solution to use, in this case either **A** or **B**.



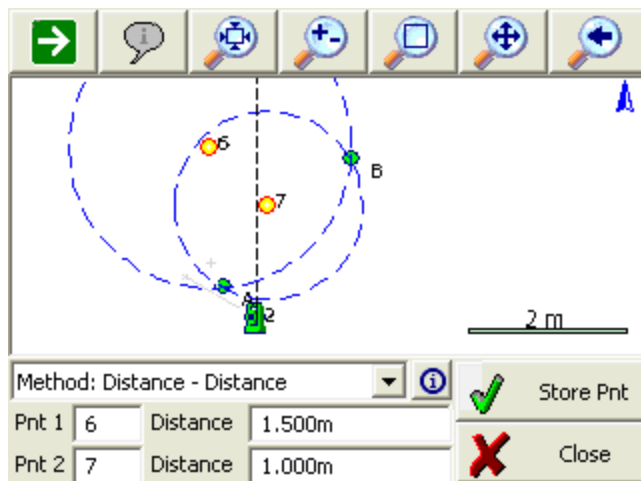
Method: Direction - Direction

Use this to compute a new point by computing an intersection using directions. After you enter your known values a solution will be displayed on the screen. To store the solution, simply press the **Store Pnt** button.



Method: Distance - Distance

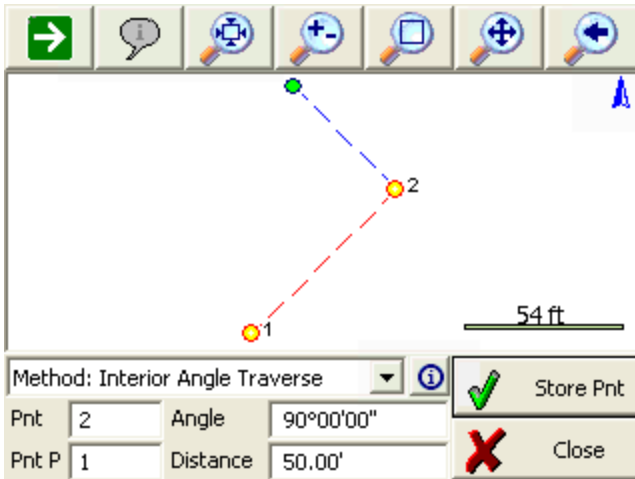
Use this to compute a new point by computing an intersection using distances. This will compute two solutions based on the values you input. To store the solution, simply press the **Store Pnt** button which will ask you what solution to use, in this case either A or B.



Method: Interior Angle Traverse

Use this to compute a new point by turning an angle from another point. Enter the current (setup) and previous (backsight) points, then the interior angle and the distance. Positive angles will be interpreted as angle right; if you want to turn an angle left, enter the angle as negative. To store the

solution, simply press the **Store Pnt** button. After the point is stored, the points will automatically leapfrog so you can continue traversing by just entering the next interior angle and distance.



COGO Results

Every calculation you make is written to the file called CogoCalcs.txt located in your project folder. Please see the COGO History Viewer topic for more information.

Inverse

Main Menu | Calculations | Inverse

This command will calculate for you the inverse between two points. It will display the horizontal / slope distance, direction, vertical distance and slope between the two points. You do not need to have a line drawn between the points to use the inverse command.



A large font can be set for the results toolbar and COGO results. Please refer to the [Options](#) topic for more information.

All inverse information is saved in the COGO History file called CogoCalcs.txt located in your project folder. Please refer to the COGO History Viewer topic for more information.

Traverse Inverse

Function

1. Start the inverse command and make sure the **Traverse Inverse** and **Line** options are selected.
2. Enter or choose the first point to calculate from, and press your enter key to continue on to the next point.
3. Now you can choose or enter the second point and press your Enter button to compute an answer.
4. The inverse information will be displayed in the results toolbar.
5. In the COGO history you will see the following information for the two points:

```
|-----|
| INVERSE |
|-----|
| PNT 44 to 8 (HD 1352.84' @ NA 323°48'03.1")SD 1353.39' GR -2.85' VD - |
| 38.51'AR 323°48'03.1" |
```

Your first inverse will calculate a right angle from north to the direction you inversed.

Multiple Lines

After you have specified two points, you can continue inversing from point to point. You should notice that the point id previously in the 2nd point field will move to the 1st point field, and the cursor will remain in the 2nd point field allowing you to quickly enter in your next point.

If you continue inversing from point to point, the angle right will not be referenced to north, but the last leg you inversed. Essentially this is computing a clockwise angle between the current and last legs you inverse.

Perimeter Distance and Area

If you close back to the first point, a perimeter distance and enclosed area will also be computed.

Radial Inverse

You can compute radial inverses from a point.

Function

1. Start the inverse command and make sure the **Radial Inverse** and **Line** options are selected.
2. Enter or choose the 1st point to calculate from, and press your enter key to continue on to the next point.

3. Now you can choose or enter the 2nd point and press your Enter button to compute an answer.
4. The inverse information will be displayed in the results toolbar.
5. You can now continue computing radial inverses. The 2nd point field will remain activated allowing you to continue entering point numbers.

Radial Arc

You can compute the curve information for an arc defined by three points, PC (start), Radius Point, and PT (End)

Function

1. Start the inverse command and make sure the **Rad Arc** button is turned on.
2. Enter or choose the starting point for the arc in the Start field, and press your enter key to continue on to the next point.
3. Enter or choose the radius point in the Arc field, and press your enter key to continue on to the next point.
4. Enter or choose the end point for the arc in the End field, and press your enter key to compute an answer.
5. The inverse information will be displayed in the results toolbar.

Three Point Arc

You can compute the curve information for an arc defined by three points along the arc.

Function

1. Start the inverse command and make sure the **3 Pt Arc** button is turned on.
2. Enter or choose the starting point for the arc in the Start field, and press your enter key to continue on to the next point.
3. Enter or choose the point that falls on the arc in the Arc field, and press your enter key to continue on to the next point.
4. Enter or choose the end point for the arc in the End field, and press your enter key to compute an answer.
5. The inverse information will be displayed in the results toolbar.

Triangle Calculator

[Main Menu](#) | [Calculations](#) | [Triangle Calculator](#)

The triangle calculator can be used to solve unknown sides or angle of a triangle given three know components.

Triangle Calculator

Method: Side - Side - Side

Side a:

Side b:

Side c:

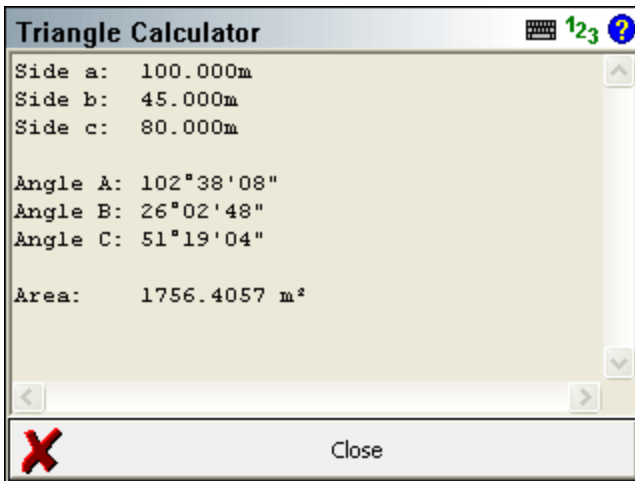
Diagram: A triangle with vertices A, B, and C. Side a is opposite vertex A, side b is opposite vertex B, and side c is opposite vertex C.

Buttons: View Results X Close

You first need to select a Method for the triangle calculation. There are 5 methods available to choose from and you can decide what method to use based on your known triangle components.

- **Side-Side-Side:** Use this when you know the length of the three sides of a triangle.
- **Angle-Side-Angle:** Use this when you know two angles and the distance between them.
- **Side-Angle-Angle:** Use this when you know two angles and one side. The know side must not lie in between the two known angles.
- **Side-Angle-Side:** Use this when two sides and the angle between them are known.
- **Side-Side-Angle:** Use this when two sides and one angle that is not between the known sides are known. This method will produce two solutions.

After you choose the solution method and enter the known components of the triangle, press the **View Results** button to complete the calculation.



Coordinate (Geodetic) Calculator

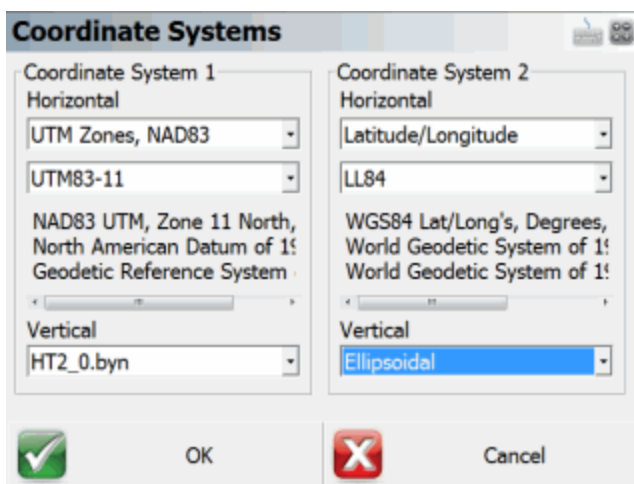
[Main Menu](#) | [Calculations](#) | [Coordinate Calculator](#)

The coordinate calculator is used to convert Geodetic coordinates to Cartesian coordinates and vice versa. You can also use it to convert ellipsoid heights to orthometric heights if you have defined a geoid.

Define Coordinate Systems

Press the Select Coordinate Systems button to select the coordinate system and geoid you want to use.

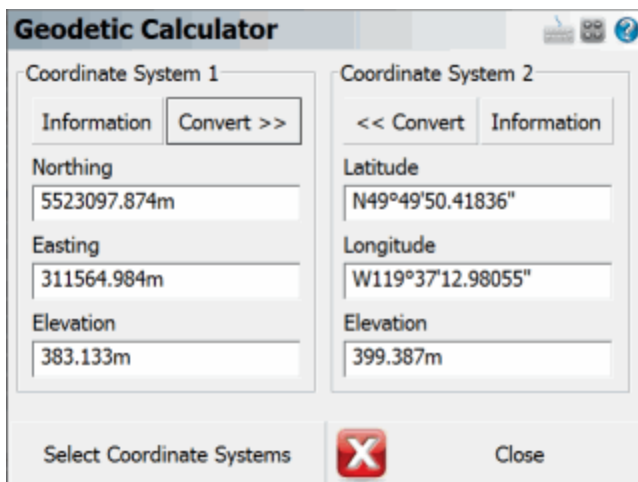
In the following example the user chose to convert between UTM Nad 83 Zone 11 to Lat and Long WGS 84. Also at the same time the elevation is being converted from an ellipsoid height to an orthometric height using the Canadian HT2.0 geoid.



Convert Coordinate

Once you've defined the coordinate systems you want to convert between you can then enter some numbers.

Press the Convert button to make the computation.



Information

Press the information button to see details about the coordinate system such as grid scale, and convergence angle.

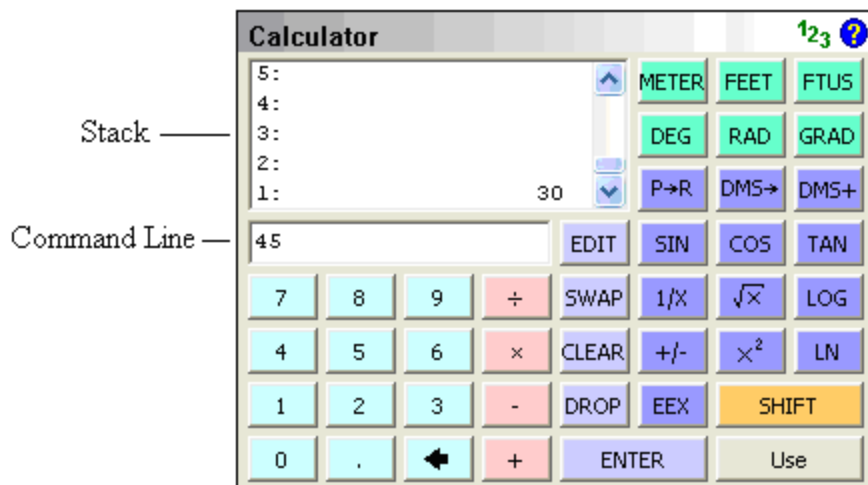
Calculator

Main Menu | Calculations | Scientific Calculator

Evidence Recorder includes an RPN (Reverse Polish Notation) Calculator. RPN Calculators (such as the HP48) are stack based, where values are popped from a stack, and the results of the calculation are pushed back onto the stack. This type of calculator may seem foreign at first, so several examples of its use are included below.

The calculator can be launched several ways:

1. By tapping inside certain numeric entry fields to directly open the Calculator. This will copy whatever value is currently in that entry field into the calculator's command line, and the calculated value can then be automatically copied back into the field which the calculator was launched from.
2. By tapping inside most text and numeric entry fields to open the keypad, and then tapping the "Calculator" button on the keypad. This will copy whatever value was currently in that entry field first into the keypad and then into the calculator's command line. The calculated value can then be automatically copied back into the keypad and then to the field which the calculator was launched from.
3. Or it can be launched through the menu system.



The Stack

The stack is a series of memory storage locations for numeric data. Each location in the stack is called a Level. There are a maximum of 20 Levels available in the Stack.

As you push new values on the stack, the stack grows to accommodate them: the new data moves into level 1, and older data is pushed to a higher level. Data in level 1 will move to level 2, data in level 2 to level 3, and so on. Any data in level 20 will be bumped off the stack if new data is added, and is unrecoverable. As you pop data off of the stack, the number of levels decrease as data is automatically bumped down to lower levels.

The stack display always shows levels 1 to 5, and you can use the scroll bar to view the other levels up to level 20.

The Command Line

The command line is where you enter or edit data. You can enter up to 20 characters in the command line.

The command line is closely tied to the stack. You use it to enter or edit data and then process it, and the results are pushed onto level 1 of the stack.

Function

Numeric Entry

You can enter values using the keys provided on the calculator or use the numeric keys on your keyboard.

[0] - [9] - Types numeric data into the command line

[<--] - Types a backspace into the command line. You can also use the Backspace key on your keyboard.

Stack Operations

Functions are available to help you manipulate data that is currently stored in the stack.

[EDIT] - Pops data from level 1 of the stack into the command line, bumping all other data down one level.

[SWAP] - Switches positions of the data in levels 1 and 2 of the stack. Or you can highlight a level on the stack and pressing the Swap button will move the value to level 1.

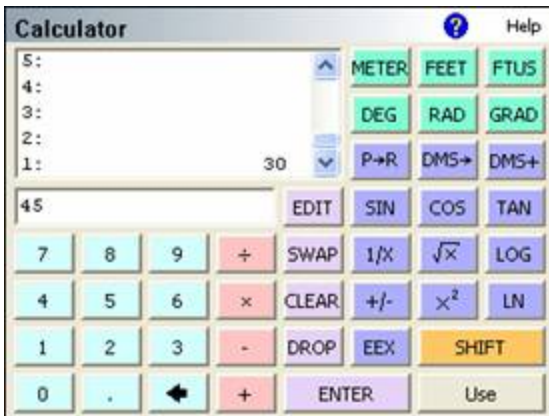
[CLEAR] - Deletes all data from the stack.

[DROP] - Deletes the data in level 1 of the stack, bumping all other data down one level.

[ENTER] - Pushes data from the command line into level 1 of the stack, bumping all other data up one level. You can also use your keyboard's Enter key.

The Shift Button

[SHIFT] - This is used to show the reverse functions of each operation.



When the shift key highlighted in yellow, it indicates that the shift key is currently depressed, press it again to un-shift



The OK/Cancel button

[OK] copies the value in level 1 of the stack back into the either the keypad or the numeric entry field which was double-tapped to launch the calculator, and closes the calculator.

[Cancel] closes the calculator, without copying the data anywhere

Note:

All data will remain on the Stack, and will be available the next time the calculator is re-started. On Exiting from Evidence Recorder, all data on the stack is written out to a file called CalcStack.bin and will be automatically re-loaded when Evidence Recorder is re-started.

Converting Units

[METER], [FEET], [FTUS]

Assigns a linear unit to the data in the Command Line, and places it on the Stack. If the Command Line is empty, then the unit is applied to the data currently in Level 1 of the Stack.

[DEG], [RAD], [GRAD]

Assigns an angular unit to the data in the Command Line, and places it on the Stack. If the Command Line is empty, then the unit is applied to the data currently in Level 1 of the Stack.

Note:

You do not need to press enter before pressing a unit button, it will automatically move whatever data is in the Command Line into Level 1 of the Stack.

Example: determine the metric equivalent of 15 feet:

```
[1][5] [FEET] [METER]
```

```
1:      4.572_m
```

Example: determine the gradient equivalent of 45 degrees:

```
[4][5] [DEG] [GRAD]
```

```
1:      50_grad
```

Basic Mathematical Operations

[+], [-], [×], [/]

Performs a mathematical operation on the data in Level 1 and Level 2 of the Stack, or on Level 1 and the Command Line.

Note:

You do not need to press [ENTER] before pressing a math button, it will automatically move whatever data is in the Command Line into Level 1 of the Stack.

Example: determine the sum of 2 + 3

```
| [2] [ENTER] [3] [+] |  
| 1:      5          |
```

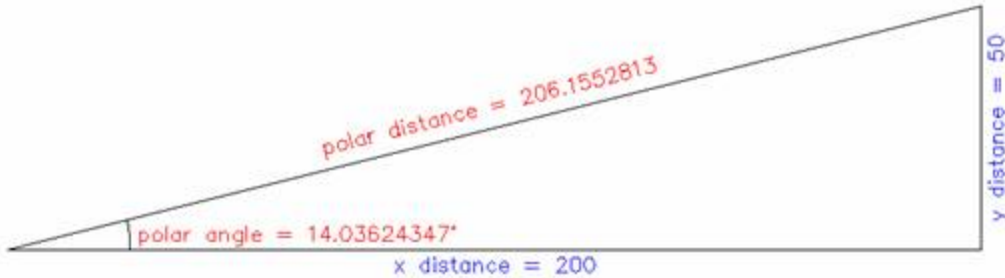
Advanced Mathematical Operations

Note:

You do not need to press [ENTER] before pressing a math button, it will automatically move whatever data is in the Command Line into Level 1 of the Stack.

[P>R] , [R>P]

Convert data between Polar and Rectangular notation



Example: Convert 206 feet at 14° to Rectangular components.

```
[2][0][6][ENTER][1][4][P->R]
2: 199.8809196
1: 49.83591049
```

Example: Convert x=200, y=50 to Polar components.

```
[2][0][0][ENTER][5][0][SHIFT][R->P]
2: 206.1552813
1: 14.03624347°
```

[DMS>] , [>DMS]

Converts data between Degrees/Minutes/Seconds and Decimal Degrees

Example: Convert from 12° 34' 56" to decimal degrees

```
[1][2][.][3][4][5][6][DMS->]
1: 12.58222222°
```

Example: Convert from 12.3456° to degrees, minutes, seconds

```
[1][2][.][3][4][5][6][SHIFT][->DMS]
1: 12.204416
```

[DMS+] , [DMS-]

Add or subtract DMS angles

Example: 12° 34' 56" + 1° 2' 3"

```
[1][2][.][3][4][5][6][ENTER][1][.][0][2][0][3][DMS+]
1: 13.3659
```

[SIN], [COS], [TAN], [ASIN], [ACOS], [ATAN]

Trigonometric calculations

Example: Cosine of 12.3456°

```
[1] [2] [.] [3] [4] [5] [6] [COS]
1:      0.9768757205
```

Example: Cosine of 12° 34' 56"

```
[1] [2] [.] [3] [4] [5] [6] [DMS->] [COS]
1: 0.9759844006
```

Example: Arc Cosine of 0.3456°

```
[0] [.] [3] [4] [5] [6] [SHIFT] [ACOS]
1:      69.78157371
```

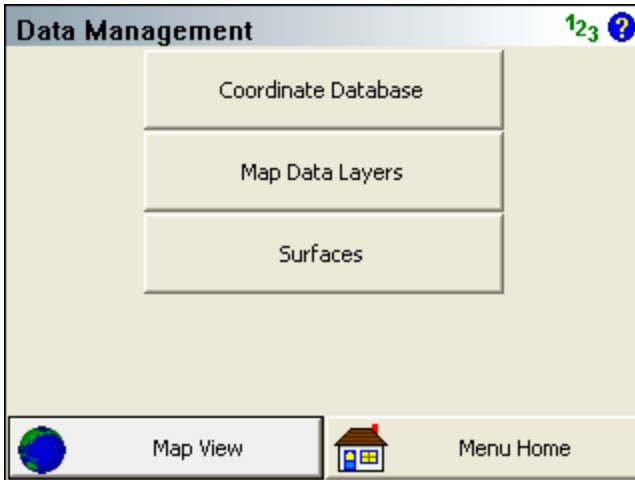
- [1/X] Inverse of X. Example: 1/4 = [4] [1/X] = 0.25
- [√x] Square Root of X. Example: ROOT(9) = [9] [√x] = 3
- [LOG] Logarithm (Base 10). Example: LOG(1000) = [1][0][0][0] [LOG] = 4
- [+/-] Change Sign. Example: [3] [ENTER] [+/-] = -3
- [x²] X Squared. Example: 3^2 = [3] [x²] = 9
- [LN] Natural Logarithm. Example: LN(148) = [1][4][8] [LN] = 4.997212274
- [EEX] Scientific Notation. Example: 3x10^4 = [3] [EEX] [4] = 30,000
- [pi] Pushes pi onto the stack. Example: [SHIFT] [pi] = 3.141592654
- [x√y] X'th root of Y. Example: 3ROOT(8) = [8] [ENTER] [3] [SHIFT] [x√y] = 2
- [10^x] 10 to the X. Example: 10^3 = [3] [SHIFT] [10^x] = 1000
- [y^x] Y to the X. Example: 2^3 = [2] [ENTER] [3] [SHIFT] [y^x] = 8
- [e^x] Exponent of X. Example: e^1 = [1] [ENTER] [SHIFT] [e^x] = 2.718281828

DATA MANAGER MENU

Data Manager Menu

Main Menu | Data Manager

This menu allows you to organize, manipulate and view the different data types that may be associated with your Evidence Recorder projects.



Coordinate Database

Use this to open the points database. From here you will find numerous tools that can be used to edit your points. Please see the [Coordinate Database](#) topic for more information.

Map Data Layers

Use this to import DXF, and georeferenced raster image files into your project, and to control the visibility of database layers and any files that you may have associated with your project. Please see the [Map Data Layers](#) topic for more information.

Surfaces

Use this to import DTM surface files into your project, view and edit your DTM surfaces, and perform volume calculations. Please see the [Surfaces](#) topic for more information.

Point Database

Main Menu | Data Manager | Point Database

The point database dialog is used to review, edit, and manipulate your point data in your project database. The list will display all points currently stored in the database, and the data can be sorted by pressing the column headers.

Point Database				
Point ID		X	Y	Z
1		5523958.627m	312330.376m	393.413m
2		5523853.287m	312321.092m	392.877m
3		5523853.567m	312320.797m	392.747m
4		5523876.912m	312327.033m	392.953m
5		5523882.649m	312304.231m	394.168m
6		5523828.172m	312326.595m	392.722m
7		5523773.007m	312221.920m	396.000m

Point ID (Survey Role) Icons



The instrument icon indicates your current occupied reference point.



The target icon indicates your current backsight point.



The checked stake icon indicates points that have been out.



The hub icon indicates control points, they can not be edited under any circumstances.



The user icon indicates user entered points, the coordinate can not be edited.



The ruler icon indicates measured points, the coordinate can not be edited.



The 123 icon indicates calculated points, the coordinate can not be edited.



The stake and square icon indicates a Staked and Stored point. The Staked and Stored survey role is unique and not associated with LandXML schema.

Note:

To edit the coordinate of a measured or calculated point, you must first change its survey role to **user entered**.

Edit

Use this to edit the coordinates of a point that is highlighted in the list using the [Store/Edit Points](#) tool. Remember you must change the Survey Role to **User Entered**.

Add

Use this to open the [Store Point](#) screen to manually enter a new point.

Find

Use this to select multiple points, based on a single point ID, a point ID range, a point coordinate range, or point descriptions.

Statistics

Use this to display statistics of the coordinate database, including the total number of points, bounding minimum and maximum coordinate values, and point ID's in use, and point ID's not in use.

Map View

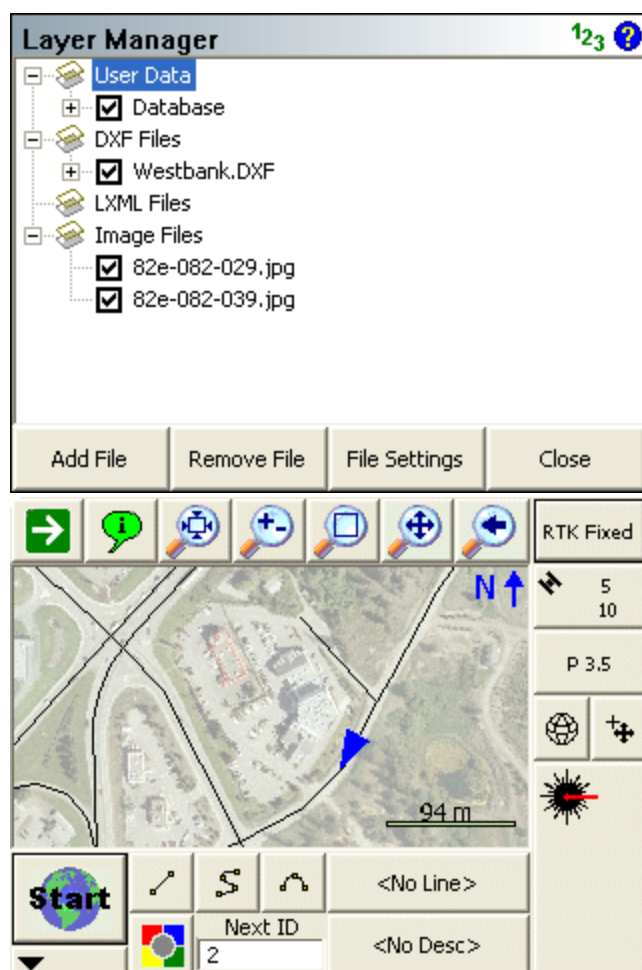
Use this to display the currently highlighted points on the screen.

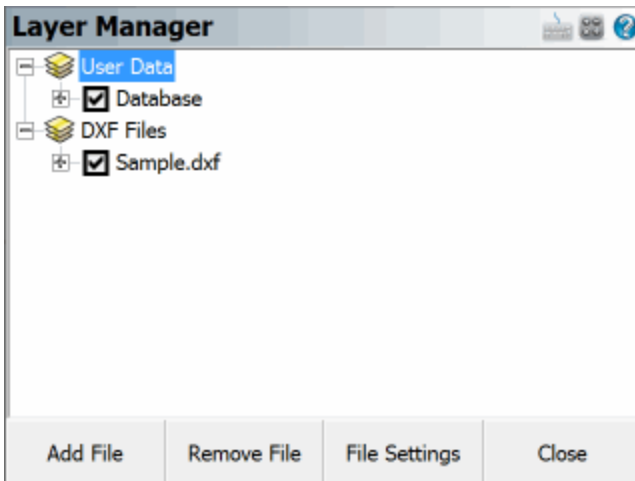
Average

Map Data Layers Manager

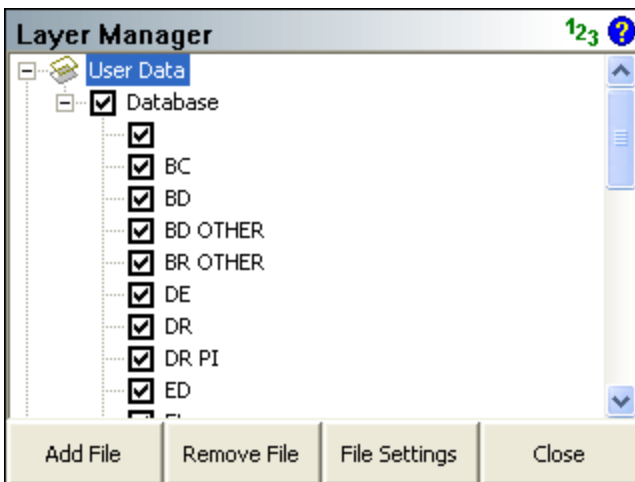
[Main Menu](#) | [Data Manager](#) | [Map Data Layers](#)

Use this to load, unload, and control the visibility of DXF files, and JPG or TIFF raster image files that are associated with your project, and to control the visibility of your database layers.





User Data



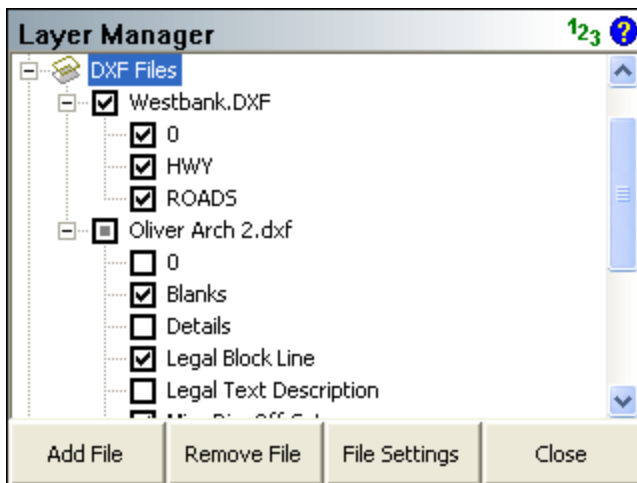
Evidence Recorder uses the layer names specified in the Automap library to control the visibility of points and figures by their description.

You can control the visibility of the entire database (both points and figures) by checking or unchecking the Database option under the User Data section of the tree. If the box is checked, then the database is turned on and all of its layers will be visible; if unchecked, then the file and all of its layers is turned off and it will not be visible. If the box has another smaller square inside it, this means that some of its layers are turned on and other layers are turned off.

You can control the visibility of individual layers by expanding Database option under the User Data section of the tree, and checking or unchecking the box beside the name of the layer. If the box is checked, then the layer is turned on and entities on that layer will be visible; if unchecked, then the layer is turned off and entities on it will not be visible.

When you close the project, the layer status will be saved so that the next time the project is opened, the layer visibility will automatically be set the same as you had left it, so layers that were turned off will remain turned off the next time the project is opened up.

DXF Files



You can load multiple DXF files into your Evidence Recorder project, and control the visibility of each of their layers independently from the others.

You can control the visibility of the entire DXF file by checking or unchecking the box beside the name of the DXF file, under the DXF Files section of the tree. If the box is checked, then the file is turned on and all of its layers will be visible; if unchecked, then the file and all of its layers is turned off and it will not be visible. If the box has another smaller square inside it, this means that some of its layers are turned on and other layers are turned off.

You can control the visibility of individual layers by expanding the name of the DXF file under the DXF Files section of the tree, and checking or unchecking the box beside the name of the layer. If the box is checked, then the layer is turned on and entities on that layer will be visible; if unchecked, then the layer is turned off and entities on it will not be visible.

When you close the project, the layer status will be saved so that the next time the project is opened, the layer visibility will automatically be set the same as you had left it, so files that were turned off will remain turned off the next time the project is opened up.

Add File

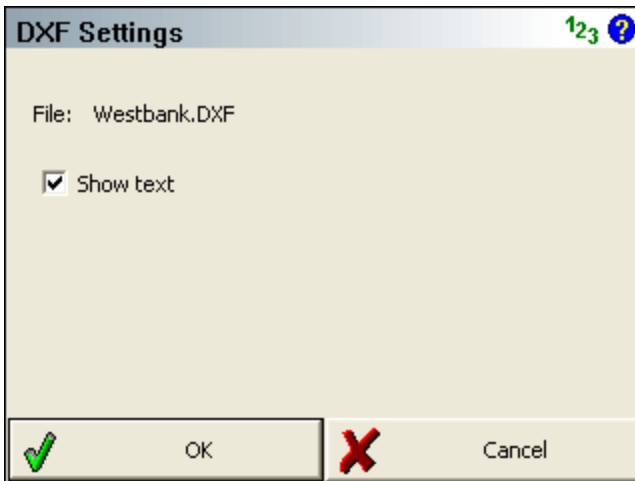
Press the Add File button to select a DXF file that you want to load into your project. You will be able to browse to and select any DXF file. Please see the [Import DXF File](#) topic for more information.

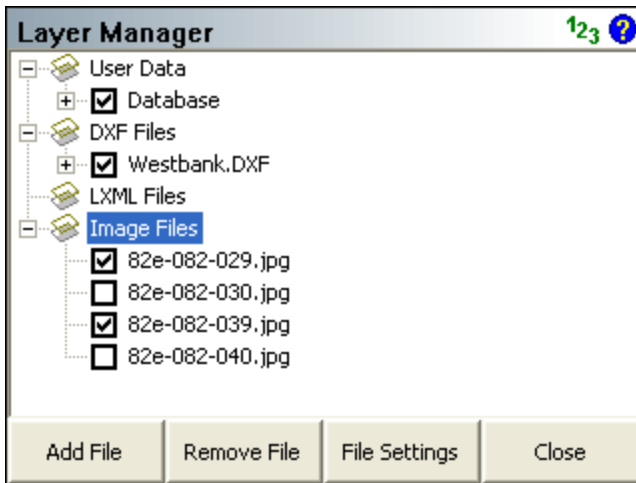
Remove File

Highlight the DXF file that you want to remove from your project, then press the Remove File button. If a file is not highlighted, you will be reminded that a file must first be selected from the tree. This will turn off all layers from the selected file in your Evidence Recorder project and disassociate the DXF file. It does not delete the DXF file.

File Settings

Highlight the DXF file that you wish to change the settings for, then press the File Settings button. You can enable or disable the display of text in the selected file. If your DXF file contains text, turning this off will improve performance of Evidence Recorder. Pressing the OK or Cancel buttons will return you to the Layer Manager screen.





You can load multiple georeferenced JPG or TIFF images into your Evidence Recorder project, and control the visibility of each of them independently from the others.

You can control the visibility of your images by checking or unchecking the box beside the name of the image file, under the Image Files section of the tree. If the box is checked, then the image is turned on and it will be visible; if unchecked, then the image is turned off and it will not be visible.

When you close the project, the visibility and opacity status of each image file will be saved so that the next time the project is opened, the image visibility will automatically be set the same as you had left it.

Add File

Press the Add File button to select an image (or DXF) file to load into your project. You will be able to browse to and select any JPG or TIF file. JPG files must have a corresponding JGW world file, and TIF files must have a corresponding TFW world file; these world files contain the georeferenced positioning information. The world file must have the same file name as the image file (just with the appropriate extension), and it will be automatically used to position the image.

Remove File

Highlight the image (or DXF) file you want to remove from your project, then press the Remove File button. If a file is not highlighted, you will be reminded that a file must first be selected from the tree. This will turn off the selected image in your Evidence Recorder project and disassociate the image file.

File Settings

Highlight the image file you want to view or change the display settings for, then press the File Settings button. You will see the file's name, size, and position information. You can also adjust the

opacity of the image. The default value of 100 will cause the image to be displayed normally, and reducing this value will make it appear fainter on the screen. This is useful if the image file being displayed makes your other Evidence Recorder data too hard to see over top of the image. Pressing the Close button will return you to the Layer Manager screen.

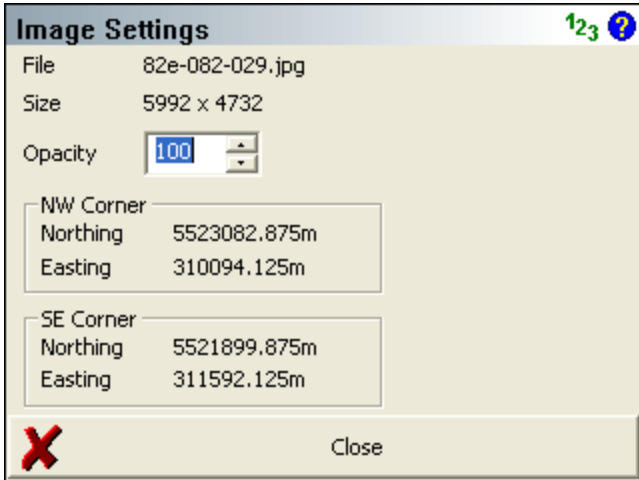
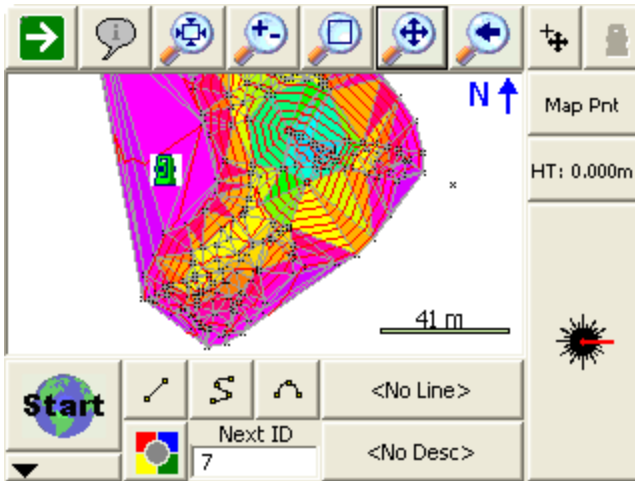


Image Settings	
File	82e-082-029.jpg
Size	5992 x 4732
Opacity	100
NW Corner	
Northing	5523082.875m
Easting	310094.125m
SE Corner	
Northing	5521899.875m
Easting	311592.125m
 Close	

Surfaces

[Main Menu](#) | [Data Manager](#) | [Surfaces](#)

Evidence Recorder allows you to display a 3D surface representation of the points and lines in your project. This is done by turning on the Point Database surface.



Supported DTM Files

You can import surface information into Evidence Recorder. Currently you can import a surface from an QSB file.

QSB Surface

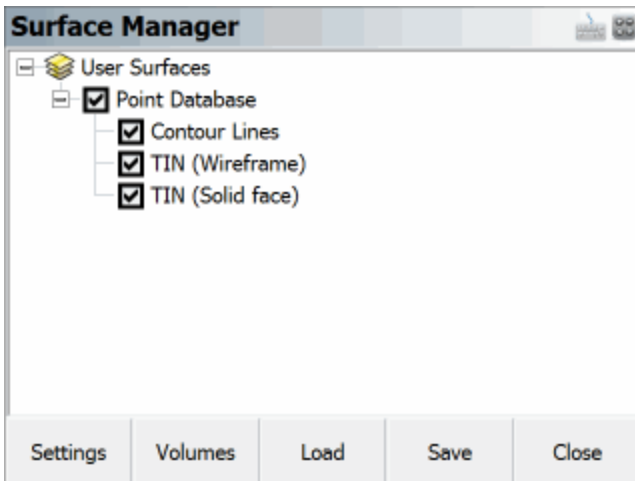
Surfaces created and saved in MapScenes desktop products will have a QSB extension. These QSB files can be imported into Evidence Recorder and used to display a TIN, shaded surface or contours on the screen.

To import a QSB file, use the Load button at the bottom of the Surface Manager screen. Please see the DTM Surface File Import (QSB) topic for more information.

DTM Surface Manager

The surface called Point Database represents the Realtime DTM Surface made up from points and lines that are in your project. If you have imported any other surfaces from a QSB file they will also appear in this list.

To use a surface you first need to load it into memory by checking inside the box before the name of the surface in the list. A surface is loaded if there is a checkmark shown before it. If you expand the surface you can control whether it is drawn as Contour Lines, a wireframe TIN, a solid TIN, or any combination of these.



Settings

Surface settings allow you to specify settings that affect the surfaces or contours that are drawn. Please see the [Surface Settings](#) topic for more information.

Volumes

Use this button to calculate a volume. Please see the [Volume Calculation](#) topic for more information.

Load

Use this button to load a .QSB surface file into your project. Please see the Import DTM Surface File topic for more information.

Save

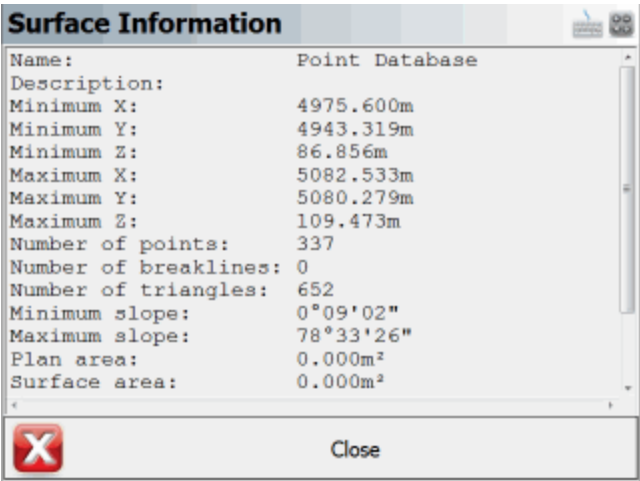
Use this button to save the selected surface as a .QSB file which can be imported into your Map-Scenes desktop software or into another Evidence Recorder project.

Close

If you close the surfaces screen and return back to the map screen you will see the loaded surface drawn as a wireframe, solid, and/or with contours depending on what is set in the Settings screen.

Surface Information

You can see additional statistics about the surface by double clicking on its name in the list. This will show the minimum and maximum bounding coordinates, the number of points, breaklines, and triangles in the surface, the minimum and maximum slopes in the surface, the plan and surface area, the positive and negative volumes calculated from a datum elevation of 0, and the amount of memory that the surface is using.



Point Database Surface

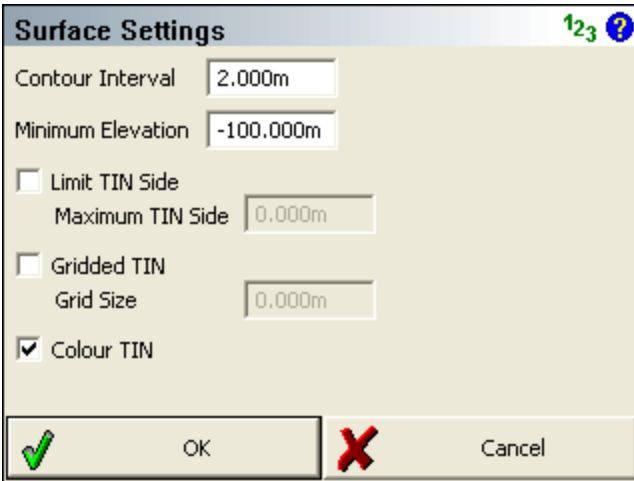
This can be used at any time. When this is turned on, all the points and lines in your project will be used to create a real-time DTM surface. This can be used while you're taking shots.

Please refer the [Realtime DTM Surface](#) topic for more information on Evidence Recorder DTM surfaces.

Surface Settings

[Main Menu](#) | [Data Manager](#) | [Surfaces](#) | **[Settings](#)**

Use the surface settings screen to define settings that affect TIN (Triangular Irregular Network), TGRID and Contours.

The image shows a 'Surface Settings' dialog box. It has a title bar with the text 'Surface Settings' and a small icon with the number '123' and a question mark. The dialog contains several input fields and checkboxes. The 'Contour Interval' is set to '2.000m'. The 'Minimum Elevation' is set to '-100.000m'. There are three checkboxes: 'Limit TIN Side' (unchecked), 'Gridded TIN' (unchecked), and 'Colour TIN' (checked). Below the 'Limit TIN Side' checkbox is a 'Maximum TIN Side' input field set to '0.000m'. Below the 'Gridded TIN' checkbox is a 'Grid Size' input field set to '0.000m'. At the bottom, there are three buttons: a green checkmark icon, the text 'OK', a red 'X' icon, and the text 'Cancel'.

Contour Interval

This will force the contours to be drawn at an interval equal to the value set here. The interval is equal to the drawing units.

Minimum Elevation

This controls the minimum elevation. This is useful if you have some data that is displayed at a zero elevation (example: alignment point data that is horizontal) and you want to exclude these points from the surface.

Limit TIN Side

This will determine the max length that will be allowed for a TIN triangle.

Gridded TIN

If this is on, when you draw the surface it will be represented using a TGRID model instead of a TIN model. TGRID surfaces will apply smoothing in areas that have no breaklines. This may create better quality contours. The Grid Size is a ground unit value that will determine the spacing of the grid lines. If the Grid Size is 0 then a grid size will be automatically calculated.

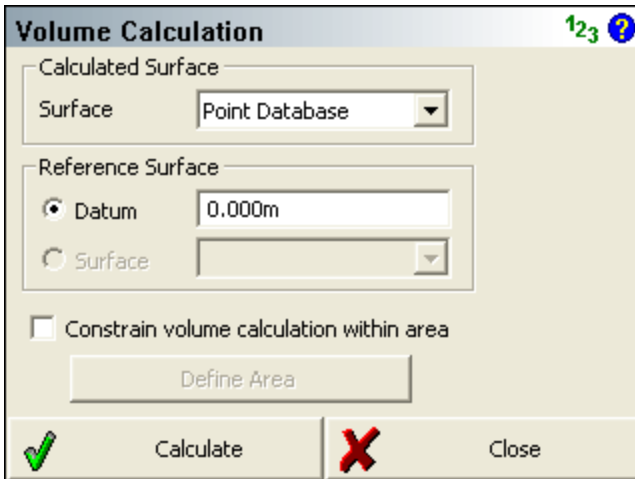
Color TIN

When this is turned on then the surface color will be determined by the triangles' elevation. When turned off the surface will be displayed using a gray color. If the TIN's wireframe and solid faces are both being displayed, then the faces will be colored but the wireframe will be gray for better visibility.

Volume Calculation

[Main Menu](#) | [Data Manager](#) | [Surfaces](#) | [Volumes](#)

Evidence Recorder allows you to calculate the volume between a surface and either another surface or a datum elevation. The volume can be computed for the entire surface, or it can be bound by a closed figure.



Calculated Surface

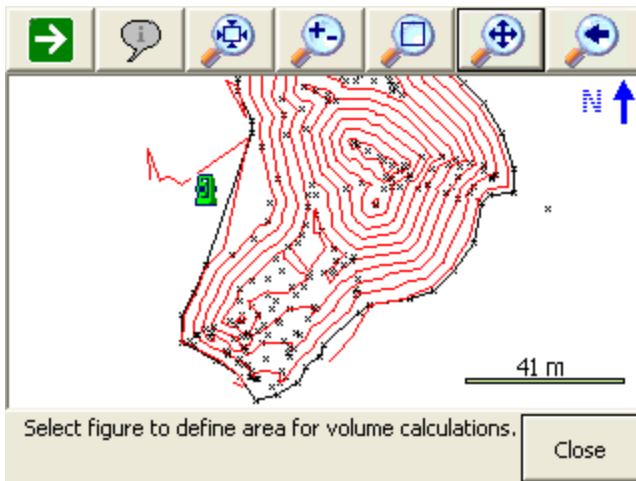
Choose the surface that you want to calculate the volumes for. If you have imported any surfaces from a QSB file they will be available to choose from, or you can choose the realtime Point Database surface.

Reference Surface

You can choose have the volume calculated between your selected surface and either a datum elevation (which defaults at 0 meters/feet), or if you have imported any surfaces from a QSB file they will be available to choose as a reference surface.

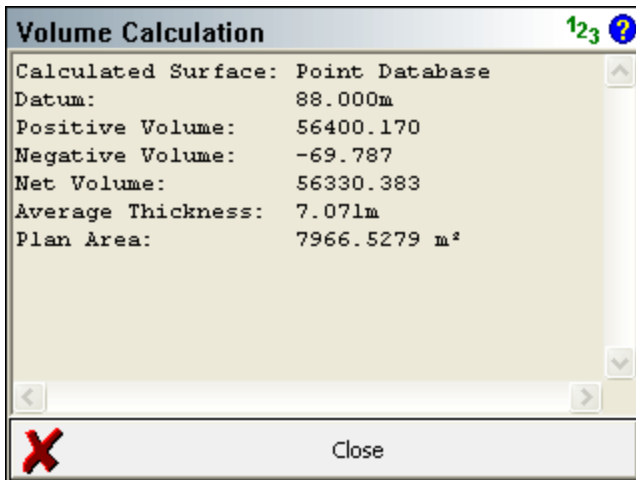
Constrain volume calculation within area

If this is unchecked, a surface volume calculation will be computed for the entire surface. If this is checked, an area volume calculation will be computed for a portion of the surface bounded by an area you define. You can press the **Define Area** button to select a closed figure to assign as a boundary for the volume calculation. After you have selected the figure, press Close to return to the Volumes Calculation screen.



Calculate

Pressing this will calculate and display the positive, negative and net volumes, the average thickness, and the area of the surface from either the selected datum elevation or reference surface, all constrained within the selected closed figure if selected.



The results will also be written into the project's CogoCalcs.txt history file.

Realtime DTM Surface

Evidence Recorder creates and manipulates a 3D surface from data collected in the field or from data imported through QSB or ASCII point files. A Evidence Recorder surface is a mathematical description of a surface that exactly honors all input 3D data points and lines.

A Surface represents the existing topography of a job site. Surfaces contain one or more parts such as points, break lines, triangulated irregular networks (TIN), or triangulated grids (TGRID).

A surface is not a drawing entity, rather it is a mathematical description held in the data collectors memory. Representations of a surface, such as contours, TGRIDS or TINS may be drawn into your diagram as polylines and polyface entities.

Creating a Realtime DTM in Evidence Recorder

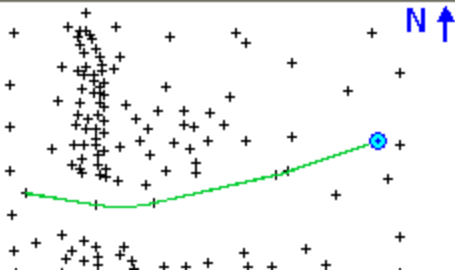
Evidence Recorder will compute a DTM model from points collected, staked, or imported from any ASCII file and from any existing Evidence Recorder project. There are no limits to the number of points that are used to create the DTM. The Automap Library controls what points and/ or lines are included or excluded from the DTM surface. The DTM is created in real time and can be appended as additional points are picked up.

To create a DTM, follow the instructions below:

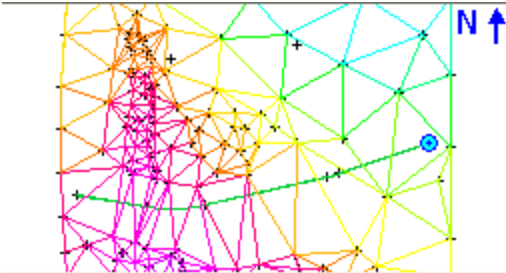
From Main Menu | Data Manager | Surfaces you can turn on the **Realtime DTM Surface** by placing a checkmark in the box before the "Point Database" surface. Expanding the tree will allow you to define whether it is displayed as Contour Lines, Solid Faces, and/or Triangle Edges.

The surface can be viewed or used in volume computations immediately.

Before turning on the Point Database surface:



After turning on the Point Database surface:

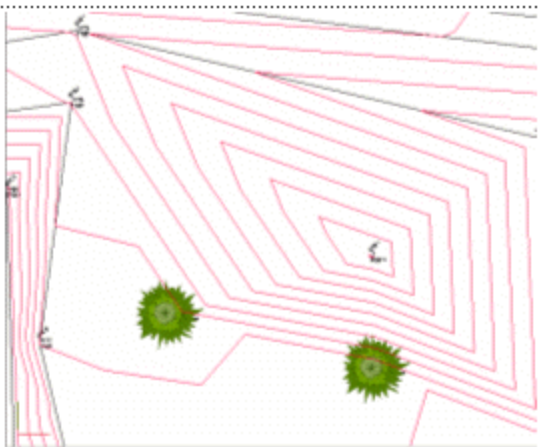


Each point in the database has an attribute called "DTM Attribute". This can be set to "donotininclude". If you set a point to this value, you will see that the surface no longer includes this point. This only applies to the current surface that is computed in Evidence Recorder. It does not apply to surfaces imported from a QSB file.

What is the difference between a TIN and a TGRID?

The user should become familiar with both options and decide which option is best suited for their project.

TIN honors breaklines but may be too restrictive for contours to follow the natural flow of the terrain. Contours around small hills may look jagged if too few data points were collected.



TGRD honors breaklines and allows the contours to follow the natural flow of the terrain. Contours around small hills will look better if the TGRD option is used.

Generally, the **TGRD** is for cases where you want curvature introduced between your data points and you have break lines. This is most easily shown with an example:



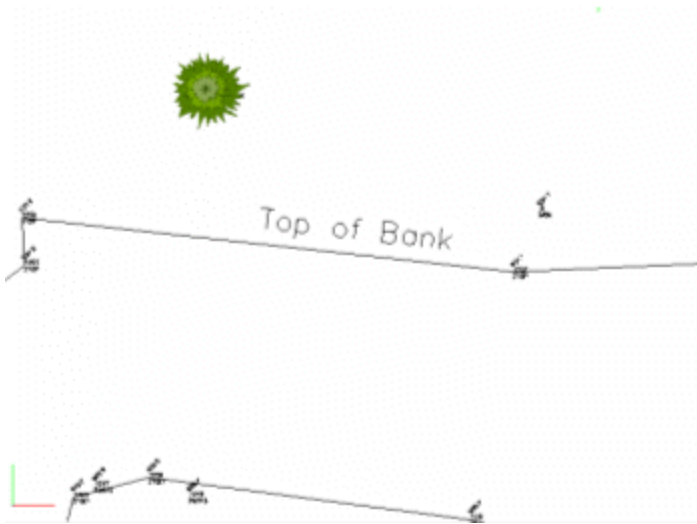
Adding Breaklines to a Surface

If a break in the slope continuity is desired, the user **MUST ALWAYS** use the TIN or TGRD (Tri-angulated Grid) in conjunction with break lines. When modeling a surface containing break lines, a TIN or TGRD honors break lines exactly.

What happens when you add break lines?

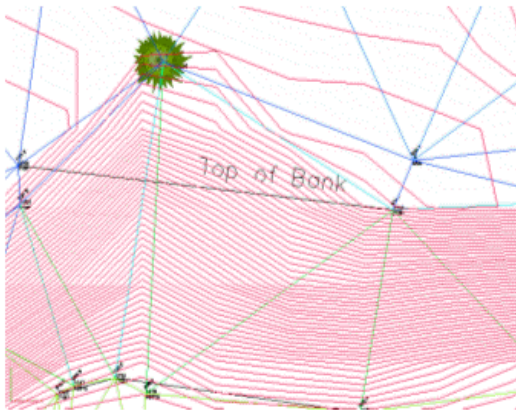
Break lines represent 3D continuous traces in space (think of them as a 3D polyline) which:

1. Define the surface elevation
2. Force slopes to be different on either side of the break line



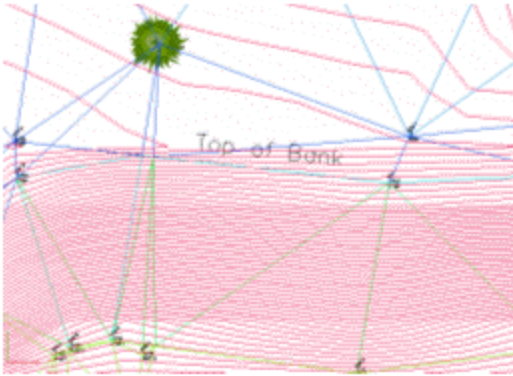
This line represents a location on the site where the slope changes from a steep hill to a relatively flat area.

Contours Generated without use of Top of Bank breakline:



Without a breakline, the contours "flow" over the top of the bank and the contours do not look correct.

Contours generated with use of Top of Bank breakline:



With a breakline, the contours are forced to honor the line, as a change in slope that helps the contours to look correct.

Breakline Control

The user would want to use a figure as a break line in the triangle formation process (TIN) for the edge of pavement, but probably not for a line connecting points that are not related to the surface features. An example of this might be a chain connecting legal boundaries as they might cross over roads or creeks without consideration for the existing topography.

Breaklines are used in the creation of the DTM by forcing the triangulation to follow them. Triangles created in the DTM cannot cross a breakline. The edges of the triangles will always follow the breakline. When necessary, Evidence Recorder will automatically densify the DTM along the breakline to create triangles that conform to the breaklines. This helps with the creation of accurate surface models and contours. Evidence Recorder contains the exact same functions for surface modeling, contouring, and volumes as MapScenes.

Contouring

Creating contours in Evidence Recorder is as simple as choosing the desired DTM surface from the dialog and checking the contour option:

The procedures for contouring a DTM surface are outlined below:

1. Open the [Surface Settings](#) dialog.
2. Type in the appropriate **Contour Interval**. The default interval is every 2 units.
3. You can control the **Minimum Elevation**. This is useful if you have some data that is displayed at a zero elevation (example: alignment point data that is horizontal) and you want to

exclude these points.

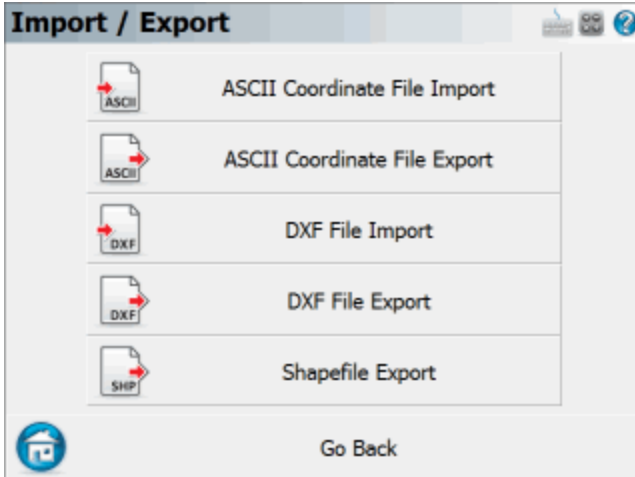
4. If you want to create a TGRID, then turn on the Gridded TIN option, or leave this off to create a TIN. The Grid Size is a ground unit value that will determine the spacing of the grid lines.
5. Press **OK** to return to the [Surface Manager](#) screen.
6. Finally, turn on the contours by expanding the Point Database surface and selecting the Contour Lines option to display them.
7. Close the Surface Manager and return to the map screen to see your contours.

IMPORT/EXPORT MENU

Import/Export Menu

Main Menu | Import/Export

Use this menu to display different options for importing data into or exporting data out of your project.



ASCII Coordinate File Import

Use this to import an ASCII file into your project. Please see the [ASCII Coordinate File Import](#) topic for more information.

ASCII Coordinate File Export

Use this to export an ASCII file of your points. Please see the [ASCII Coordinate File Export](#) topic for more information.

DXF File Import

Use this to import a DXF file into your project. Please see the [DXF File Import](#) and [Map Data Layers](#) topics for more information.

DXF File Export

Use this to export a DXF file of your current project. The DXF file will contain drawing entities of your points and lines. Please see the [DXF File Export](#) topic for more information.

SDR File Export

The SDR Export in Evidence Recorder will convert the existing raw file into a SDR 33 compatible format. Please see the [SDR File Export](#) topic for more information.

Shapefile Export

Use this to export an ESRI shapefile. Please see the [Shapefile Export](#) topic for more information.

Import Template

You can import a template that was previously exported using this command. Please see the [template import](#) command for more information.

Export Template

You can export figures and points using this command. Please see the [Export Template](#) topic for more information.

Import User Coordinate Systems

You can import a template that was previously exported using this command. Please see the [template import](#) command for more information.

Export User Coordinate Systems

You can export figures and points using this command. Please see the [Export Template](#) topic for more information.

Notes:

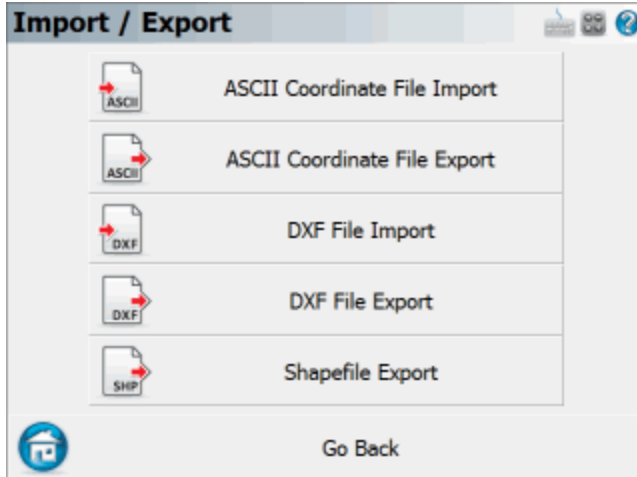
- For importing DXF and raster image files, please see the [Map Data Layers](#) topic in the [Data Manager](#) menu.
- For importing DTM surface files, please see the [Surfaces](#) topic in the [Data Manager](#) menu.

IMPORT/EXPORT MENU

Import/Export Menu

Main Menu | Import/Export

Use this menu to display different options for importing data into or exporting data out of your project.



ASCII Coordinate File Import

Use this to import an ASCII file into your project. Please see the [ASCII Coordinate File Import](#) topic for more information.

ASCII Coordinate File Export

Use this to export an ASCII file of your points. Please see the [ASCII Coordinate File Export](#) topic for more information.

DXF File Import

Use this to import a DXF file into your project. Please see the [DXF File Import](#) and [Map Data Layers](#) topics for more information.

DXF File Export

Use this to export a DXF file of your current project. The DXF file will contain drawing entities of your points and lines. Please see the [DXF File Export](#) topic for more information.

SDR File Export

The SDR Export in Evidence Recorder will convert the existing raw file into a SDR 33 compatible format. Please see the [SDR File Export](#) topic for more information.

Shapefile Export

Use this to export an ESRI shapefile. Please see the [Shapefile Export](#) topic for more information.

Import Template

You can import a template that was previously exported using this command. Please see the [template import](#) command for more information.

Export Template

You can export figures and points using this command. Please see the [Export Template](#) topic for more information.

Import User Coordinate Systems

You can import a template that was previously exported using this command. Please see the [template import](#) command for more information.

Export User Coordinate Systems

You can export figures and points using this command. Please see the [Export Template](#) topic for more information.

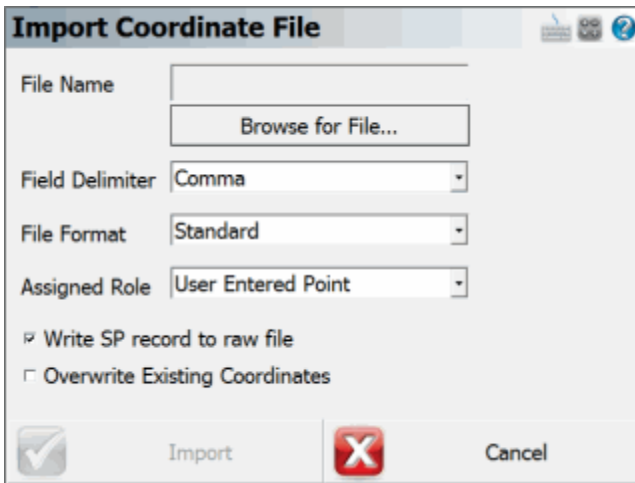
Notes:

- For importing DXF and raster image files, please see the [Map Data Layers](#) topic in the [Data Manager](#) menu.
- For importing DTM surface files, please see the [Surfaces](#) topic in the [Data Manager](#) menu.

ASCII Coordinate File Import

Main Menu | Import/Export | ASCII Coordinate File Import

Use this option to import a list of coordinates to the current project.



This may be required if a separate coordinate file is uploaded to the device by itself (not as part of a project with linework). This is also useful for transfer of points from one file to another.

Function

1. Click on the "Browse for File..." button to navigate to and select your file.
2. Choose the field delimiter, either Comma or Space.
3. Choose the file format. See below for more information regarding file format. If you are uncertain, use the **Standard** format.
4. Use the assigned role field to select the survey role of the points being imported. If these points are to go into the list, then select **To Stake Out** as the survey role.
5. **Write SP (Store Point) record to raw file** will store the imported coordinates to the raw file. This is very useful if you wish to reprocess coordinates later, so we recommend that you select this when importing points.
6. **Overwrite Existing Coordinates** - allows you to control whether points will be overwritten during the import.
7. **Set as Control Points** – will set a flag in the database that will prevent these points from being edited or changed in Evidence Recorder (under any circumstances!)
8. Choose **OK** to import the coordinates, **Cancel** to abort the import.
9. You will be shown a confirmation of how many points were imported to the current project.

File Formats

Both space and comma delimited files are supported.

For all formats, the order of the Northing and Easting fields are determined by setting the Coordinate Order in the [Options](#) screen.

Standard

```
ID, Northing/Y or Easting/X, Easting/X or Northing/Y, Elevation, Descrip-
tion>Note
```

This format expects the file to be in a standard ASCII format. If your descriptions have a colon in them, then Evidence Recorder will store everything before the colon as a description, and everything after the colon will be considered to be a note.

Standard with Header

Same as the Standard format, but the first row in the file is ignored.

Extended

```
ID, Northing/Y or Easting/X, Easting/X or Northing/Y, Elevation, Descrip-
tion, Note, Latitude, Longitude, Ellipsoidal Height, Latitude StdDev, Lon-
gitude StdDev, Height StdDev
```

This format is different than the standard such that notes are separate from descriptions. Also if you collected GPS data, the WGS 84 information can also be included and imported along with other information related to the GPS point.

Extended with Header

Same as the Extended format, but the first row in the file is ignored.

More about the Extended Format

If you import aEvidence Recorder extended file format ASCII file, Evidence Recorder will create EP and GS records in the raw file. Also, the coordinates will be imported and stored in the database. Importing this type of file is useful for seeding points when using the OmniStar GPS system or to create a list of geodetic and cartesian points that you can select while programming a GPS base receiver.

ID	Northing	Easting	Elevation	Description	Note	Latitude	Longitude	Ellip
100	5523097.874	311564.984	399.387	CONTROL		49.83067177	-119.6202724	
101	5523168.871	311529.912	401.188	CONTROL		49.83129864	-119.620794	
102	5523164.192	311507.476	400.85	CONTROL		49.83124955	-119.6211034	
103	5523135.07	311511.185	399.795	CONTROL		49.83098906	-119.6210377	
104	5523099.336	311521.81	399.552	CONTROL		49.83067133	-119.6208728	
105	5523074.024	311506.919	399.233	CONTROL		49.83043923	-119.6210673	
106	5523046.282	311521.379	398.049	CONTROL		49.83019451	-119.620853	
201	5523161.883	311526.004	400.632	CONTROL		49.83123463	-119.6208449	
202	5523159.786	311530.386	400.665	CONTROL		49.83121716	-119.620783	
203	5523167.28	311538.864	401.095	CONTROL		49.83128716	-119.6206689	
204	5523165.261	311551.194	400.946	CONTROL		49.8312729	-119.6204967	
205	5523172.776	311493.661	401.686	CONTROL		49.83132233	-119.6212995	

Importing Cartesian and Geodetic Coordinates

Above is an example of an Extended ASCII file. For the format to work correctly, each point should include Cartesian and Geodetic coordinates for each point. The standard deviations are not needed unless the point is going to be used to "seed" a position for use with the OmniStarVBS system. **The Latitude and Longitude values are required to be stored in decimal degrees.**

So if this type of file is imported into Evidence Recorder the following will occur:

- A point is stored in the project database using the Cartesian Coordinates.
- A GS record is written in the raw file using the Cartesian Coordinates as a reference.
- An EP record is written to the raw file using the Geodetic Coordinates as a reference.

Importing Geodetic Coordinates Only

You can create an Extended ASCII Point file that only contains a point number, description, note and Geodetic coordinates. Upon import Evidence Recorder will use the Geodetic coordinates and your defined coordinate system in your [coordinate system settings](#) to compute Cartesian coordinates to be stored in the database.

So if this type of file is imported into Evidence Recorder the following will occur:

- Using the horizontal and Vertical datum settings you've defined in your [coordinate system settings](#), Evidence Recorder will compute a Cartesian coordinate for each point using the Geodetic values imported from the ASCII file.
- A point is stored in the project database using the Cartesian Coordinates that was computed. The point will be assigned the point number that was imported from the ASCII file.

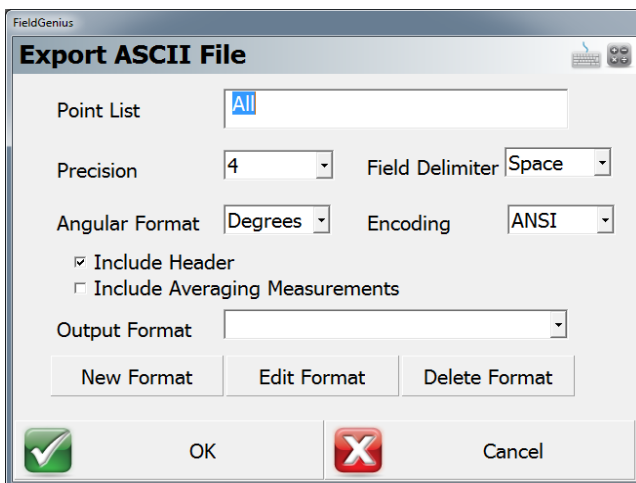
- A GS record is written in the raw file using the Cartesian Coordinates as a reference.
- An EP record is written to the raw file using the Geodetic Coordinates as a reference.

ASCII Coordinate File Export

Main Menu | Import/Export | ASCII Coordinate File Export

Use this option to export a coordinate list from the current file.

This is useful for transfer of points from one file to another.



Function

1. Specify a range of point to export in the form **#..#**. Accept default of **All** if desired.
2. Specify the number of decimal places to carry on the export. (maximum=6)
3. Specify if you want to export them with either a space or comma delimiter.
4. Specify the Angular format.
5. Specify the Encoding format.
 - ANSI - This is the default format for ASCII, which is compatible with majority of the CAD programs such as Autodesk products.
 - UNICODE - This is for use with non-English characters in the Description or Note fields.
6. Include Header will add a header row to the exported file.

7. Include Averaging Measurements - This will include all the temporary observations of all the averaged points into the exported file
8. Choose the file format type that you want to use. See below for more details about the different file formats. If you are uncertain, use the **Standard** format.
9. Choose **Export** to export the coordinates, or **Cancel** to abort the export.
10. Browse to the folder where you want to save the file, enter a filename including an extension, then press **Save File**. Evidence Recorder will not add any extension to the filename you enter.
11. You will be shown a confirmation of how many points were exported.

File Formats

Both space and comma delimited files are supported.

For all formats, the order of the Northing and Easting fields are determined by setting the Coordinate Order in the [Options](#) screen.

Standard

```
| ID, Northing/Y or Easting/X, Easting/X or Northing/Y, Elevation, Descrip- |
| tion:Note |
```

This format will append any notes you have to your description, separated by a colon.

Evidence Recorder has recently added two check boxes to include the Header and the Averaging Measurements to the ASCII file when exporting.

Extended

```
| ID, Northing/Y or Easting/X, Easting/X or Northing/Y, Elevation, Descrip- |
| tion, Note, Latitude, Longitude, EllipsoidalHeight, LatitudeStdDev, Lon- |
| gitudeStdDev, HeightStdDev |
```

This format is different than the Standard such that notes are separated from descriptions.

If you collected GPS data, the WGS 84 information will also be exported along with other information related to the GPS point. The WGS 84 information will be extracted from your GS records in the raw file.

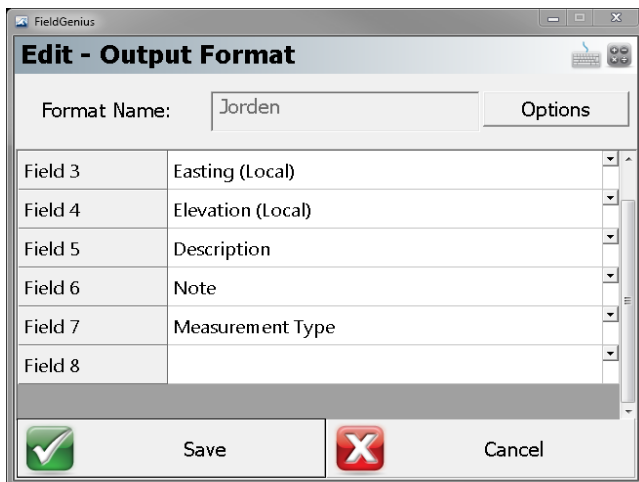
Extended with Header

Same as the Extended format, but with Header data in the first row.

CST

This is a predefined format intended for Leica ELLIPSE Neo software

Custom Formats

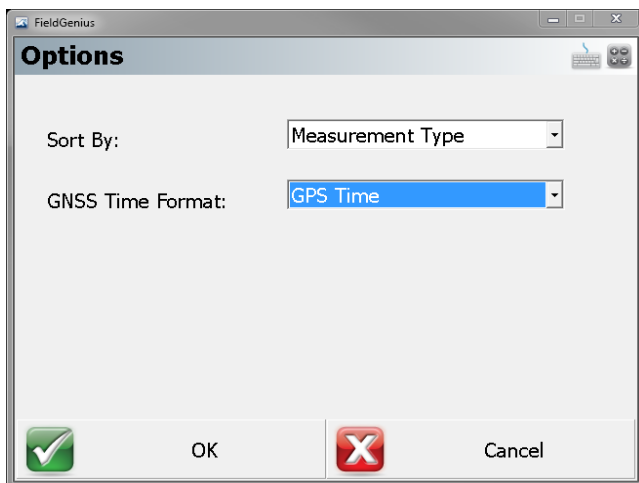


Edit - Output Format

Format Name:

Field 3	Easting (Local)
Field 4	Elevation (Local)
Field 5	Description
Field 6	Note
Field 7	Measurement Type
Field 8	

Evidence Recorder has the option to create a customized ASCII file for exporting. This option allows the user to add additional information to the standard ASCII file format. Simply click in the grey area to add in an extra info line and select what you wish to add in from the pull down menu.



Options

Sort By:

GNSS Time Format:

There is also an "Options" button in the upper right corner where you can specifically request the ASCII file to either sort by Point ID or Measurement type as select what GNSS time format.

More about the Extended Format

If you import a Evidence Recorder extended file format ASCII file, we will create EP and GS records in the raw file. Also, the coordinates will be imported and stored in the database. Importing this type of file is useful for seeding points when using the OmniStar GPS system.

There is more detailed information about the extended format in the [ASCII Coordinate File Import](#) topic.

DXF File Import

Main Menu | Data Manager | Map Data Layers | Add File

Use this function to import CAD DXF files into an Evidence Recorder project.

Evidence Recorder supports all Point nodes, Lines, Arcs, Polylines, Text and 3D Faces in the DXF file.

Evidence Recorder does not support Blocks or any other entities not mentioned above in the DXF file.

All items from the DXF file will be drawn in their respective layers as defined in the DXF file. These layers may be toggled on and off using Evidence Recorder's layer manager.

Importing Steps

1. From the main menu, press the **Data Manager** button then the **Map Data Layers** button.
2. Press the **Add File** button on the Layer Manager.
3. Using the browse window, find the DXF file you would like to import and press the **Open File** button.
4. Use the Layer Manager to turn on or off any layers you don't want to view.
5. Press **Close** and return to the map view.
6. Press the zoom extents button to see your entire DXF file.

For more information on the layer manager please visit the [Layer Manager](#) topic.

Important Notes:

- Your CAD desktop system likely has a super fast processor and 1GB or more of RAM but most current Windows CE devices run at 206Mhz and have 32 or maybe 64MB of RAM. For this reason, you will not be able to manipulate a 5MB DXF file with the same speed as your desktop system so minimize the size of the DXF files for most efficient operation.

- TEXT is the biggest performance reducer in your DXF files. For best performance, minimize the amount of text in the DXF files or turn off layers containing text when not needed.

DXF File Export

Main Menu | Import/Export | DXF File Export

Use this to export your current Evidence Recorder drawing as a DXF file. This allows for easy import of linework and nodes into most cad or graphic systems

Function

1. Select the options for your DXF file.

Export Points: If this is checked, your coordinate point nodes will be exported to the DXF file. You can also specify what layer you want the labels to go on and a default text height.

Export Lines: If this is checked, all figures (lines, arcs, and splines) will be exported to the DXF file.

Export Contours: If this is checked, all contour lines drawn using the [Surface Manager](#) will be exported to the DXF file.

2. Click **Export**.
3. Browse to the folder where you want to save the file, enter a filename, then press Save File. Evidence Recorder will add a .dxf extension to the filename if you did not include it.
4. The DXF file is created and you can copy it to your desktop computer.

Notes about DXF files:

- Upon export, Evidence Recorder will compare the figure name to see if it has a match in the AutoMap file. If it does, Evidence Recorder will draw the points along the figure, as well as draw the figure on the layer specified in the AutoMap library.
- Points that are exported will match the point color settings set in the Automap library.
- Figures that don't have a match in the Automap library will be drawn on a layer named "Default". Color setting will be set to 256.
- Points or nodes will be 2D or 3D depending on the Z value.
- Lines will be 2D or 3D depending on the Z values of the end points.
- Figures will be drawn as polylines.
- Curvy lines or arcs will be drawn as segmented polylines. Evidence Recorder will automatically interpolate an elevation along the arc or curved section of the figure at 1° intervals.
- Contours will be drawn as polylines and will be 3D based on the contour elevation.
- Points or nodes will appear as an "X" marker in the DXF file because the PDMODE variable is being set to 3 in the DXF file. In most desktop CAD programs you can change this marker type by typing PDMODE.

SDR File Export

[Main Menu](#) | [Import/Export](#) | [SDR File Export](#)

The SDR Export in Evidence Recorder will convert the existing raw file into a SDR 33 compatible format. It is important to note that currently not all existing raw record types are exported through the SDR export.

Currently the following types are exported:

- Store Points
- Job Info
- Units
- Notes / Comments
- Occupy Setups
- Sideshots
- Stakeout shots
- Target Heights

- Resection measurements are not exported, but computed resection point exported as Store Point.
- The resulting SS or TR shot for multisets will be exported as a sideshot.
- The resulting SS or TR shot for angle or distance offsets will be exported as a sideshot.
- Calculated points will be stored as a Store Point
- Adjusted Points are exported as Store Points

The following record types are not currently exported:

- GPS Datum Settings
- GPS Transformation Parameters
- GPS Measurements

Function

1. Select **SDR File Export** from the [Import/Export menu](#).
2. Browse to the folder where you want to save the file, enter a filename, then press Save File. Evidence Recorder will add a .sdr extension to the filename if you did not include it.

Shapefile Export

Main Menu | Import/Export | Shapefile Export

Use this to export your points and linework in a shape file format. This can then be imported into products that support shape files. This export will create a DBF, SHP and a SHX file for the linework and points in your project.

For example, if your project name was HWY 97, the following files will be created for the linework.

HWY 97_POLYLINE.shx
HWY 97_POLYLINE.shp
HWY 97_POLYLINE.dbf

For the points in your project, Evidence Recorder already stores points in a DBF file (HWY 97.dbf) so only two other files will be created.

HWY 97.shx
HWY 97.shp

Function

1. Select **Shapefile Export** from the [Import/Export menu](#).
2. You will see a message indicating "Shapefile export complete."

Importing into ESRI or other application

To open these files in a compatible product you need to ensure you have all six file saved in the same directory.

For more information on shape files, visit www.esri.com

Import / Export User Defined Coordinate Systems

User defined coordinate systems created by a user are saved in the binary mapping system files.

It is useful to be able to export these user created coordinate systems for the following reasons:

1. A backup of your user defined coordinate systems.
2. Allows you to share user defined coordinate systems with other crews.
3. Allows you to load user defined coordinate systems after installing a FieldGenius update.

Export

When you export the user defined coordinate systems you will be able to specify a directory to save the file to and a name for the file.

Exported files will automatically be saved with a CSMAP extension such as **mycoordinatesystem.csmap**.

All user defined coordinate systems in Evidence Recorder will be exported to the file.

Import

You can import coordinate systems from a previously saved file.

When you import a file you will be asked to browse to and select the file you want to import. Once selected, Evidence Recorder will check to make sure a user defined system doesn't already exist and if one does, you will be asked if you want to skip importing it, or overwrite the existing coordinate system.

Backups

Evidence Recorder automatically creates a backup when you add or edit user defined coordinate systems. If you forgot to save your user defined coordinate systems, you may be able to restore them using a backup. Please see the [Coordinate System](#) topic for more details.

ABOUT EVIDENCE RECORDER

About Evidence Recorder

[Main Menu](#) | [About](#)

Use this to display information about the Evidence Recorder version you have installed or view what modules you have registered.

Evidence Recorder

MicroSurvey Software Inc.
Copyright © 2001-2012 MicroSurvey Software,
Version 9.0.0.2 (2012-03-07)

Device ID: E008-5B1F-ECAD-4DF6

Key: CDF7 0A48 0332 5F41
9FD2 029A 5FC3 FE28

Apply Key

Licensed Modules:
Standard + Advanced + Total Station + Robotic + GNSS

Continue Cancel

You will also see your Device ID and a series of fields where you can input the Key Code you received from MapScenes.

You will see an area that will show you the status of your license, including any modules that you currently have licensed. If you want to use Evidence Recorder in demo mode, press the **Run Demo Mode** button.

Please refer to the [Registration & Demo Mode](#) topic for further information.

Target Manager

MapView | Target Manager |

The Target Manager is a place where you can manage your EDM (electronic distance measurement) targets. You can create, edit, copy, and delete targets.

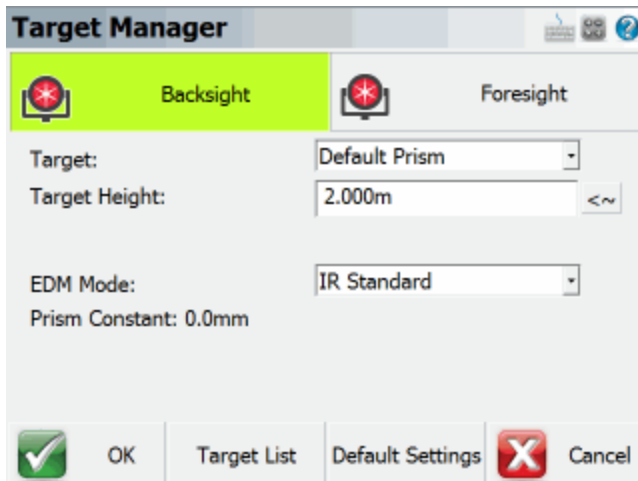
The Target Manager is divided into 2 sections: Backsight and Foresight.

Note: Leica users should refer to the [Leica version of the Target Manager topic](#).

GeoMax users should refer to this [GeoMax version of the Target Manager topic](#).

Target Manager: Backsight

Use the Backsight screen to define your backsight target and enter a backsight target height.



[Target](#)

Use this field to select a backsight target from the [Target List](#).

[Target Height](#)

Enter the height of your target here.

Press the **Set Default Height** button  to assign the default height to this **Target Height** field. The default height is defined in the [Default Settings](#) screen.

[EDM Mode](#)

Use this field to select the EDM mode you would like to use. You will only be able to select an EDM mode that corresponds to your target type.

[Prism Constant](#)

This field will display whatever prism constant that you entered for the selected target.

[OK](#)

This records the settings you have just made, closes the Target Manager, and returns you to the Map-View.

[Target List](#)

Press this button to access the [Target List](#). The Target List consists of user-defined and default instrument targets. Here you can create, copy, edit, and delete targets.

[Default Settings](#)

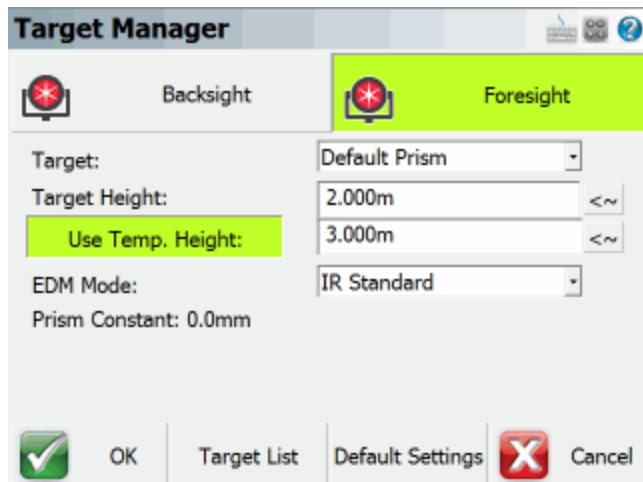
Press this button to access the [Default Settings](#) screen. This is where you define the default target heights.

[Cancel](#)

Press this button to discard any changes made to the Backsight dialog and returns you to the Map-View.

Target Manager: Foresight

Use the Foresight screen to select the foresight target and enter a target height.



Target Manager

Backsight **Foresight**

Target: Default Prism

Target Height: 2.000m <~

Use Temp. Height: 3.000m <~

EDM Mode: IR Standard

Prism Constant: 0.0mm

OK Target List Default Settings Cancel

Target

Use this field to select a foresight target.

Target Height

Enter the height of your foresight target here.

Press the **Set Default Height** button  to assign the default target height to this **Target Height** field. The default height is defined in the [Default Settings](#) screen.

EDM Mode

Use this field to select the EDM mode you would like to use. Typically you will want to select an EDM mode that corresponds to your target type.

Use Temp. Height

Press this button to activate the Temporary Height function (button is active in the above image). To enable the temporary height be used, you must press the **Use Temp. Height** button. Once activated, the following measurement will use this temporary height but it will be a one-time measurement, and then the system will immediately revert back to the height defined in the **Target Height** field. This is handy if you need to take a quick shot using a different height such as when measuring an invert.

Press the **Set Default Height** button  to assign the default Temporary height to this **Target Height** field. The default height is defined in the [Default Settings](#) screen.

Prism Constant

This field will display whatever prism offset that you entered for the selected target.

OK

This records the settings you have just made, closes the Target Manager, and returns you to the Map-View.

Target List

Press this button to access the [Target List](#). Here you can create, copy, edit, and delete targets.

Default Settings

Press this button to access the [Default Settings](#) screen. This is where you define the default target heights.

Cancel

Press this button to discard any changed made to the Backsight dialog and returns you to the Map-View.

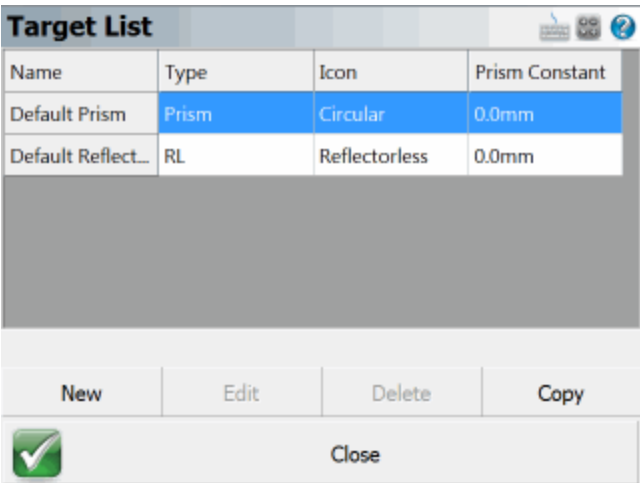
Target List

MapView | Target Manager |

The Target List is where you can create, edit, copy, and delete targets. The Target List comes with 2 default targets (Default Prism and Default Reflectorless) but you can create as many more as you like. All targets are saved in the Settings.xml file and is located in the Programs folder.

[Click here for help on Leica Instrument Target List.](#)

[Click here for help on the GeoMax Target List.](#)



You are not permitted to delete or edit a default target but you certainly can copy one and edit the copy.

[New](#)

Tap on this button to access the [New Target](#) dialog. Here you can create a new target.

[Edit](#)

Tap on a target to select it. Then press the **Edit** button to access the [Edit Target](#) dialog. Default targets can not be edited.

Delete

Tap on a target to select it. Then press the **Delete** button to delete the selected target. You will receive a warning message that you must acknowledge before deletion is complete. Default targets can not be deleted.

Copy

Tap on a target to select it. Then press the **Copy** button. This will open the [Edit Target](#) dialog and you can then edit the copied parameters.

Close

Pressing this button returns you to the Target Manager screen.

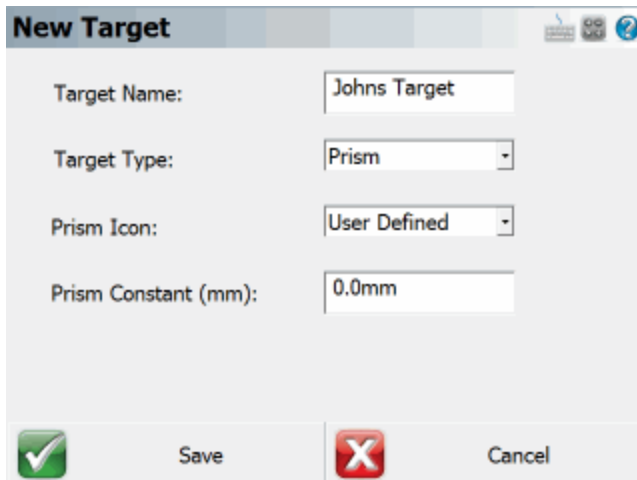
New Target

[MapView](#) | [Target Manager](#) | [Target List](#) | [New](#)

Use this option to create a new target. Provide the new target with a unique name, a prism constant, and select an icon to represent your new target.

[Click here for help creating a new Leica Geosystems target.](#)

[Click here for help creating a new GeoMax target.](#)



New Target

Target Name:

Target Type:

Prism Icon:

Prism Constant (mm):

 Save  Cancel

Target Name

Use this field to either edit or enter a new name for the target you are editing.

Target Type

There are two target types available to select. **Prism** is to be used when you are selecting a target that has a known offset. This can be a round prism, 360, mini, etc. **RL** stands for reflectorless and you should select this target type if you are using an instrument that is reflectorless capable and you do not wish to use a designated reflector.

Prism Icon

Use this field to select an icon for your new target.

Prism Constant

This defines the relation of the distance measurement to the mechanical reference point of the reflector. Your prism will have a published prism constant (also called and offset).

Save

Press this button to store your new changes to the Settings.xml file, and return you to the [Target List](#) screen.

Cancel

Press this button to cancel creating a new target. You will be returned to the [Target List](#) screen.

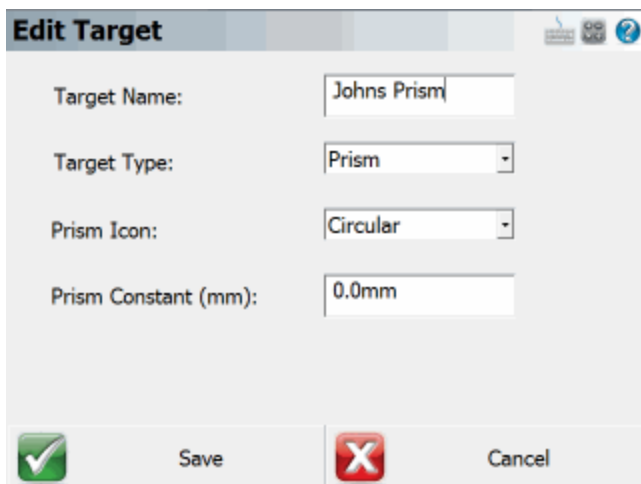
Edit Target

MapView | Target Manager | Target List

Use this option to edit an existing target. You will also see this display after you copy an existing target.

[Click here for help on editing a Leica Geosystems target.](#)

[Click here for help on editing a GeoMax target.](#)



Target Name

Use this field to either edit or enter a new name for the target you are editing.

Target Type

There are two target types available to select. **Prism** is to be used when you are selecting a target that has a known offset. This can be a round prism, 360, mini, etc. **RL** stands for reflectorless and you should select this target type if you are using an instrument that is reflectorless capable and you do not wish to use a designated reflector.

Prism Icon

Use this field to select an icon for your new target.

Prism Constant (mm)

This defines the relation of the distance measurement to the mechanical reference point of the reflector. Your prism will have a published offset.

Save

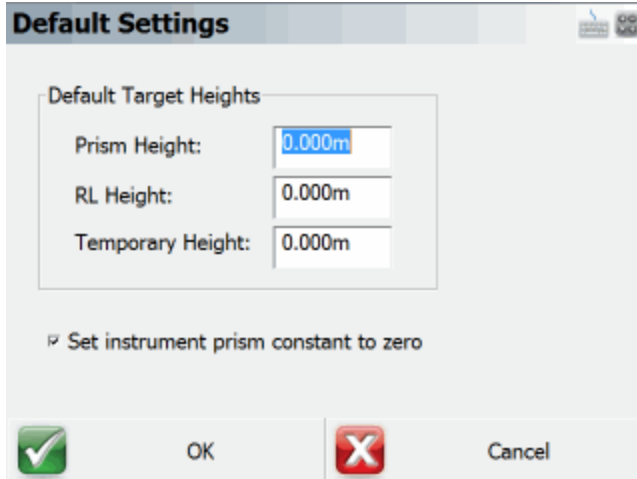
Press this button to store your new changes to the Settings.xml file, and return you to the [Target List](#) screen.

Cancel

Press this button to cancel creating a new target. You will be returned to the [Target List](#) screen.

Default Settings

The Default Settings screen is where you can define the default target heights for prism targets, RL (reflectorless) targets, and a temporary height. The temporary height value is used for taking a one-time measurement using the height value entered in this field. After the measurement is completed, the system will revert back to using the current target height.



Prism Height

Enter your most common prism height into this field. When you press the **Use Default Height** button in the [Target Manager](#) screen, this value will populate the **Target Height** field. This is convenient when you have a standard prism height and want to assign it quickly.

Important Note: You must be in a prism measure mode to be able to use the **Default Height** button in the [Target Manager](#) screen and have it use a default prism height.

RL Height

Enter your most common ReflectorLess (RL) height into this field. When you press the **Use Default Height** button in the [Target Manager](#) screen, this value will populate the **Target Height** field with this default height.

Important Note: You must be using a reflectorless measure mode to populate this field using the **Default Height** button in the Target Manager screen, and have it use the default reflectorless height.

Temporary Height

The temporary height function works as a one-time measurement using the height entered into this field. After the measurement has completed, the target height will revert back to the height that had

been defined in the **Target Height** field. This is very handy when you want to take a quick one-time measurement such as for when measuring an invert.

Set instrument prism constant to zero

If this has a check mark in the box, a prism constant of zero will be uploaded to your instrument. The offsets specified in the foresight and backsight targets will be applied to the measurements when received by Evidence Recorder. Remove the check mark if you don't want Evidence Recorder to modify your instrument's prism offset. **Not all instruments support this feature.**

When you connect your instrument to Evidence Recorder, special notes are recorded in the raw file regarding prism offsets.

If you have the "Set Instrument" toggle turned on and your instrument supports this feature, Evidence Recorder will set your instrument's prism offset to zero so no correction will be applied to the measurement. Then once Evidence Recorder receives this uncorrected measurement, it will use the values you specified in the prism offset fields and adjust the distance accordingly. For example, if you specified an offset of 30mm, Evidence Recorder will upload an offset of zero to your instrument and apply the 30 mm offset to the measurement after it is received. In your raw file you will see the following note:

```
| --Evidence Recorder Prism: 30mm Instrument Prism: 0mm |
```

Most prism offset are specified in millimeters. Evidence Recorder will make the necessary conversions so the proper adjustment is applied.

If Evidence Recorder can't set the prism offset on your instrument, it usually can't read it either. Since a prism offset wasn't uploaded, we don't know what prism offset is set on the instrument. So we indicate this by writing to the raw file that the instrument prism offset is "unknown".

```
| --Evidence Recorder Prism: 30mm Instrument Prism: Unknown |
```

When this happens you will usually want to confirm what offset are currently configured on your instrument in regards to prism offsets.

Special Notes:

- When using instruments that don't support uploading of prism constants, be sure not to double up your prism offsets by applying it in the instrument and Evidence Recorder at the same time.
- Since prism offsets are so important, on the measurement progress meter you will see what offset is being applied to your measurement.

OK

Pressing this button will save your changes in this dialog, and return you to the [Target Manager](#).

Cancel

Pressing this button will ignore your changes in this dialog and return you to the [Target Manager](#).

Target List: Leica

MapView | Target Manager | Target List |

The Target List is where user-defined and default Leica targets are kept. The Target List is where you can create, edit, copy, and delete targets. The Leica instruments Target List comes with 9 default Leica targets. You can not edit or delete a default Leica target but you can copy a default target and edit the copy. All targets are saved in the Settings.xml file, and is located in the Programs folder.

Target List				
Name	Type	Icon	Leica Constant	Absolute Const
Leica Round Pri...	Prism	Circular	0.0mm	-34.4mm
Leica 360 Prism	Prism	360	23.1mm	-11.3mm
Leica Mini 0	Prism	Mini	0.0mm	-34.4mm
Leica Mini Prism	Prism	Mini	17.5mm	-16.9mm
Leica Mini 360	Prism	360 Mini	30.0mm	-4.4mm

New

Edit

Delete

Copy



Close

You are not permitted to delete or edit a default target but you certainly can copy one and edit the copy.

New

Tap on this button to access the [New Target](#) dialog. Here you can create a new target.

Edit

Tap on a target to select it. Then press the **Edit** button to access the [Edit Target](#) dialog. Default targets can not be edited.

Delete

Tap on a target to select it. Then press the **Delete** button to delete the selected target. You will receive a warning message that you must acknowledge before deletion is complete. Default targets can not be deleted.

Copy

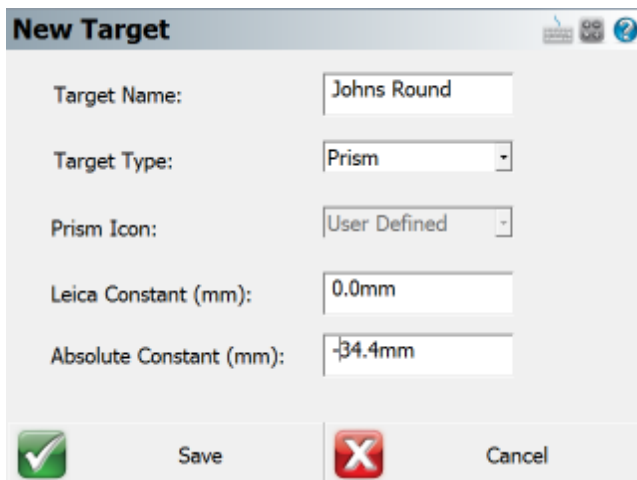
Tap on a target to select it. Then press the **Copy** button. This will open the [Edit Target](#) dialog and you can then edit the copied parameters.

[Close](#)

Pressing this button returns you to the Target Manager screen.

New Leica Instrument Targets

Use this option to create a new target for your Leica Geosystems instrument. Provide the new target with a unique name, define the target type, and enter the Leica constant. Leica uses a different prism offset method than other manufacturers and you should familiarized yourself with how they are computed. See the **Leica Constant** section below for more information.



New Target

Target Name: Johns Round

Target Type: Prism

Prism Icon: User Defined

Leica Constant (mm): 0.0mm

Absolute Constant (mm): -34.4mm

Save Cancel

[Target Name](#)

Use this field to either edit or enter a new name for the target you are creating.

[Target Type](#)

There are two target types available to select. **Prism** is to be used when you are selecting a target that has a known offset. This can be a round prism, 360, mini, etc. **RL** stands for reflectorless and you should select this target type if you are using an instrument that is reflectorless capable and you do not wish to use a designated reflector.

[Prism Icon](#)

The mandatory icon for any new Leica target must have the **User Defined** prism icon. This is a Leica instrument requirement and therefore can not be changed.

[Leica Constant \(mm\)](#)

Leica Geosystems uses a different way of calculating prism constants than other manufacturers.

Leica defines their **additive constant** for their standard round reflector (GPR1) as 0.0mm. All entered or selected additive constant values are differences to the 0.0mm based in the Leica Geosystems TPS prism system. Prism constants are always defined in millimetres.

The **additive constant** for **non-Leica prisms** are often given in the **true zero prism system**. Use the following formula to convert the published prism constant into a Leica constant to be entered into the Leica instrument.

True zero constant – 34.4mm = Leica constant

Most prism manufacturers define their prism constantas in the true zero prism system.

So for a Leica round prism, the true zero constant is 34.4mm.

$$34.4 - 34.4 = 0.0$$

The Leica total station is expecting a Leica constant.

So for example: Say you are using a non-Leica prism with a published prism constant of -30mm that has been defined in the true zero system, then you would enter that value into the Leica formula as -30mm (true zero constant) -34.4mm = -64.4mm (Leica constant)

You would enter -64.4mm as the Leica constant.

You will see that the **Absolute constant** is automatically computed for you and should be -98.8mm.

It is strongly recommended that you test your use of prism constants on a known baseline to be sure that your non-Leica prism is in the true zero prism system.

[Absolute Constant \(mm\)](#)

This defines the relation of the distance measurement to the mechanical reference point of the reflector. Use the formula in the **Leica Constant** section above to calculate the Leica constant. Enter that value in the **Leica Constant** field and see the Absolute constant be automatically computed for you.

[Save](#)

Press this button to store your new changes to the Settings.xml file, and return you to the Target List screen.

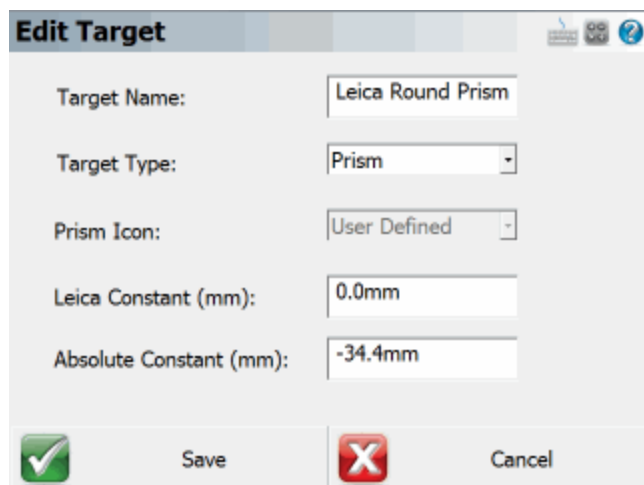
[Cancel](#)

Press this buton to cancel creating a new target. You will be returned to the Target List screen.

Edit Leica Targets

Use this option to edit an existing user-defined target or edit a copy of a Leica instrument target. You will also see this display after you copy an existing target. Leica uses a different prism offset method

than other manufacturers and you should familiarized yourself with how they are computed. See the **Leica Constant** section below for more information.



Target Name

Use this field to either edit or enter a new and unique name for the target you are editing.

Target Type

There are two target types available. **Prism** is to be used when you are selecting a target that has a known offset or prism constant. This can be a round prism, 360, mini, etc. **RL** stands for reflectorless and you should select this target type if you are using an instrument that is reflectorless capable, and you do not wish to or can not use a designated reflector.

Prism Icon

When creating Leica instrument targets, the prism icon must be **User Entered**, and that's why you are not permitted to edit the target's icon. This is a Leica instrument requirement and therefore can not be changed.

Leica Constant (mm)

Leica Geosystems uses a different way of calculating prism constants than other manufacturers.

Leica defines their **additive constant** for their standard round reflector (GPR1) as 0.0mm. All entered or selected additive constant values are differences to the 0.0mm based in the Leica Geosystems TPS prism system. Prism constants are always defined in millimetres.

The **additive constant** for **non-Leica prisms** are often given in the **true zero prism system**. Use the following formula to convert the published prism constant into a Leica constant to be entered in the **Leica Constant** field.

True zero constant – 34.4mm = Leica constant

Most prism manufacturers define their prism constant in the true zero prism system.

So for a Leica round prism, the true zero constant is 34.4mm.

$$34.4 - 34.4 = 0.0$$

The Leica total station is expecting a Leica constant.

So for example: Say you are using a non-Leica prism with a published prism constant of -30mm that has been defined in the true zero system, then you would enter that value into the Leica formula as

$$-30\text{mm (true zero constant)} - 34.4\text{mm} = -64.4\text{mm (Leica constant)}$$

You would enter -64.4mm as the Leica constant.

You will see that the **Absolute constant** is automatically computed for you and should be -98.8mm.

It is strongly recommended that you test your use of prism constants on a known baseline to be sure that your non-Leica prism is in the true zero prism system.

Absolute Constant (mm)

This defines the relation of the distance measurement to the mechanical reference point of the reflector. Use the formula in the **Leica Constant** section above to calculate the Leica constant. Enter that value in the **Leica Constant** field and see the Absolute constant be automatically computed for you.

Save

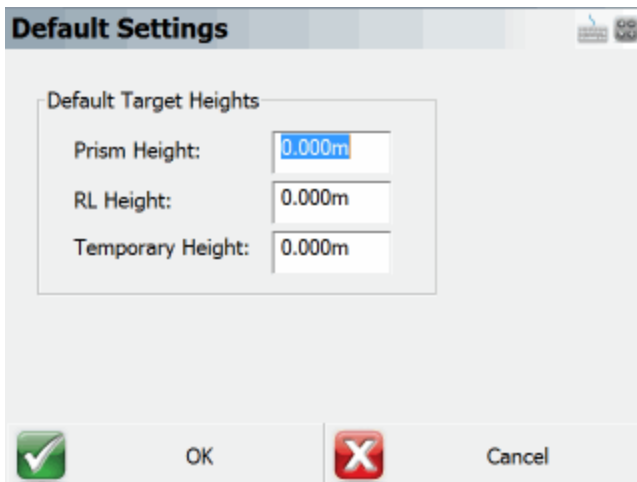
Press this button to store your target edits. Targets are stored to the Settings.xml file, and you are returned to the [Target List](#) screen.

Cancel

Press this button to cancel creating a new target. You will be returned to the [Target List](#) screen.

Default Settings

The Default Settings screen is where you can define the default target heights for prism targets, RL (reflectorless) targets, and a temporary height. The temporary height value is used for taking a one-time measurement using the height value entered in this field. After the measurement is completed, the system will revert back to using the current target height.



Default Settings

Default Target Heights

Prism Height: 0.000m

RL Height: 0.000m

Temporary Height: 0.000m

 OK  Cancel

Prism Height

Enter your most common prism height into this field. When you press the **Use Default Height** button in the Target Manager screen, this value will populate the **Target Height** field. This is convenient for when you have a standard prism height and want to assign it quickly.

Important Note: You must be in a prism measure mode to be able to use the **Default Height** button in the Target Manager screen and have it use a default prism height.

RL Height

Enter your most common ReflectorLess (RL) height into this field. When you press the **Use Default Height** button in the Target Manager screen, this value will populate the **Target Height** field with this default height.

Important Note: You must be using a reflectorless measure mode to populate this field using the **Default Height** button in the Target Manager screen, and have it use the default reflectorless height.

Temporary Height

The temporary height function works as a one-time measurement using the height entered into this field. After the measurement has completed, the target height will revert back to the height that had been defined in the **Target Height** field. This is very handy when you want to take a quick one-time measurement such as for when measuring an invert.

OK

Pressing this button will save your changes in this dialog, and return you to the Target Manager.

Cancel

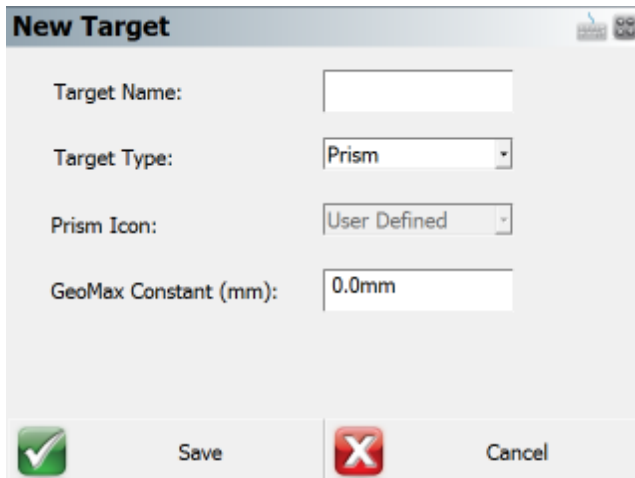
Pressing this button will ignore your changes in this dialog and return you to the Target Manager.

Note: If you are wondering where the **Set Instrument Prism Constant to Zero** check box is, this is now done automatically when using Leica or GeoMax instruments.

New GeoMax Instrument Targets

[MapView](#) | [Target Manager](#) | [Target List](#) | [New](#)

Use this option to create a new target for your GeoMax instrument. Here you can provide your new target with a unique name, define the target type, and provide the GeoMax prism constant for your new target. GeoMax uses a different prism offset method than other manufacturers and you should familiarized yourself with how they are computed. See the **GeoMax Constant** section below for more information.



New Target

Target Name:

Target Type:

Prism Icon:

GeoMax Constant (mm):

 Save  Cancel

Target Name

Use this field to enter a unique name for the target you are creating.

Target Type

There are two target types available to select. **Prism** is to be used when you are selecting a target that has a known offset. This can be a round prism, 360, mini, etc. **RL** stands for reflectorless and you should select this target type if you are using an instrument that is reflectorless capable and you do not wish to use a designated reflector.

Prism Icon

When creating GeoMax instrument targets, the prism icon must be **User Entered** and that's why you are not permitted to edit the target's icon. This is a GeoMax instrument requirement and therefore can

not be changed.

GeoMax Constant (mm)

GeoMax defines their **additive constant** for their standard round reflector (ZPR100) as 0.0mm. All entered or selected additive constant values are differences to the 0.0mm based in the GeoMax TPS prism system. Prism constants are always defined in millimetres.

The additive constant for **non-GeoMax prisms** are often given in the **true zero prism system**. Use the following formula to convert the published prism constant into a GeoMax constant to be entered into the GeoMax instrument.

True zero constant – 34.4mm = GeoMax constant.

Most prism manufacturers define their prism constant in the **true zero prism system**.

So for a GeoMax round prism, the true zero constant is 34.4mm.

$$34.4 - 34.4 = 0.0$$

The GeoMax total station is expecting a **GeoMax constant**. (Please note: on the GeoMax Zoom80 total station, in the Manage /Reflectors dialog, the column says Add. constant but in this case they are treating the additive constant as a GeoMax constant, and actually want the GeoMax constant.

So for example: Say you are using a **non-GeoMax prism** with a published prism constant of **-30mm** that has been defined in the **true zero system**, then you would enter that value into the GeoMax formula as

$$-30\text{mm (true zero constant)} - 34.4\text{mm} = -64.4\text{mm (GeoMax constant)}$$

You would enter -64.4mm as the GeoMax constant.

It is strongly recommended that you test your use of prism constants on a known baseline to be sure your non-GeoMax prism is in the true zero prism system.

Save

Press this button to store your target edits. Targets are stored to the Settings.xml file, and you are returned to the [Target List](#) screen.

Cancel

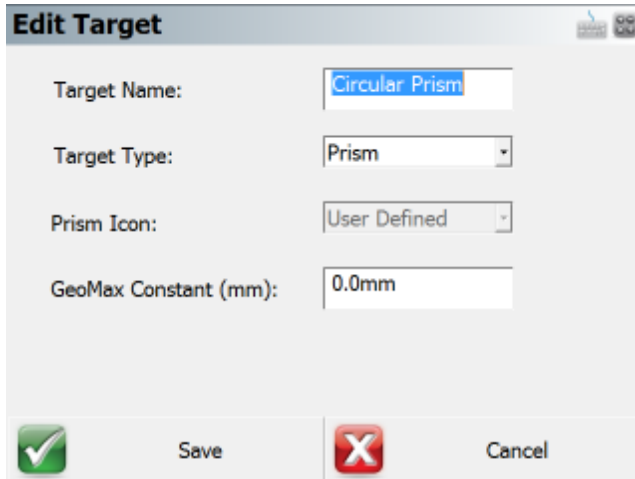
Press this button to cancel creating a new target. You will be returned to the [Target List](#) screen.

Edit GeoMax Instrument Targets

MapView | Target Manager | Target List | Edit

Use this option to edit an existing user-defined target or edit a copy of a GeoMax instrument target. You will also see this display after you copy an existing target. GeoMax uses a different prism offset

method than other manufacturers and you should familiarized yourself with how they are computed. See the GeoMax Constant section below for more information.



Target Name

Use this field to either edit or enter a new and unique name for the target you are editing.

Target Type

There are two target types available to select. **Prism** is to be used when you are selecting a target that has a known offset. This can be a round prism, 360, mini, etc. **RL** stands for reflectorless and you should select this target type if you are using an instrument that is reflectorless capable and you do not wish to use a designated reflector.

Prism Icon

When creating GeoMax instrument targets, the prism icon must be **User Entered**, and that's why you are not permitted to edit the target's icon. This is a GeoMax instrument requirement and therefore can not be changed.

GeoMax Constant (mm)

GeoMax defines their **additive constant** for their standard round reflector (ZPR100) as 0.0mm. All entered or selected additive constant values are differences to the 0.0mm based in the GeoMax TPS prism system. Prism constants are always defined in millimetres.

The additive constant for **non-GeoMax prisms** are often given in the **true zero prism system**. Use the following formula to convert the published prism constant into a GeoMax constant to be entered into **GeoMax Constant** field.

True zero constant – 34.4mm = GeoMax constant.

Most prism manufacturers define their prism constant in the **true zero prism system**.

So for a GeoMax round prism, the true zero constant is 34.4mm.

$$34.4 - 34.4 = 0.0$$

The GeoMax total station is expecting a **GeoMax constant**. (Please note: on the GeoMax Zoom80 total station, in the Manage /Reflectors dialog, the column says Add. constant but in this case they are treating the additive constant as a GeoMax constant, and actually want the GeoMax constant.

So for example: Say you are using a **non-GeoMax prism** with a published prism constant of **-30mm** that has been defined in the **true zero system**, then you would enter that value into the GeoMax formula as

$$-30\text{mm (true zero constant)} - 34.4\text{mm} = -64.4\text{mm (GeoMax constant)}$$

You would enter -64.4mm as the GeoMax constant.

It is strongly recommended that you test your use of prism constants on a known baseline to be sure your non-GeoMax prism is in the true zero prism system.

Save

Press this button to store your target edits. Targets are stored to the Settings.xml file, and you are returned to the [Target List](#) screen.

Cancel

Press this button to cancel creating a new target. You will be returned to the [Target List](#) screen.

Target List: GeoMax Instruments

MapView | Target Manager | Target List |

The Target List is where user-defined and default GeoMax instrument targets are kept. Here you can create, edit, copy, and delete targets. The GeoMax Instruments Target List comes with 7 default GeoMax targets that can not be edited or deleted. But you can copy a default target and edit the copy. All targets are saved in the Settings.xml file and is located in the Programs folder.

Target List			
Name	Type	Icon	GeoMax Const...
Circular Prism	Prism	Circular	0.0mm
360 Prism	Prism	360	23.1mm
Mini 0	Prism	Mini	0.0mm
Mini Prism	Prism	Mini	17.5mm
Mini 360	Prism	360 Mini	30.0mm
Reflective Tape	Tape	Reflective Tape	34.4mm
New Edit Delete Copy			
 Close			

You are not permitted to delete or edit a default target, but you certainly can copy a target and edit the copy.

New

Tap on this button to access the [New Target](#) dialog. Here you can create a new target.

Edit

Tap on a target to select it. Then press the **Edit** button to access the [Edit Target](#) dialog. Default targets can not be edited.

Delete

Tap on a target to select it. Then press the **Delete** button to delete the selected target. You will receive a warning message that you must acknowledge before deletion is complete. Default targets can not be deleted.

Copy

Tap on a target to select it. Then press the **Copy** button. This will open the [Edit Target](#) dialog and you can then edit the copied parameters.

Close

Pressing this button closes the dialog and returns you to the [Target Manager](#) screen.

Target Manager: GeoMax Instruments

MapView | Target Manager |

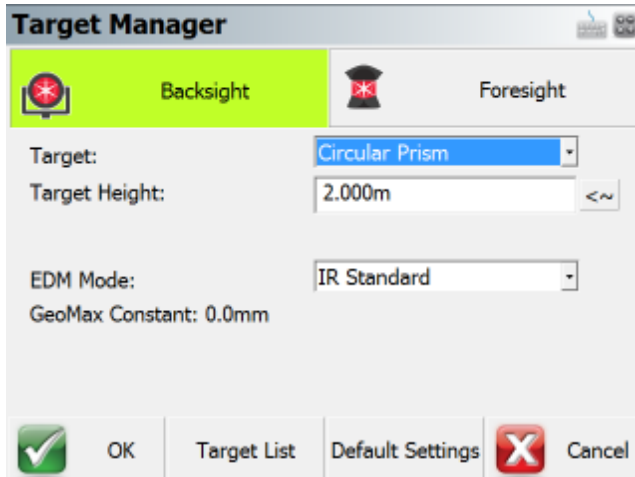
The Target Manager is a place where you can manage your EDM (electronic distance measurement) targets. You can create, edit, copy, and delete targets. GeoMax uses a different method for

determining prism offsets as they have a value called a **GeoMax Constant**. See the help on the [New](#) or [Edit Target](#) screens for information on how to calculate a GeoMax Constant.

The Target Manager is divided into 2 sections: Backsight and Foresight.

Target Manager: Backsight

Use the Backsight screen to define your backsight target, choose a measure mode, and enter a backsight target height. Tap on the Backsight tab at the top of the screen to access the Backsight section.



[Target](#)

Use this field to select a backsight target from the [Target List](#).

[Target Height](#)

Enter the height of your target here.

Press the **Set Default Height** button  to assign the default height to this **Target Height** field. The default height is defined in the [Default Settings](#) screen.

[EDM Mode](#)

Use this field to select the EDM mode you would like to use. You will only be able to select an EDM mode that corresponds to your target type.

[GeoMax Constant](#)

Each target type will have a GeoMax constant (also known as prism constant in the GeoMax prism system). This field will display the GeoMax constant associated with your target. See the [New Target](#)

[Help](#) for an explanation of how to compute a GeoMax prism constant. This will be especially important if you are using a non-GeoMax target.

[OK](#)

This records the settings you have just made, closes the Target Manager, and returns you to the Map-View.

[Target List](#)

Press this button to access the [Target List](#). The Target List consists of user-defined and default GeoMax instrument targets. Here you can create, copy, edit, and delete targets.

[Default Settings](#)

Press this button to access the [Default Settings](#) screen. This is where you define the default target heights.

[Cancel](#)

Press this button to discard any changes made to the Backsight dialog and returns you to the Map-View.

Target Manager: Foresight

Use the Foresight screen to select the foresight target, choose a measure mode, and enter a target height. You also have the option of using a temporary target height. Tap on the Foresight tab at the top of the screen to access the Foresight section.

Target Manager

Backsight Foresight

Target: 360 Prism

Target Height: 2.000m <~

Use Temp. Height: 3.048m <~

EDM Mode: IR Standard

GeoMax Constant: 23.1mm

OK Target List Default Settings Cancel

Target

Use this field to select a foresight target from the [Target List](#).

Target Height

Enter the height of your foresight target here.

Press the **Set Default Height** button  to assign the default height to the **Target Height** field. The default height is defined in the [Default Settings](#) screen. You can also define a default reflectorless height in the Default Settings screen.

Use Temp. Height

Press this button to activate the Temporary Height function (button is active in the above image). To enable the temporary height be used, you must press the **Use Temp. Height** button. Once activated, the following measurement will use this temporary height but it will be a one-time measurement, and then the system will immediately revert back to the height defined in the **Target Height** field. This is handy if you need to take a quick shot using a different height such as when measuring an invert.

Press the **Set Default Height** button  to assign the default height to the **Target Height** field. The default height is defined in the [Default Settings](#) screen.

EDM Mode

Use this field to select the EDM mode you would like to use. You will only be able to select an EDM mode that corresponds to your target type.

GeoMax Constant

Each target type will have a GeoMax constant (also known as prism constant in the GeoMax prism system). This field will display the GeoMax constant associated with your target. See the [New](#) or [Edit Target](#) Help for an explanation of how to compute a GeoMax prism constant. This will be especially important if you are using a non-GeoMax target.

OK

This records the settings you have just made, closes the Target Manager, and returns you to the Map-View.

Target List

Press this button to access the [Target List](#). The Target List consists of default GeoMax instrument targets and User Defined targets. Here you can create, copy, edit, and delete targets.

[Cancel](#)

Press this button to discard any changes made to the Backsight dialog and returns you to the Map-View.

Target Manager: Leica Instruments

MapView | Target Manager |

The Target Manager is a place where you can manage your EDM (electronic distance measurement) targets. You can create, edit, copy, and delete targets. Leica Geosystems uses a different method for determining prism offsets as they have a value called a **Leica Constant**. See the help on the [New](#) or [Edit Target](#) screens for information on how to calculate a Leica Constant.

The Target Manager is divided into 2 sections: Backsight and Foresight.

Target Manager: Backsight

Use the Backsight screen to define your backsight target, choose a measure mode, and enter a backsight target height. Tap on the Backsight tab at the top of the screen to access the Backsight section

Target Manager

Backsight Foresight

Target: Leica Round Prism

Target Height: 0.00' <~

EDM Mode: IR Standard

Leica Constant: 0.0mm

OK Target List Default Settings Cancel

[Target](#)

Use this field to select a backsight target from the [Target List](#).

[Target Height](#)

Enter the height of your target here.

Press the **Set Default Height** button  to assign the default Target height to this **Target Height** field. The default height is defined in the [Default Settings](#) screen.

EDM Mode

Use this field to select the EDM mode you would like to use. Typically you will want to select an EDM mode that corresponds to your target type.

Leica Constant

This field will display the Leica constant associated with your target. See the [New](#) or [Edit Target](#) Help for an explanation of how to compute a Leica constant. This will be especially important if you are using a non-Leica target.

OK

This records the settings you have just made, closes the [Target Manager](#), and returns you to the Map-View.

Target List

Press this button to access the [Target List](#). Here you can create, copy, edit, and delete targets.

Cancel

Press this button to discard any changes made to the Backsight dialog and returns you to the Map-View.

Target Manager: Foresight

Use the Foresight screen to select the foresight target, choose a measure mode, and enter a target height. You also have the option of using a temporary target height. Tap on the Foresight tab at the top of the screen to access the Foresight section.

Target

Use this field to select a foresight target.

Target Height

Enter the height of your foresight target here.

Press the **Set Default Height** button  to assign the default height to this **Target Height** field. The default height is defined in the [Default Settings](#) screen.

Use Temp. Height

Press this button to activate the Temporary Height function (button is active in the above image). To enable the temporary height be used, you must press the **Use Temp. Height** button. Once activated, the following measurement will use this temporary height but it will be a one-time measurement, and then the system will immediately revert back to the height defined in the **Target Height** field. This is handy if you need to take a quick shot using a different height such as when measuring an invert.

Press the **Set Default Height** button  to assign the default height to the **Target Height** field. The default height is defined in the [Default Settings](#) screen.

EDM Mode

Use this field to select the EDM mode you would like to use. Typically you will want to select an EDM mode that corresponds to your target type.

Leica Constant

This field will display the Leica constant associated with your target. See the [New](#) or [Edit Target](#) Help for an explanation of how to compute a Leica constant. This will be especially important if you are using a non-Leica target.

OK

This records the settings you have just made, closes the [Target Manager](#), and returns you to the Map-View.

Target List

Press this button to access the [Target List](#). Here you can create, copy, edit, and delete targets.

Cancel

Press this button to discard any changes made to the Backsight dialog and returns you to the Map-View.

TOTAL STATION REFERENCE

Conventional Total Station

When connecting to a conventional total station there are a few things you need to confirm before connecting to Evidence Recorder.

You need to know what the communication parameters are set to on the instrument. Please take the time to find what the following settings are set to on the instrument: Baud Rate, Data Bits, Stop Bits and Parity.

Because of all the different instruments available, we can not provide help on retrieving these settings from your instrument. Please refer to your owner's manual or contact technical support from your equipment manufacturer.

Total Station Profile

Once you know the settings, you can connect Evidence Recorder to the instrument. If you just installed Evidence Recorder you can start the program and follow the prompts until you get to the [Instrument Selection](#) screen. From there, select **Total Station** as the Instrument Type, and then press the **Add** button to create a new Instrument Profile. Name the profile for your instrument, and then press the **Edit** button to access the [Total Station Configuration](#) screen to configure your profile. From there choose the **Model and Communication** button to configure Evidence Recorder.

You can also access this screen by going to the **Main Menu | Settings | Instrument Selection** and choose total station.

Select Make and Model

Evidence Recorder uses a smart driver that will poll the instrument to see what commands it supports. Because of this you will see that in the Model section we don't list every instrument built by the manufacturer. If you're unsure of what make and model to choose visit our website and use the [online helpdesk support center](#) to do a search for your instrument.

Communication Settings

Confirm the settings so they match the settings from your instrument. If you don't know what the settings on the instrument are, you can always try the **Default Comm Settings** button.

Other Settings

On the [Total Station Configuration](#) screen, you can review the other options to set some additional parameters for your instrument.

Connect to Instrument

If you're not connected to the instrument you will see a status of "**Not Connected**" displayed above the Connect to Instrument button. When you're ready to connect make sure you have done the following:

1. Powered on the instrument
2. Levelled the instrument
3. Compensated the instrument.
4. Connected the data cable from the instrument to your data collector.

Once you have done all four steps, you can press the **Connect to Instrument** button. If you see a status of "**Connected**" displayed above the Connect to Instrument button then you have successfully connected.

Getting Started

To start taking measurement you need to exit out the Total Station Configuration screen by pressing close button. Depending on the instrument you connected to you will have different options available. Please review the [Instrument Toolbar](#) topic for more information.

Tip: You can use the enter key on your device to take a measurement. For example, if your measurement mode is set to Map Point and you press the enter key, your instrument will take a measurement.

Robotic Total Station

When connecting to a robotic total station there are a few things you need to confirm before connecting to Evidence Recorder.

You need to know what the communication parameters are set to on the instrument. Please take the time to find what the following settings are set to on the instrument: Baud Rate, Data Bits, Stop Bits and Parity.

Because of all the different instruments available, we can not provide help on retrieving these settings from your instrument. Please refer to your owner's manual or contact technical support from your equipment manufacturer.

Create Total Station Profile

Once you know the settings, you can connect Evidence Recorder to the instrument. If you just installed Evidence Recorder you can start the program and follow the prompts until you get to the [Instrument Selection](#) screen. From there, select **Total Station** as the Instrument Type, and then

press the **Add** button to create a new Instrument Profile. Name the profile for your instrument, and then press the **Edit** button to access the [Total Station Configuration](#) screen to configure your profile. From there choose the **Model and Communication** button to configure Evidence Recorder.

You can also access this screen by going to the **Main Menu | Settings | Instrument Selection** and choose total station.

Select Make and Model

Evidence Recorder uses a smart driver that will poll the instrument to see what commands it supports. Because of this you will see that in the Model section we don't list every instrument built by the manufacturer. If you're unsure of what model and make to choose visit our website and use the [online helpdesk support center](#) to do a search for your instrument.

Communication Settings

Confirm the settings so they match the settings from your instrument. If you don't know what the settings on the instrument are, you can always try the **Default Comm Settings** button.

Other Settings

On the [Total Station Configuration](#) screen, you can review the other options to set some additional parameters for your instrument.

Connect to Instrument

If you're not connected to the instrument you will see a status of "**Not Connected**" displayed above the Connect to Instrument button. When you're ready to connect make sure you have done the following:

1. Powered on the instrument and radios
2. Leveled the instrument
3. Compensated the instrument.
4. Connected the data cable from the instrument to one radio, and your data collector to the other radio.

Once you have done all four steps, you can press the **Connect to Instrument** button. If you see a status of "**Connected**" displayed above the Connect to Instrument button then you have successfully connected.

Getting Started

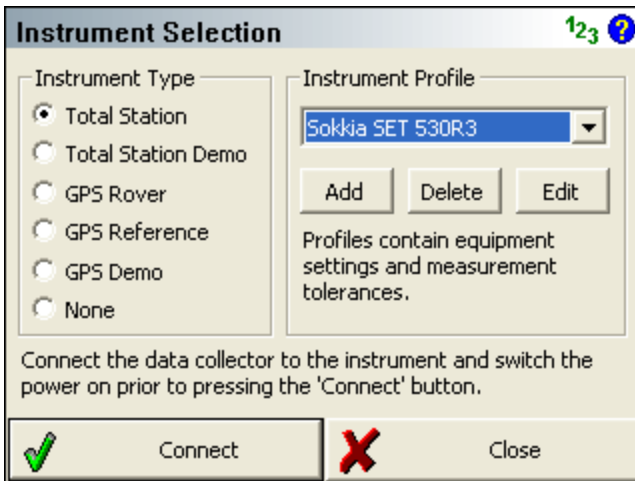
To start taking measurement you need to exit out the Total Station Configuration screen by pressing the Connect button. Depending on the instrument you connected to you will have different options available. Please review the [Robotic Instrument Toolbar](#) topic for more information.

Instrument Selection

[Main Menu](#) | [Settings](#) | [Instrument Selection](#)

The Instrument Selection screen allows you to choose the type of equipment you will be connecting to Evidence Recorder. An Instrument Profile can be created for each different instrument you will be working with, to make changing between different hardware a breeze. Once you have setup a profile for each different instrument you will be using, switching between them is a simple matter of selecting the appropriate profile and pressing **Connect**.

Note, this screen is not available if Evidence Recorder is running onboard your instrument.



For all future projects you create with Evidence Recorder, when you create a new or open an existing project you will see the Instrument Selection screen with the profiles you have already created. It will default to the last Profile you used, so if you are using the same instrument just press **Connect**. If you are using different equipment, just select the appropriate Instrument Type and Profile (or add a new profile if one does not yet exist for it), then press **Connect**.

Your profiles are stored in the file ...\\MicroSurvey EVR9\\Programs\\MSURVEY.INI so once you have configured one data collector, you can simply copy this file onto your other data collectors to make the profiles available on them. This file should also be backed up for easy recovery.

Total Station

When you select Total Station mode, you will be able to Add, Delete, or Edit a profile to setup parameters for connecting to your conventional and robotic total stations, as well as laser devices. See the [Total Station Configuration](#) topic for more details about configuration for your total station.

For more information on connecting to your instrument please refer to the [Conventional Total Station](#) and [Robotic Total Station](#) topics.

Total Station Demo

If you choose this you will have to manually enter your shots. Manually entered shots are recorded in the raw file and points are computed based on the values you enter. A profile is not needed for this mode, just press Connect to begin using the Total Station Demo mode.

GPS Rover / GPS Reference

When you set it to GPS Rover or GPS Reference you will be able to Add, Delete, or Edit a profile for your rover or reference receiver. When you edit a GPS Rover or GPS Reference profile, you will see the [Configure Rover](#) or [Configure Reference](#) screens. For more information about using Evidence Recorder for GPS surveying, you should review the [Starting GPS](#) topic.

If you have not purchased the GPS module for Evidence Recorder, then you will not have access to the GPS commands and you will see a "Requires GPS module license" message.

GPS Demo

When you set it to GPS Demo you will be able to Edit and Connect to a profile for a simulated rover receiver. When you edit the RTK Demo profile, you will see the [Configure Rover](#) screen. Feel free to play with the Tolerance Mode settings, but please do not change the Model and Communications settings. For more information about using Evidence Recorder for GPS surveying, you should review the [Starting GPS](#) topic.

The GPS Demo will simulate connecting Evidence Recorder to a GPS Rover receiver. The coordinates in the GPS Demo are located outside our office in Westbank, British Columbia, Canada, so to use the GPS Demo mode you need to set your Coordinate System Settings to UTM Zones, NAD83, UTM83-11, Ellipsoidal.

None

Use this option if you're not connecting anything to Evidence Recorder and also don't need to manually enter any shot information. With this mode, the instrument toolbar will not be displayed in the map screen.

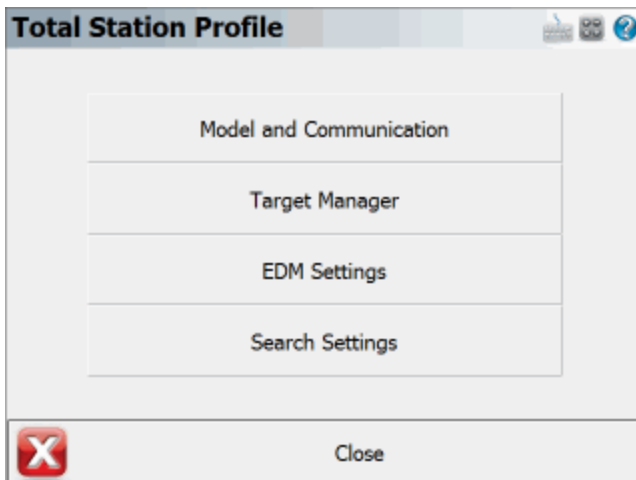
Make and Model Settings

Evidence Recorder includes instrument and GNSS drivers for most popular brands. This list of supported hardware is constantly changing and for a complete list of supported hardware, please visit the following webpage: http://www.microsurvey.com/products/fieldgenius/hardware_table.php

Total Station Profile

Main Menu | Settings | Instrument Selection | Total Station | Edit

This screen will help you configure your total stationing settings such as the make and model of instrument you plan on using and set any desired parameters you may need to use with your instrument. This option will only be available if you specified **Total Station** in the [Instrument Selection](#) screen and then **Edit** a profile.



Model and Communication

This allows you to specify the make and model of instrument that will be connected to Evidence Recorder. You can also specify the communication settings such as baud rate and com port. See the [Model and Communication](#) topic for more information.

Target Manager

This allows you to create, copy, and delete targets in Evidence Recorder. You can define a unique backsight and foresight target for example. See the [Target Manager](#) topic for more information.

EDM Settings

This allows you to specify if you will be using prism offsets in Evidence Recorder and allows you to specify tolerances that will be used to ensure your EDM measurement meet your criteria. See the [EDM Settings](#) topic for more information.

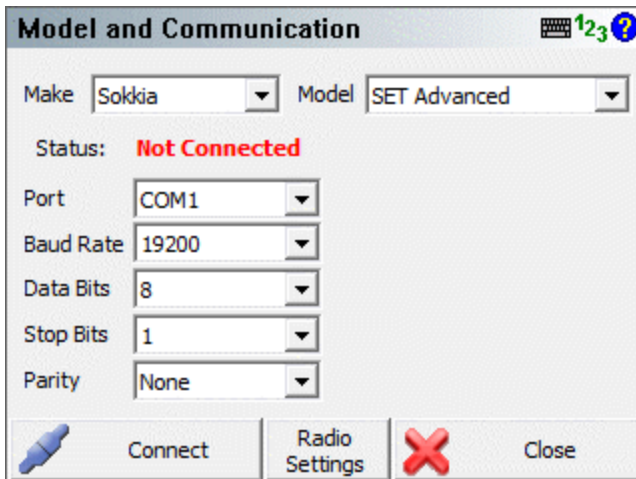
Search Settings

When using a robotic instrument, you can specify search window parameters. See the [Search Settings](#) topic for more information.

Model and Communication

[Main Menu](#) | [Settings](#) | [Instrument Selection](#) | [Edit Total Station Profile](#) | [Model and Communication](#)

This is where you can specify the make and model of instrument you will be connecting to, as well as specify your communication parameters.



Model and Communication

Make: Model:

Status: **Not Connected**

Port:

Baud Rate:

Data Bits:

Stop Bits:

Parity:

Total Station Make

Use this to select the make of your instrument.

Total Station Model

Use this to select the model of your instrument.

Status

This indicates whether Evidence Recorder is Connected or Not Connected to your instrument.

Port, Baud Rate, Data Bits, Stop Bits, and Parity

If you know the settings of your instrument you can set them here in Evidence Recorder. They have to match exactly the ones on your instrument or you will get a communications error when you try to connect.

It is important to confirm these settings on your instrument when you're trying to connect Evidence Recorder for the first time! Most connection problems occur because the user has specified parameters that don't match the ones on their instrument.

On many data collectors you can select Bluetooth as your communication port. If you select the Bluetooth port, the traditional serial communication options (Baud Rate, Data Bits, Stop Bits, Parity) will be replaced with a Bluetooth Search function.

Please note that not all bluetooth-enabled devices will list Bluetooth as a Port option. In some cases you must configure and use a virtual COM port through Windows CE's internal Bluetooth Settings, for example COM6.

Bluetooth Search

If you set the port to Bluetooth, a **Bluetooth Search** button will appear. Press the search button to find the device you want to communicate wirelessly with. All devices within range will be listed, choose the one you want to use

The device you selected will be saved into your instrument profile for future use so you do not need to Search every time.

Bluetooth PIN

After initiating a Bluetooth connection, you will be prompted to enter the PIN (passkey) for the instrument you are connecting to. If your instrument does not need one just leave it blank and continue by pressing OK.

The PIN you enter will be encrypted and stored in your instrument profile.

RC Port

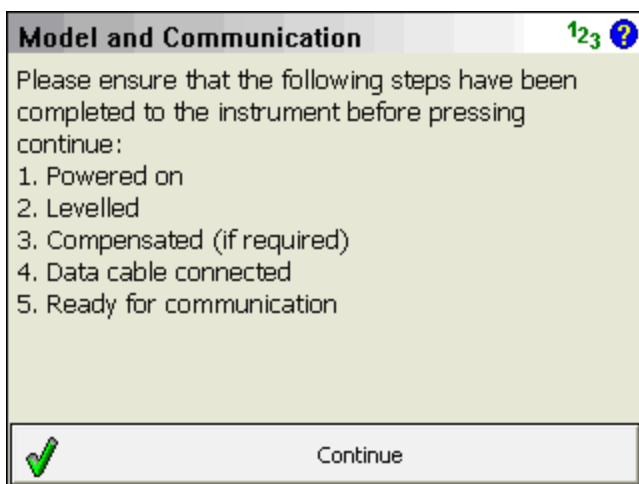
If you are connecting with a Topcon Robot, you can specify which port on your data collector the RC unit is connected to.

Radio Settings

Use this to set the communication parameters for your radios or other communication device, such as the channel or frequency. You can also use it to specify a direct connection to Evidence Recorder instead of using radios. Please see the [Radio Settings](#) topic for additional information.

Connect

Use this to connect to your instrument after you have specified your communication settings. After pressing the Connect button Evidence Recorder will display a reminder screen listing some items you should check before continuing.



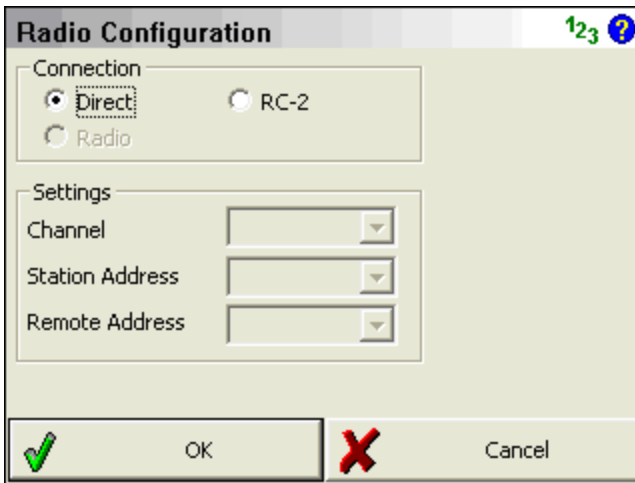
When you press Continue on the screen and you see the following message, "No communication with instrument. Check settings, cables and power." read the [No Communication](#) topic for possible causes.

Evidence Recorder connects successfully, the Status will change to "Connected", and if your instrument supports graphical representation of the level bubble, you will see the [Check Level](#) screen.

Radio Configuration

[Main Menu](#) | [Settings](#) | [Instrument Selection](#) | [Edit Total Station Profile](#) | [Model and Communication](#) | [Radio Settings](#)

Use this to specify if you want to connect to your robotic instrument using a direct connection or through the instrument's radios. If you're using a Topcon, you can specify your RC unit as the communication device.

The image shows a 'Radio Configuration' dialog box. It has a title bar with 'Radio Configuration' and a help icon. The 'Connection' section has two radio buttons: 'Direct' (selected) and 'RC-2'. The 'Settings' section has three dropdown menus: 'Channel', 'Station Address', and 'Remote Address'. At the bottom are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons with a green checkmark icon next to 'OK' and a red 'X' icon next to 'Cancel'.

Connection

Direct

This will allow you to connect directly to your instrument through an instrument cable.

Radio

This will allow you to connect to your instrument using external radios. Select your radio channel, if this option is available.

Note: If you are using radios with your instrument but this option is disabled or not available, then pick the Direct option instead.

RC

This will allow Evidence Recorder and your instrument to communicate through the RC unit.

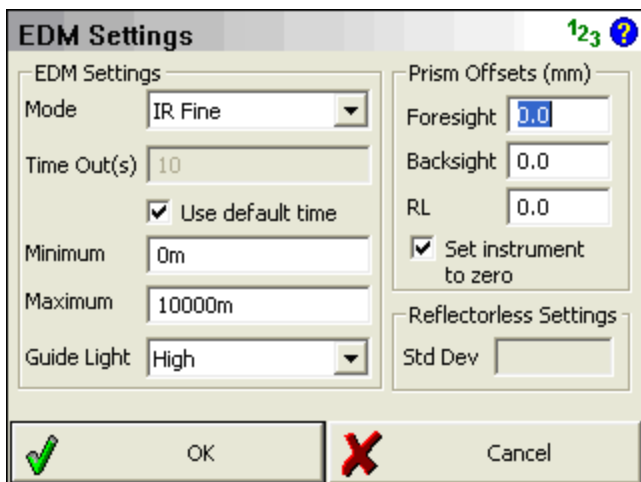
Settings

If you're using a Trimble or Geodimeter total station you will be able to specify the radio settings required to communicate with your instrument.

EDM Settings

[Main Menu](#) | [Settings](#) | [Instrument Selection](#) | [Edit Total Station Profile](#) | [EDM Settings](#)

From here you can specify EDM settings such as prism offsets and measurement modes.



EDM Settings

EDM Settings

Mode: IR Fine

Time Out(s): 10

☒ Use default time

Minimum: 0m

Maximum: 10000m

Guide Light: High

Prism Offsets (mm)

Foresight: 0.0

Backsight: 0.0

RL: 0.0

☒ Set instrument to zero

Reflectorless Settings

Std Dev:

OK Cancel

EDM Settings

Mode

This list will display all the measurement modes supported by your instrument. These will be the same as the ones you're used to using and you can refer to your owner manual for more information on their specifications.

Time Out (s)

Use this to specify the length of time Evidence Recorder will try to receive a measurement from your instrument. You may need to set this to a higher number if you're trying to receive measurement in wooded areas or long sights.

Use Default Time Out

If this is checked on Evidence Recorder will use a default time out value. If you would like to change it you need to uncheck it and update the **Time Out** field.

Minimum and Maximum

You can specify the minimum and maximum distance that Evidence Recorder will accept as being valid. Example is if you set this the minimum to 10 feet and you measure 5 feet, Evidence Recorder will not record the measurement and will display a "Distance out of range" error in the status toolbar.

Guide Light

If your instrument has guide lights you will be able to set their intensity modes here. Please refer to your owners manual for more information on the different intensities.

Prism Offsets

Foresight Prism Offset

Use this if you want Evidence Recorder to control your prism offsets for your foresight shots. The values must be entered in millimeters. A positive value will be added to the distance that is measured, whereas a negative value will be subtracted.

All measurements other than the measurements to your backsight (reference measurement) are considered to be a foresight shot.

Note: If you specify a prism offset here, you need to make sure the prism offsets are set to zero on your instrument. Otherwise a double offset could be applied to your measurement which will produce incorrect answers.

When you first configure Evidence Recorder with your instrument, you should take the time to confirm that the distances being measured are correct. You can do this by first measuring a precise distance between your current occupy point and a point that you can easily reference and take a measurement to. When you compare the distance measured by Evidence Recorder to your manually measured distance, they should agree very closely.

Backsight Prism Offset

Use this if you want Evidence Recorder to control your backsight prism offsets. The values must be entered in millimeters. A positive value will be added to the distance that is measured, whereas a negative value will be subtracted.

Under normal circumstances, you will set the backsight prism offset to be equal to what you defined for the foresight prism offset. The only time these would be different is in situations where you're using different prisms that have different prism offsets. This is very common with robotic total stations where a permanent prism might be setup on the backsight, and a 360° prism is used at the pole. Typically these two configurations require different offsets be applied at the backsight and foresight shots. If you're unsure about your prism offsets, refer to your instrument's owners manual, or the dealer who sold you the instrument.

Note: If you specify a prism offset here, you need to make sure the prism offsets are set to zero on your instrument. Otherwise a double offset could be applied to your measurement which will produce incorrect answers.

When you first configure Evidence Recorder with your instrument, you should take the time to confirm that the distances being measured are correct. You can do this by first measuring a precise distance between your current occupy point and a point that you can easily reference and take a measurement to. When you compare the distance measured by Evidence Recorder to your manually measured distance, they should agree very closely.

RL (Reflectorless) Prism Offset

Most instruments when shooting reflectorlessly apply a zero offset to the measurement. Depending on the type of material you're measuring to, some materials require an offset be applied even though you're using a reflectorless EDM mode. For example, some reflective tapes used for these types of measurement require a small offset be applied. In this case you can specify this offset and Evidence Recorder will automatically apply it during reflectorless measurements.

Note: If you specify a prism offset here, you need to make sure the prism offsets are set to zero on your instrument. Otherwise a double offset could be applied to your measurement which will produce incorrect answers.

Set Instrument to zero

If this is turned on, a prism constant of zero will be uploaded to your instrument. The offsets specified in the foresight, backsight and RL fields will be applied to the measurements when received by Evidence Recorder. Turn this off if you don't want Evidence Recorder to modify your instrument's prism offset. **Not all instruments support this feature.**

When you connect your instrument to Evidence Recorder, special notes are recorded in the raw file regarding prism offsets.

If you have the "Set Instrument" toggle turned on and your instrument supports this feature, Evidence Recorder will set your instrument's prism offset to zero so no correction will be applied to the measurement. Then once Evidence Recorder receives this uncorrected measurement, it will use the values you specified in the prism offset fields and adjust the distance accordingly. For example, if you specified an offset of 30mm, Evidence Recorder will upload an offset of zero to your instrument and apply the 30 mm offset to the measurement after it is received. In your raw file you will see the following note:

```
|--Evidence Recorder Prism: 30mm Instrument Prism: 0mm|
```

Most prism offset are specified in millimeters. Evidence Recorder will make the necessary conversions so the proper adjustment is applied.

If Evidence Recorder can't set the prism offset on your instrument, it usually can't read it either. Since a prism offset wasn't uploaded, we don't know what prism offset is set on the instrument. So we indicate this by writing to the raw file that the instrument prism offset is "unknown".

```
|--Evidence Recorder Prism: 30mm Instrument Prism: Unknown|
```

When this happens you will usually want to confirm what offset are currently configured on your instrument in regards to prism offsets.

Special Notes:

- When using instruments that don't support uploading of prism constants, be sure not to double up your prism offsets by applying it in the instrument and Evidence Recorder at the same time.

- Since prism offsets are so important, on the measurement progress meter you will see what offset is being applied to your measurement.

Measuring (Prism=30mm) [20%]

Reflectorless Settings

Std Dev:

This applies only to Trimble instruments. See your instrument guide for information on how the standard deviation affects your reflectorless measurements.

Search Settings

[Main Menu](#) | [Settings](#) | [Instrument Selection](#) | [Edit Total Station Profile](#) | [Search Settings](#)

When using a robotic or motorized instrument you can specify search settings for your instrument.

Search Modes

Some of Evidence Recorder's search modes are common to all robotic instruments, but there are a few model specific ones. The modes available are:

Relative Window

This allows you to specify a "window" defined by measuring a point at the top right and bottom left corners. If you press the search button, the search limits will be relative to the direction the instrument is currently pointing. In other words if your **search window ranges** are 30° horizontal and 30° vertical,

it will apply this to your current direction. So the search will be limited to an area 15° left, right, up and down from your current direction.

Absolute Window

This allows you to specify an absolute search "center" for your search window. This forces Evidence Recorder to search in an absolute area defined by the angles set in the **search window center** fields. Furthermore, the search window range parameters apply to the search window center. For example, let's assume you defined 180° as the horizontal search window center, and the horizontal search window range is 30°. Your instrument will be forced to search in an area 15° left and right of the 180° plate reading. So if your prism is situated at a circle reading of 210°, it would never find you as the instrument would never go past a circle reading of 195° (180+15) when searching.

RC-2 Fast Track

If you're using a Topcon instrument, you can set the search mode to RC-2. This will force the instrument to use the RC-2 system for the search.

PS Next (CW)

This setting will appear if your Leica instrument has the power search system. Settings it to this will force the instrument to search in a clockwise direction.

PS Next (CCW)

This setting will appear if your Leica instrument has the power search system. Settings it to this will force the instrument to search in a counter-clockwise direction.

PS Absolute Window

This setting will appear if your Leica instrument has the power search system. This will force the power search system to do a relative search based on the **search window range**.

RC-PR

If you're using a Sokkia SRX, you can set the search mode to RC-PR. This will force the instrument to use the RC system for the search.

Search Window Range

Use this to define the upper right corner and lower left corner of your search window. Pressing the measure button will step you through the procedure and it will calculate the horizontal and vertical search range. This range will be applied to the instrument's current direction when the user presses the search button.

Search Window Center

Use this to set an absolute center for your search window. The search window range parameters will be applied to the search window values that were measured. Pressing the measure button will step

you through the procedure and it will calculate the horizontal and vertical search range.

Auto search for prism

If this is checked, then if your instrument has lost its lock on the prism, Evidence Recorder will automatically initiate a search for the prism when the measure button is pressed. You will see the word "Search" on the lock button at the top of the [robotic instrument toolbar](#) while a search is in progress.

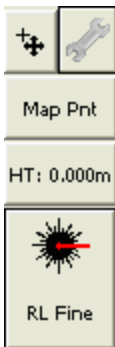
No Communication

When trying to communicate with your instrument you will see sometimes see a "*No communication with instrument. Check settings, cables and power.*" error message if Evidence Recorder can't make a connection with your instrument.

Usually this happens when your communication parameters are not the same on the instrument and in Evidence Recorder. You need to check these settings again to make sure they're correct.

This can also happen if you have a bad cable. If you're using a robotic instrument you might have setup your radios incorrectly.

Instrument Toolbar



When you use Evidence Recorder in either manual or total station mode, you will see the instrument toolbar beside the map area.

This toolbar allows you to control your [instrument settings](#), [EDM modes](#), [measurement modes](#) and [target heights](#).



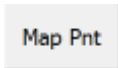
Auto-Center

This toggles the auto-center feature on or off. If turned on, whenever you take a measurement, the map screen will always re-center on the measured point.



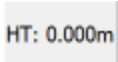
Instrument Settings

This opens the [instrument settings](#) screen where you can control specific settings for your total station such as EDM settings, Tolerance setting and Instrument Connection/Disconnection.



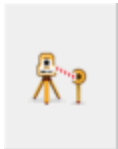
Measurement Mode

This opens the [Measurement Modes](#) screen where you can select what type of measurement you want to take. The current measurement mode is always displayed on this button - for example if you're using the distance offset mode it will display "Dist Off".



Target Height

This opens the [Target Heights](#) screen where you can change the current target height. The current target height is always displayed on this button.



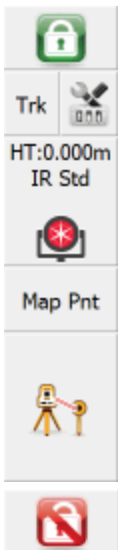
Measure Button

This triggers your total station to take a measurement.

If you are using a robotic total station, please see the [Robotic Instrument Toolbar](#) topic.

If you are using GPS, please see the [GPS Toolbar](#) topic.

Robotic Instrument Toolbar



When you use Evidence Recorder in robotic total station mode, you will see the Robotic Instrument toolbar in the map area. Like the Instrument Toolbar, this toolbar allows you to control your instrument settings, access the [Target Manager](#), change measure modes, and make a measurement. It also lets you search and lock onto the prism.

Lock Button

Evidence Recorder uses a button to trigger the instrument to search for the prism and lock onto it. You can also use this button to turn the lock off.

The button when not locked on a prism will display a **No Lock**



status with a un locked icon. To search for the prism, simply press the No Lock button.

After you have pressed the No Lock button you will see a **Search** icon on the button while the instrument searches for your prism.

When Evidence Recorder finds a prism and locks onto it, the button will display a **Lock** icon. To stop the instrument from tracking, you can press the Lock button again to set it to a No Lock status.



If you're using multiple prisms and you want to force Evidence Recorder to look for another one when you're locked onto a prism, double tapping the Lock button will force it to search for the next available prism.

Also during a search you can cancel the current search by pressing the Stop Search button on the search progress toolbar.



Cursor Tracking

This turns the cursor tracking feature on or off. If turned on, the current position of the target will be displayed on the screen in real time. You can only use this feature once you have specified an instrument setup using the Setup Occupy Point command.

Note: The cursor tracking position will use a coarse measurement to plot your position. When you are stationary, the cursor is a hollow triangle pointing towards the instrument. When you are moving, the cursor is a solid triangle pointing in the direction of travel.



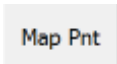
Instrument Settings

This opens the [Instrument Settings Toolbar](#). On this toolbar you can control specific settings for your total station such as EDM modes.



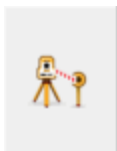
Target Manager

Press this button to access the [Target Manager](#). Here you can create, edit, copy, and delete targets.



Measurement Mode

This button will open the Select Measurement Mode screen, From here you can select what type of measurement you will be using. When you choose your mode, this button will display the mode you're using. For example, if you're using the Distance Off-set mode, the button will display "Dist Off".



Measure Button

Use this to trigger your total station to take a measurement.

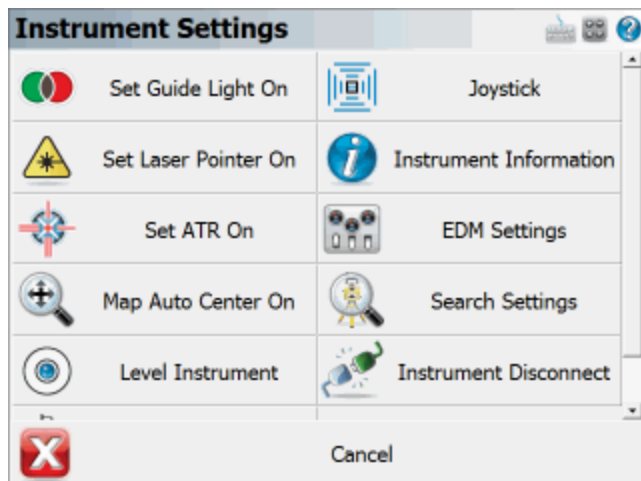
If you are using a conventional non-robotic total station, please see the [Instrument Toolbar](#) topic.

If you are using GPS, please see the [GPS Toolbar](#) topic.

Instrument Settings

[Main Menu](#) | [Settings](#) | [Instrument Settings](#)

[Instrument Toolbar](#) | [Instrument Settings](#)



Use the vertical scroll bar along the side to access additional instrument settings if they cannot all fit on screen at the same time.

Please note that not every instrument supports each of the following functions, so you may not see all of the following buttons when connected to your total station.

Level Instrument

This will open the [Check Level](#) screen, where you can check how level your instrument is.

Instrument Information

When this is pressed, we will display the current battery status of your instrument. Note, not all instruments support this.

EDM Settings

Use this to set the EDM mode for your instrument. Every manufacturer has different measurement modes available but we will list only those that your instrument supports. Please refer to your instrument manual for more information on the EDM modes your instrument supports. Any time you change your EDM Mode, Evidence Recorder writes a comment into the raw file indicating which mode is being used.

Tolerance settings

This will take you to your measurement tolerance settings.

Set Angle

Use this to open the [Set Angle](#) screen where you can view the current angles and turn or flop your motorized instrument.

Auto-Center On / Off

Use this to automatically center the map when a point is shot. If turned on, whenever you take a measurement, the current prism location will always appear in the center of your map display.

ATR On / Off

Use this to turn on and off your instruments Auto Target Recognition feature.

Laser Pointer On / Off

This turns on and off the instrument's red laser pointer.

Guide Lights On / Off

This will turn on and off your instrument's guide lights.

Instrument Joystick

This is the Total Station Joystick function. When activated you will be able to move your motorized instrument to the left, right, up and down by using the joystick touch-screen. There are three speeds that can be activated: slow, medium, and fast. The smaller inside blue buttons activate the slowest turn mode, and the larger outside blue buttons activate the fastest turn mode. To stop the instrument from turning, simply press the red Stop button at the center. **The directions assume you are at the pole looking at the instrument.** Pressing the right buttons will turn the instrument to your right, pressing the up buttons will turn the scope up, etc.

Instrument Connect / Disconnect

Use this to connect or disconnect Evidence Recorder from the instrument. When you are connected to the instrument you will see the Disconnect Instrument button.

Target Manager

MapView | Target Manager |

The Target Manager is a place where you can manage your EDM (electronic distance measurement) targets. You can create, edit, copy, and delete targets.

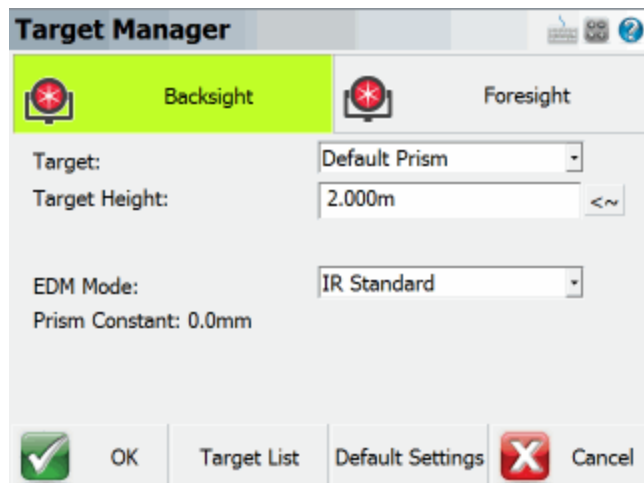
The Target Manager is divided into 2 sections: Backsight and Foresight.

Note: Leica users should refer to the [Leica version of the Target Manager topic](#).

GeoMax users should refer to this [GeoMax version of the Target Manager topic](#).

Target Manager: Backsight

Use the Backsight screen to define your backsight target and enter a backsight target height.



[Target](#)

Use this field to select a backsight target from the [Target List](#).

[Target Height](#)

Enter the height of your target here.

Press the **Set Default Height** button  to assign the default height to this **Target Height** field. The default height is defined in the [Default Settings](#) screen.

[EDM Mode](#)

Use this field to select the EDM mode you would like to use. You will only be able to select an EDM mode that corresponds to your target type.

[Prism Constant](#)

This field will display whatever prism constant that you entered for the selected target.

[OK](#)

This records the settings you have just made, closes the Target Manager, and returns you to the Map-View.

[Target List](#)

Press this button to access the [Target List](#). The Target List consists of user-defined and default instrument targets. Here you can create, copy, edit, and delete targets.

[Default Settings](#)

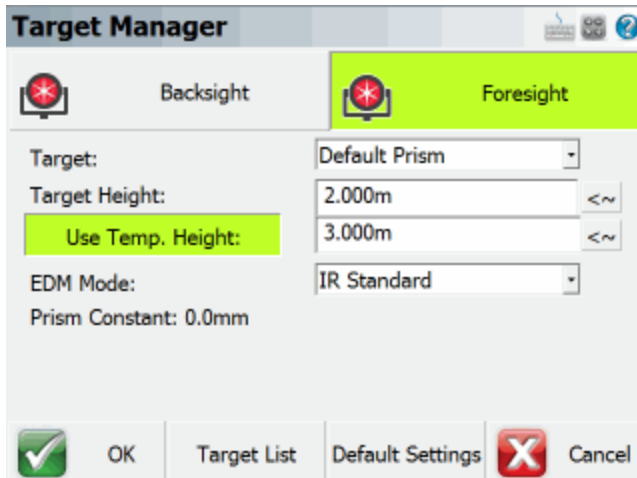
Press this button to access the [Default Settings](#) screen. This is where you define the default target heights.

[Cancel](#)

Press this button to discard any changes made to the Backsight dialog and returns you to the Map-View.

Target Manager: Foresight

Use the Foresight screen to select the foresight target and enter a target height.



Target Manager

Backsight Foresight

Target: Default Prism

Target Height: 2.000m <~

Use Temp. Height: 3.000m <~

EDM Mode: IR Standard

Prism Constant: 0.0mm

OK Target List Default Settings Cancel

[Target](#)

Use this field to select a foresight target.

[Target Height](#)

Enter the height of your foresight target here.

Press the **Set Default Height** button  to assign the default target height to this **Target Height** field. The default height is defined in the [Default Settings](#) screen.

[EDM Mode](#)

Use this field to select the EDM mode you would like to use. Typically you will want to select an EDM mode that corresponds to your target type.

[Use Temp. Height](#)

Press this button to activate the Temporary Height function (button is active in the above image). To enable the temporary height be used, you must press the **Use Temp. Height** button. Once activated, the following measurement will use this temporary height but it will be a one-time measurement, and then the system will immediately revert back to the height defined in the **Target Height** field. This is handy if you need to take a quick shot using a different height such as when measuring an invert.

Press the **Set Default Height** button  to assign the default Temporary height to this **Target Height** field. The default height is defined in the [Default Settings](#) screen.

[Prism Constant](#)

This field will display whatever prism offset that you entered for the selected target.

[OK](#)

This records the settings you have just made, closes the Target Manager, and returns you to the Map-View.

[Target List](#)

Press this button to access the [Target List](#). Here you can create, copy, edit, and delete targets.

[Default Settings](#)

Press this button to access the [Default Settings](#) screen. This is where you define the default target heights.

[Cancel](#)

Press this button to discard any changed made to the Backsight dialog and returns you to the Map-View.

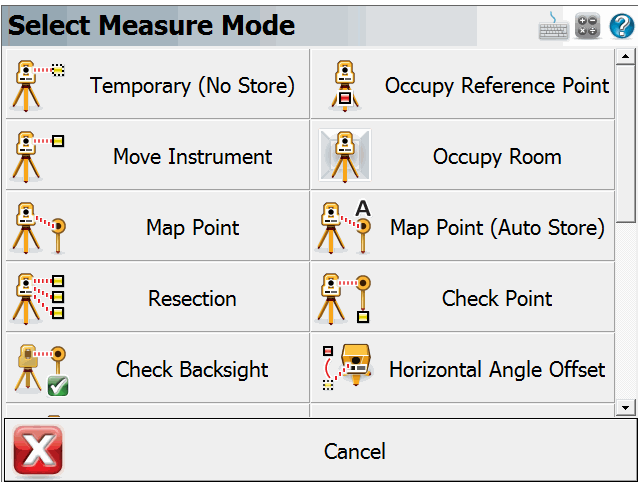
MAPPING METHODS MENU

Mapping Methods Menu

Main Menu | Mapping Methods

These are commands built into Evidence Recorder that will help you measure and map your points. The desired method must be selected before you begin a measurement.

For a faster way to get to this screen, you can also press the measure mode button which is located on the [instrument toolbar](#).



Use the vertical scroll bar along the side to access additional measurement modes if they cannot all fit on screen at the same time.

Note: Several of these modes will not be available until you have setup an occupy point and measured a backsight via the Occupy Reference Point, Occupy Room, or Resection commands. Most of these modes will also not be available if you are using GPS.

Temporary (No Store)

This will allow you to take a measurement without storing it. Please see the [Temporary \(No Store\)](#) topic for more information.

Occupy Reference Point

Use this to define an instrument setup. Please See "Backsight Method" topic for more information.

Move Instrument

This is a wizard that will help you establish a new reference point, and then will step you through moving your instrument. Please see the [Move Instrument](#) topic for more information.

Occupy Room

Use this to define an instrument setup so that one wall in the room becomes a baseline where one end of it is at 0,0. Please see the [Occupy Room](#) topic for more information.

Map Point

This mode allows you to measure a point. After the measurement, it will allow you to review your measurement data and allow you to make changes to the point id and description before it is stored. Please see the [Map Point](#) topic for more information.

Map Point (Auto Store)

This mode allows you to measure a point using the next available point id, and the description and line toggles specified on the main map screen. Using this is a very fast method for recording your measurements. Please see the [Map Point \(Auto Store\)following](#) topic for more information.

Resection

This will start the multiple point resection routine to allow you to determine your current instrument position by measuring to known points. Please see the Resection topic for more information.

Check Point

Use this to display a check measurement to an existing point in your project. Please see the [Check Shot](#) topic for more information.

Check Backsight

Use this to compare your backsight to your previously measured values. Please see the [Check Backsight](#) topic for more information.

Horizontal Angle Offset

This will start the angle offset routine. Please see the [Horizontal Angle Offset](#) topic for more information.

Vertical Angle Offset

This will allow you to compute the height of an object. Please see the [Vertical Angle Offset](#) topic for more information.

Distance Offset

This will start the distance offset routine. Please see the [Distance Offset](#) topic for more information.

Manual Distance

This will record a HA and VA for a shot, but the user can manually enter the distance. Please see the [Manual Distance](#) topic for more information.

Manual Entry

This will allow you to manually enter in a shot including HA, VA and SD. Please see the [Manual Entry](#) topic for more information

Two Line Intersection

This allows you to measure two baselines and Evidence Recorder will compute the intersection point. Please see the [Two Line Intersection](#) topic for more information.

Line - Angle Offset

This allows you to measure two points to define a baseline, measure an angle, and Evidence Recorder will compute the intersection point. Please see the [Line - Angle Offset](#) topic for more information.

Line - Distance Offset

This allows you to measure two points to define a baseline, then manually enter measured distances. These distances will be used to compute a new point based on the baseline. Please see the [Line - Distance Offset](#) topic for more information.

Line - Perpendicular Point

This allows you to measure two points to define a baseline, then you can select an existing point which will be used to compute a perpendicular intersection. Please see the [Line - Perpendicular Point](#) topic for more information.

Trilateration

This will allow you to compute new points by observing their distances from two known existing points. Please see the [Trilateration](#) topic for more information.

Baseline Offset

This will allow you to compute points offset from a baseline. Please see the [Baseline Offset](#) topic for more information.

Vertical Scene Projection

This will allow you to compute points on a user defined vertical plane. Please see the [Vertical Scene Projection](#) topic for more information.

Point Scanning

Use this to activate Point Scanning with your motorized reflectorless instrument. Please see the [Point Scanning](#) topic for more information.

Set Angle

Instrument Settings toolbar | Set Angle

You can access this screen by pressing the **Set Angle** button on the [instrument settings](#) toolbar.

Horizontal and Vertical Angles

Use these two fields to enter in angles that will be used by the Set Angle buttons.

Move Absolute

Use this to turn the instrument to a plate reading that you've entered in the HA or VA fields. For example if you enter 45°30'30" for the HA and 90°10'00" for the VA, pressing the Absolute button will turn your instrument so the plate reading equals these values.

Move Relative

Use this to turn an angle to the right or left of the current instrument plate reading. Positive values will be added to the current plate reading, negative values will be subtracted. Enter your values in the HA

and VA fields.

Turn +90°

Pressing this will force your instrument to turn 90 degrees to the right.

Turn -90°

Pressing this will force your instrument to turn 90 degrees to the left.

Flip Scope

This will plunge the scope and reverse the direction for you.

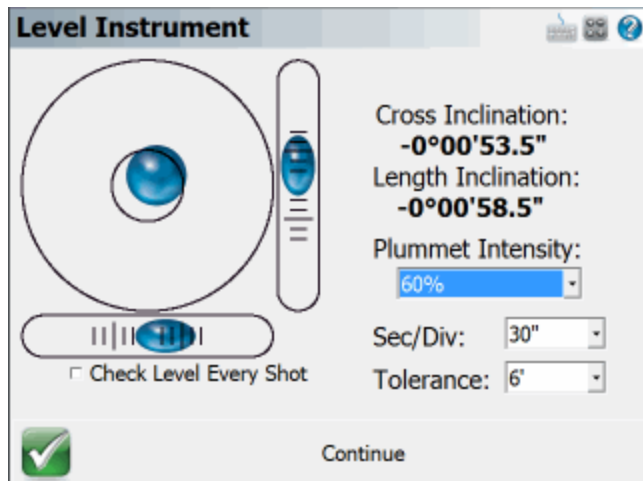
Read Angles

This will display the current horizontal and vertical angles as displayed on your instrument. This button acts as a toggle and if left on, will display the angle in real time.

Check Level

Instrument Settings | Level Instrument

If your instrument supports it, you can check to see how level your instrument is.



Plummet Intensity

If your instrument has a laser plummet or laser pointer, Evidence Recorder can toggle those functions on or off. On some models of total station this feature is turned on automatically.

Division

You can now adjust the sensitivity of your display to show 20, 30, and 60 second intervals.

Tolerance

You can now set a tolerance for the level bubble sensor. If you exceed that tolerance then you will receive a warning message that indicates your instrument is out of level.

Check Level Every Shot

Use this option to force our software to check instrument level before every measurement. The default is off.

If you're using a Trimble or Geodimeter instrument you can turn on the **Calibrate Instrument** option and when you press Close it will force the instrument to do a calibration.

Basic Measure

The Basic Measure mode is a quick way for the user to setup and take a quick measurement without having a project or a total station setup and provides a direct view of the angular and distance values. However using this mode will not allow the observation to be stored to the database or RAW file.

The screenshot shows the 'Basic Measure' dialog box in the FieldGenius software. The dialog has a title bar with 'FieldGenius' and a close button. The main area displays measurement data in two columns. The left column shows 'Horizontal Angle: 1°46'50"' and 'Vertical Angle: 273°05'32"'. The right column shows 'Horizontal Distance: -2.284m', 'Vertical Distance: 0.132m', and 'Slope Distance: 2.287m'. Below this, there is a 'Plate Angle' section with a text input field containing '0°00'00"' and an 'Apply' button. To the right of the 'Apply' button is a warning icon (a yellow triangle with a black asterisk) and the text 'Set Laser Pointer Off'. At the bottom of the dialog, there are four buttons: a green checkmark icon labeled 'OK', a house icon labeled 'Target Manager', a red crosshair icon labeled 'Measure', and a button labeled 'Measure'.

Measurement Type	Value
Horizontal Angle	1°46'50"
Vertical Angle	273°05'32"
Horizontal Distance	-2.284m
Vertical Distance	0.132m
Slope Distance	2.287m

Plate Angle: 0°00'00"

☒ OK

Options

Plate Angle

Users can define a desired plate angle to be applied to the current orientation.

Set Laser Pointer

Toggles Laser Pointer ON/OFF

Target Manager

Target Manager allows the users to toggle between Prisms and EDM modes.

Note: Basic Measure mode does not take Target Height into consideration.

Measure

Initiates an observation from the Total Station.

OK

Pressing this button with Evidence Recorder onboard Total Station will take the user to the Project Manager.

Scan Settings

Measure Modes | Point Scanning

When connected to the Leica MS50 and you select the Point Scanning command you will see the Scan Settings dialog.

This mode is available for Evidence Recorder, Evidence Recorder, and Layout.

Scan Settings - Type

Scan Method

You have 4 options

- Polygon area - Scan area confined by polygon vertices (video scanning supported)
- Rectangular area - Scan a rectangular area defined by 2 opposite corners (video scanning supported)
- Full Dome - Scan the entire field of view of the total station
- Partial Dome - Scan area confined by angler constraints. Can also be used to scan Ceilings or Floors

Scan Rate

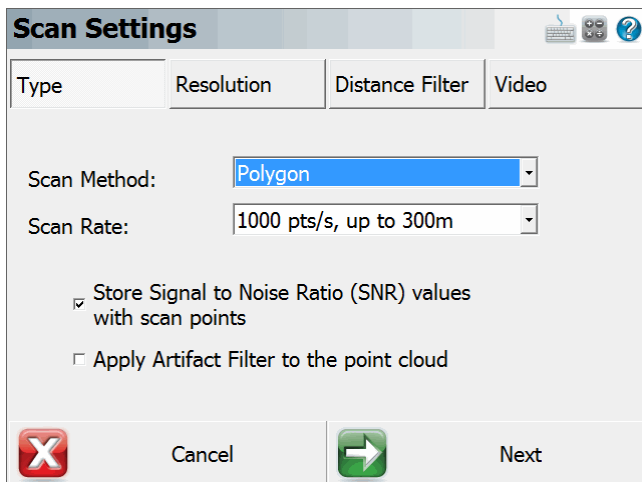
Define the scan rate you want to use. High density scans require more time to complete, while lower density scans require less time.

Store SNR

Use this to control the recording of SNR data on each point captured with the MS50.

Artifact Filter

Use this to help eliminate ghost points and enhances the point cloud quality.



Scan Settings

Type Resolution Distance Filter Video

Scan Method: Polygon

Scan Rate: 1000 pts/s, up to 300m

☒ Store Signal to Noise Ratio (SNR) values with scan points

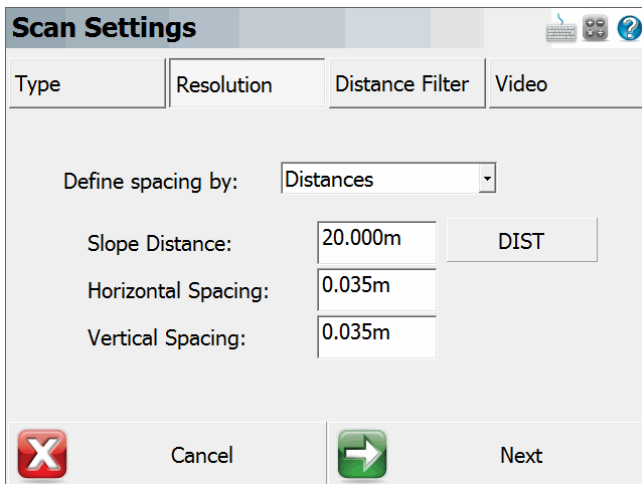
☐ Apply Artifact Filter to the point cloud

Cancel Next

Scan Settings - Resolution

You can define the resolution of scan by distance or angle. The easiest is by distance.

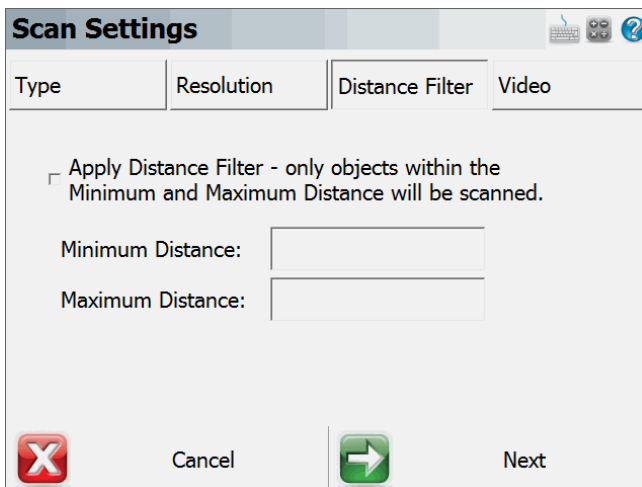
Measure near the area you want to scan and press the DIST button, spacing information will be determined automatically.



The **Scan Settings** dialog box has four tabs: **Type**, **Resolution**, **Distance Filter**, and **Video**. The **Distance Filter** tab is active. It contains a 'Define spacing by:' label and a dropdown menu set to 'Distances'. Below this are three input fields: 'Slope Distance' with the value '20.000m', 'Horizontal Spacing' with '0.035m', and 'Vertical Spacing' with '0.035m'. A 'DIST' button is located to the right of the 'Slope Distance' field. At the bottom are 'Cancel' and 'Next' buttons, each with a corresponding icon (a red X and a green arrow).

Scan Settings - Distance Filter

You can define a minimum and maximum distance filter that will help confine the scan data within this range.



The **Scan Settings** dialog box is shown with the **Distance Filter** tab selected. It features a checkbox labeled 'Apply Distance Filter - only objects within the Minimum and Maximum Distance will be scanned.' Below the checkbox are two empty input fields for 'Minimum Distance' and 'Maximum Distance'. The 'Cancel' and 'Next' buttons with their respective icons are at the bottom.

Scan Settings - Video

You can use the cameras on the total station to define scan area.

- This option is only applicable for Rectangular and Polygon modes.
- This option is only available on Windows desktop PC or tablet platforms.

View Streaming Video

This button Enable/Disable the video streaming feature. If video streaming is disabled, regular measurement mode will apply to define the scan area

If you are unable to turn on this button, please check the Bluetooth PAN or USB connection.

Connection

You can either use Bluetooth PAN connection or USB cable connection for streaming video views
See "Setup Video Streaming Connection" Section below for more details.

FrameRate

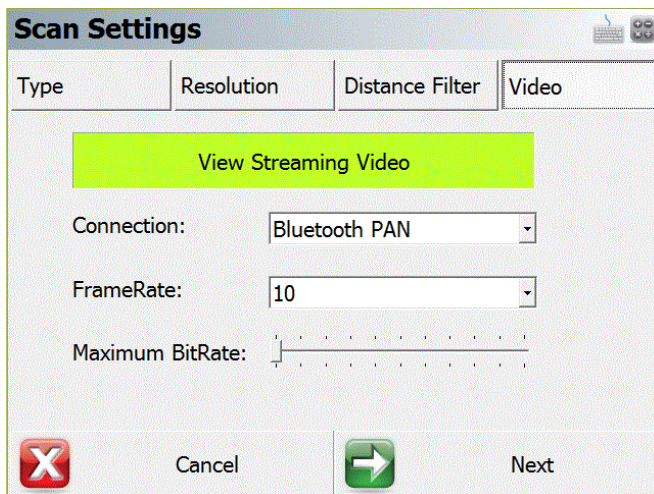
Use this to adjust frame rate of the video

Maximum BitRate

This setting controls the maximum video data transfer rate between total station and your data collector.

Lower this setting if you are experiencing high latency, slow response time, or video flickering in video extents view when using Bluetooth PAN connection.

We recommend lowest setting for Bluetooth PAN connection due to limited wireless bandwidth, and highest setting for USB Cable connection. **(These are default settings)**



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Scan Settings" with four tabs: "Type", "Resolution", "Distance Filter", and "Video". The "Video" tab is selected. Inside the "Video" tab, there is a yellow button labeled "View Streaming Video". Below this button, there are three settings: "Connection:" with a dropdown menu showing "Bluetooth PAN", "FrameRate:" with a dropdown menu showing "10", and "Maximum BitRate:" with a slider control. At the bottom of the dialog, there are two buttons: a red "X" button labeled "Cancel" and a green right-pointing arrow button labeled "Next".

Setup Video Streaming Connection

This section details set up procedures for establishing Bluetooth PAN and USB cable connection

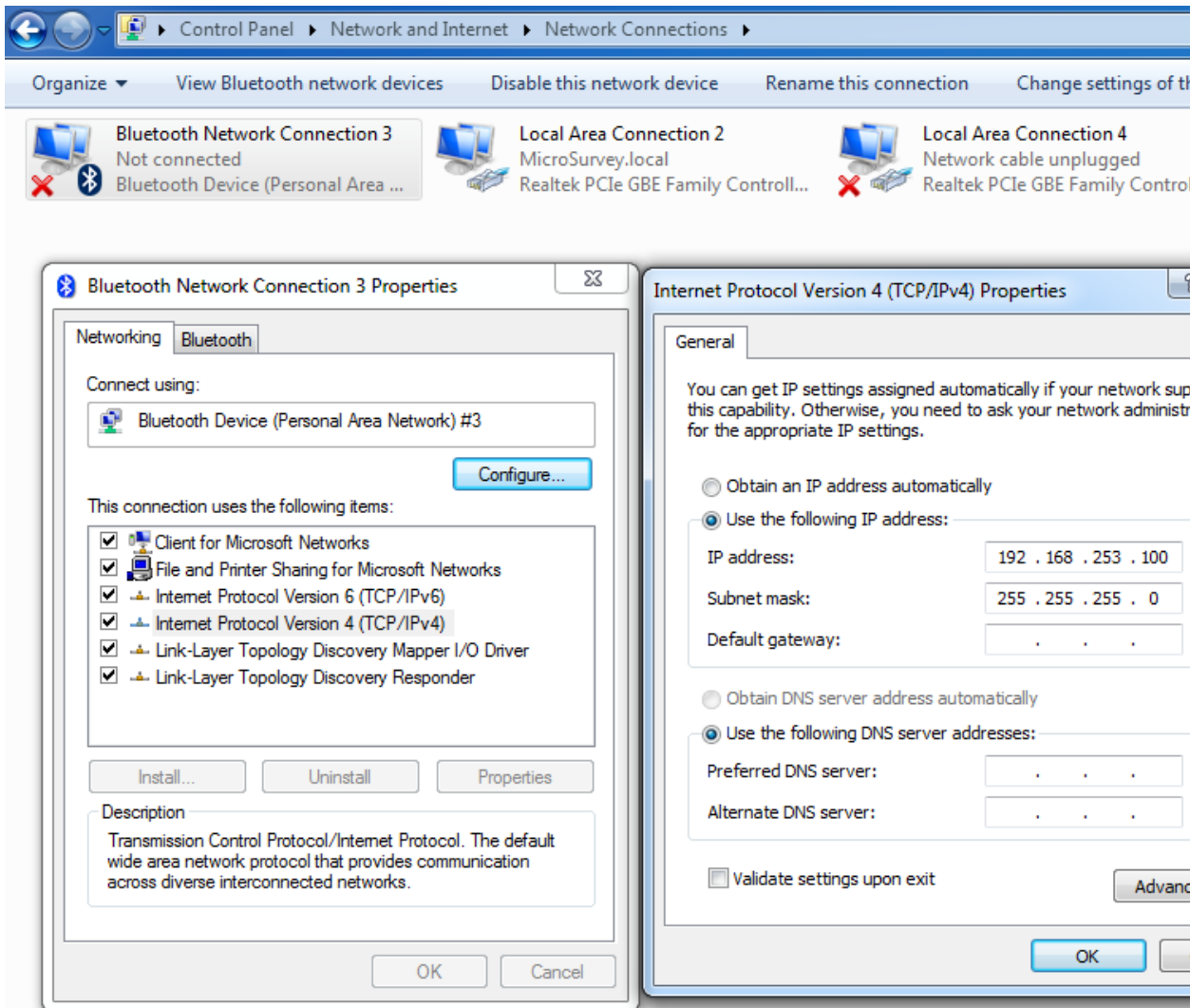
USB Cable Connection Setup

- Install Leica MS50 driver or Leica Viva software that contains the driver on the PC/Tablet you wish to run Evidence Recorder
- Connect Leica Lemo 8-pin to USB cable to the PC/Tablet

Bluetooth PAN Connection Initial Setup

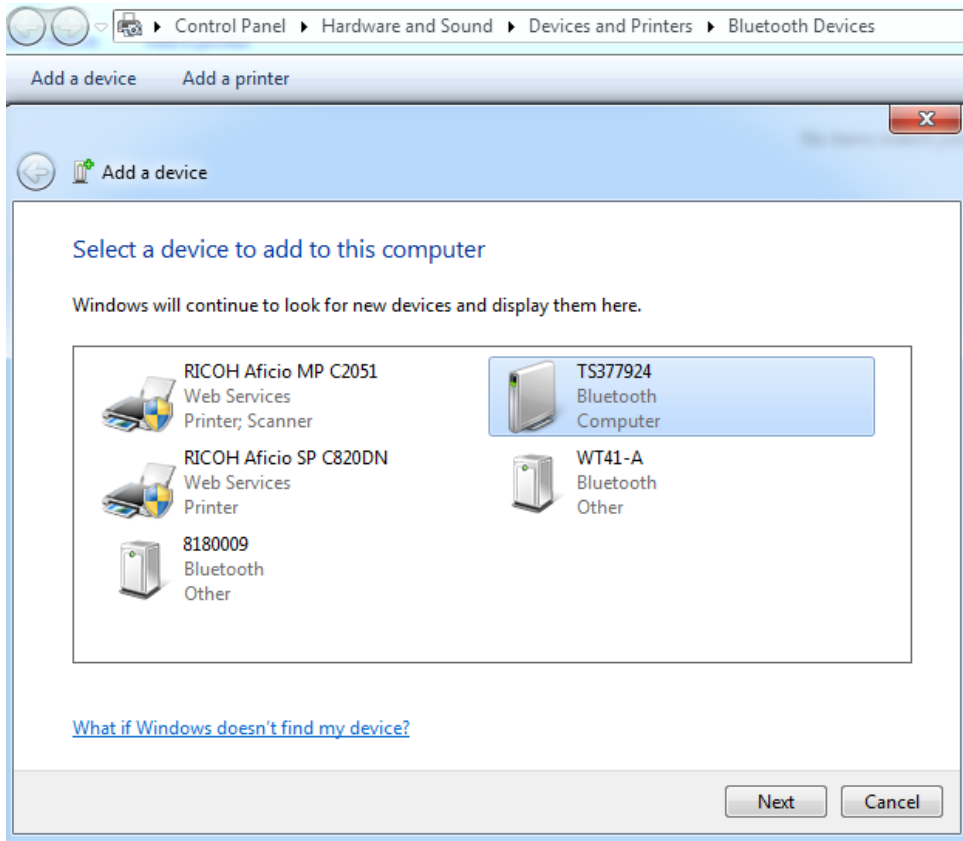
NOTE: ALL setup steps below are one-time-only. This setup guide is also available as a video on MicroSurvey.com

- On a Bluetooth capable Windows PC or tablet, go to **Control Panel -> Network and Sharing Center -> Change Adapter Settings**
- Locate **Bluetooth Network Connection**, right click on the icon and select **Properties**.
- Under **Networking** tab, click on **Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4)**, then click on **Properties** again
- Select **Use the following IP address:**, and enter **192.168.253.100** as IP address, and **255.255.255.0** as Subnet mask
- Click **OK** twice to save the settings



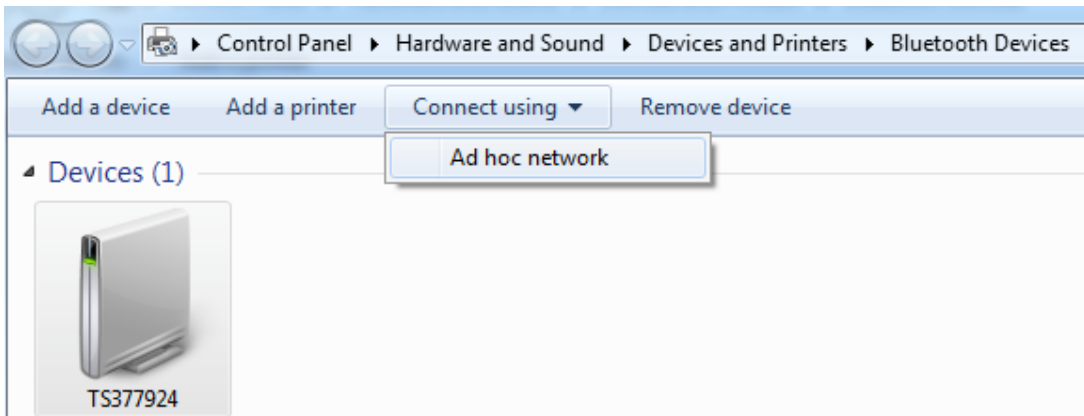
- Now go to **Control Panel -> View Devices and Printers** or alternatively right click **Bluetooth task bar status icon**, and select **Show Bluetooth Devices**
- From either places, click **Add a device** button to add MS50 (names as TS or TSxxxxxx) as a device. Make sure the instrument is turned on and within range.

- When asked for **pairing code** or **PIN**, make sure to enter **0000** as code on both Windows and MS50 instrument.
- The MS50 instrument is now successfully paired with your PC/Tablet. All steps above are one time only



Bluetooth PAN Connection Setup

- Once the initial setup is completed, you should be able to see your instrument under **Bluetooth devices** or **Devices and Printers** screen
- Right click the MS50 instrument, select **Connect using**, then click **Ad hoc network**
- Windows may take a few seconds to finish the connection. You are now good to go!



Bluetooth PAN Troubleshoot or Reset

- If your Bluetooth PAN connection is unstable or video camera cannot be started, you can follow the steps below to reset the connection
- Remove MS50 instrument from Bluetooth device list on your PC/Tablet
- On MS50, hold the **Power** button, and choose **Reset**, and select **Reset Windows CE**. This will clear WinCE system settings.
- Follow the steps above to re-add MS50 instrument in the Bluetooth device **using PIN code 0000**

Scan Extent - Partial Dome

Measure Modes | Point Scanning

Partial Dome scan routine can help you:

- Define a rectangular shaped scan area by entering four angular constraints
- Define a donut shaped scan area by checking on **360 Horizontal Scan Area** option.
 - An practical application of the donut mode would be to either scan Ceilings or Floors by limiting the 2 vertical angles.

Scan Extents

Partial Dome (Donut): A scan will be made within the constraints specified below:

☒ 360° Horizontal Scan Area

Horizontal Angle 1:

0°00'00"

Horizontal Angle 2:

359°54'00"

Vertical Angle 1:

90°00'00"

Vertical Angle 2:

130°00'00"

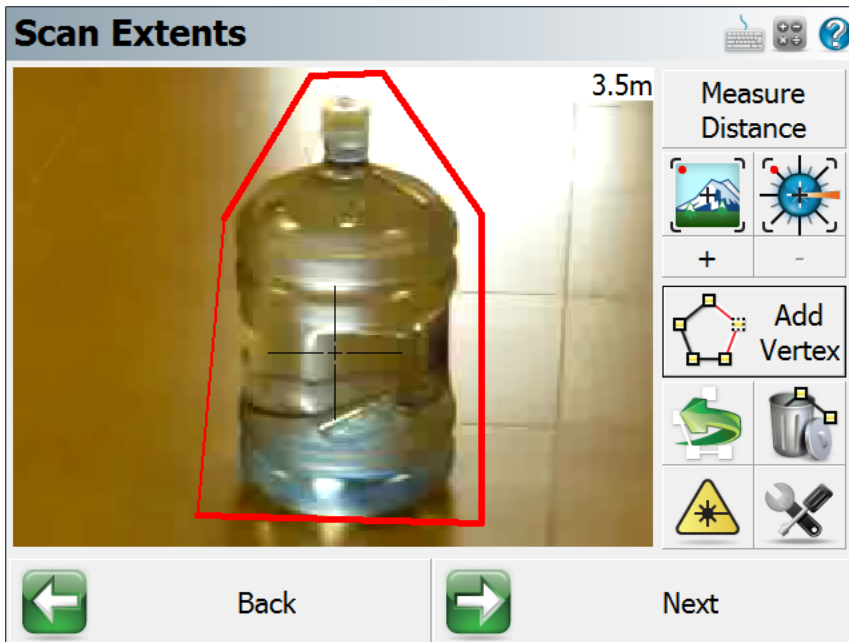
 Back

 Next

Video Scan Extents

Measure Modes | Point Scanning

When Point Scanning settings are confirmed, and "View Streaming Video" option is turned on, you will be directed to the Video Scan Extents screen



A detailed video walkthrough of this feature is available at MicroSurvey.com

Scan Extents Icons

Note: Click and hold any buttons will show a tool tip of the button.

Measure Distance

Measures the distance of the object at crosshair. It is recommend to measure distance before adding polygon vertices with overview camera.

Current distance is displayed at the upper-right corner of the video screen.

If the camera is moved, a "Distance Required" text will be displayed instead of the number.

Overview Camera

This is the default camera - ideal for shorter distance.

The Overview Camera is NOT aligned with the total station scope, and will require user "Measure Distance" before adding each polygon vertex to align the crosshair and the scope/laser.

On-Axis Camera

This camera is ideal for longer distance.

the On-Axis Camera is aligned with the total station scope, you can add vertices directly without "Measure Distance"

Zoom In

This will zoom in on the camera view

Zoom Out

This will zoom out on the camera view

Add Vertex

Vertices can be defined using this button to form a scan area.

Remove Vertex (Undo)

Use this button to remove the previously defined vertex

Clear All Vertices

You can clear the all previous defined vertieees

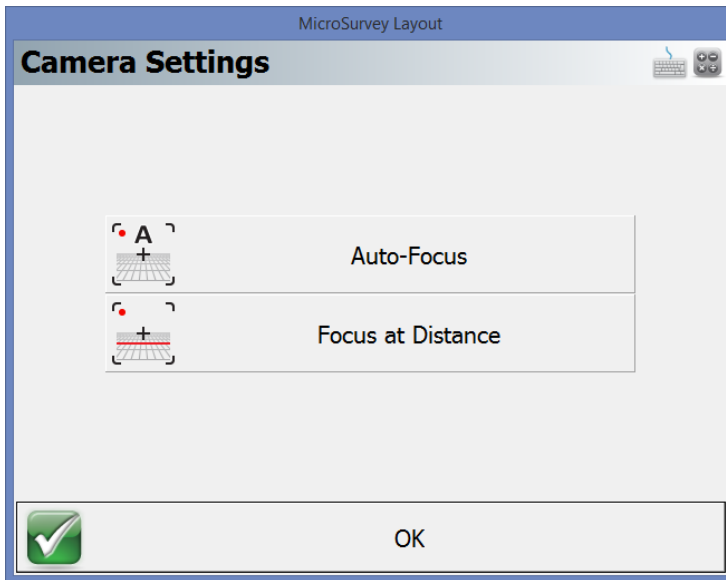
Set Laser Pointer ON/OFF

You can toggle laser pointer on the total station on or off

More Options

This button will open up Camera Settings dialog

- Auto-Focus - Turn on auto focus of the selected camera
- Focus at Distance - Focus the camera at the distance measured



Video Scan Workflow

You can choose to use either Overview Camera or On-Axis Camera to defined the scan area, base on distance, video quality, or other factors.

Overview Camera

- Turn on laser pointer.
- Move the crosshair to the edge of the scanning area by directly clicking the video itself.
- You will notice the crosshair has a circle in the middle, and a "Distance Required" text on the upper-right corner of the video view.
- Click "Measure Distance" button to determine the slope distance, and the software will align the crosshair with the laser/scope.
- Click "Add Vertex" button to add the first polygon vertex.
- Repeat previous steps until the scan area is defined.
- Note: if the scanning object is efficiently far away from the total station, then the misalignment between crosshair and laser/scope will be small. You can directly add vertex without the measuring distance, and the scanning area will be similar to what you would see on the video screen.

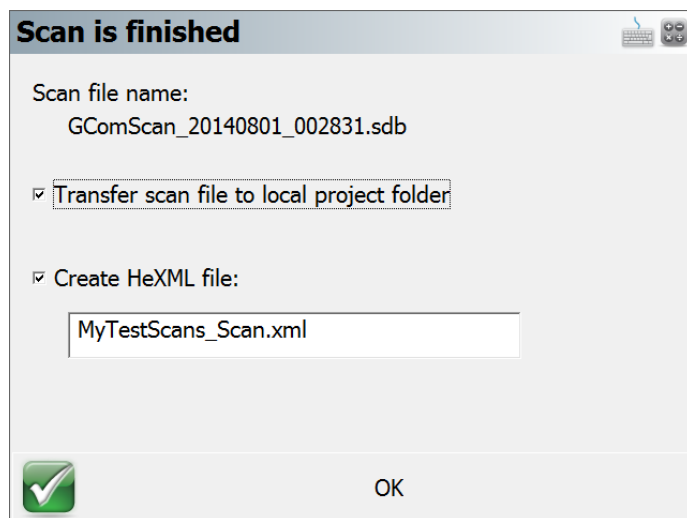
On-Axis Camera

- Move the crosshair to the edge of the scanning area by directly clicking the video itself.
- Zoom to the appropriate level
- Click "Add Vertex" button to add the first polygon vertex.
- Repeat previous steps until the scan area is defined.

Scan Complete

Measure Modes | Point Scanning

When Point Scanning is completed, a few options will be available to you.



Scan is finished

Scan file name:
GComScan_20140801_002831.sdb

☒ Transfer scan file to local project folder

☒ Create HeXML file:
MyTestScans_Scan.xml

 OK

Scan Complete Options

Scan File Name:

The Scan file is normally stored in the SD Card inserted into the Total Station. The scan file name will help you to locate the correct file, if you wish you manually transfer the file.

Transfer Scan File to Local Project Folder:

Evidence Recorder can automatically transfer the scan file from SD Card/Total Station to the local project folder on your PC/Tablet.

The transfer may take longer time if the size of the scan file is very large. You can also manually copy the scan files into your project folder. (Requires "Scans" sub folder)

For Example:

C:\Users\<-

UserName>\Documents\MicroSurvey\EvidenceRecorder\Scenes\<ProjectName>\Scans*.sdb

Create HeXML File:

You can export the project into HeXML format directly. If this option is skipped, you can also go to "Import/Export" menu, and choose "Export LandXML" option

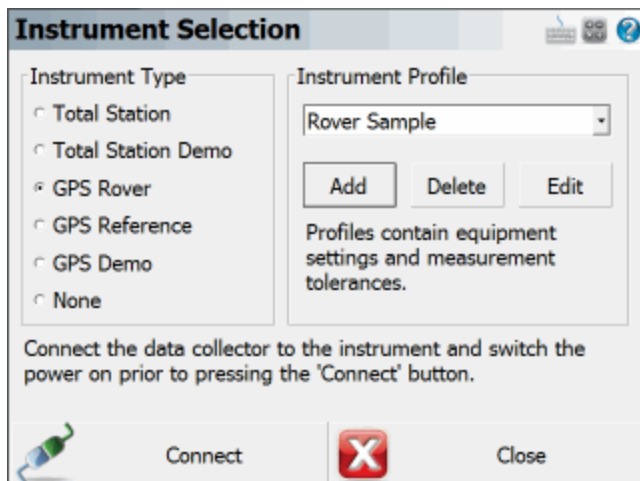
If there are multiple scan files in the same project, and the same xml file name is used. The xml file will be overwritten to include all scan files currently in the project folder

Select GPS Profile

This is where you can create a new profile for each rover/base receiver you will be using.

There are two ways to get to this screen.

1. You can open the profile screen for your rover or base by going to Main Menu | Settings | Instrument Selection. This will display the Instrument Selection screen which contains the GPS Rover and GPS Reference profiles.
2. If you already have your instrument type set to GPS and you're currently in the map view, you can press the **Settings** button on the [GPS toolbar](#). This will display the Instrument Selection screen which contains the GPS Rover and GPS Reference profiles.



Editing Profiles

On the Add Profile screen you can enter any name you wish for the profile. Profiles can be copied from one data collector to another, so you can have a "Master" profile file that is sent to all crews so they can quickly set up systems.

When you're ready to edit the settings for the profile you have selected, press the **Edit** button. This will display the GPS configuration screen for the selected rover or reference profile.

Refer to the [GPS Configuration \(Reference\)](#) or [GPS Configuration \(Rover\)](#) topics for more information on the settings available for your profiles.

Your profiles are stored in the file ...\\MicroSurvey EVR9\\Programs\\MSURVEY.INI so once you have configured one data collector, you can simply copy this file onto your other data collectors to make the profiles available on them. This file should also be backed up for easy recovery.

Using Profiles for Connection

Once you've created your profiles, you can use them to connect to your receiver. Simply select the correct GPS Mode, either GPS Rover or GPS Reference, then select the profile you want to use in the profile list.

When you've physically connected the your data collector to your receiver, press the **Connect** button to start the connection process.

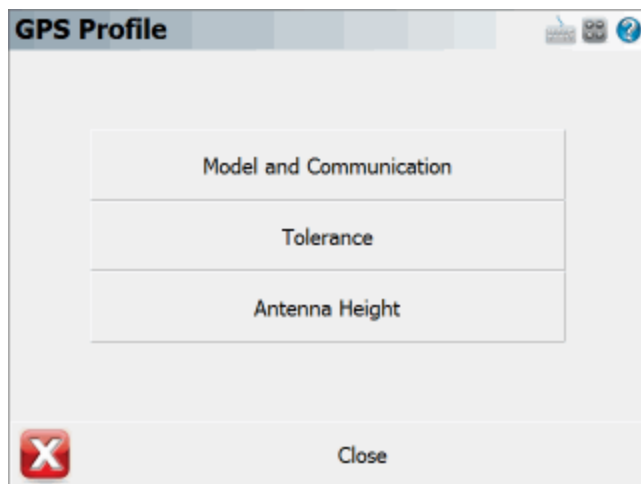
If it isn't successful you will see the following message "Could not detect GPS receiver! Please check configuration, cable and power." You can then press the Auto Detect Baud Rate button to force Evidence Recorder to automatically try different baud rate settings. If this doesn't work you should review your profile settings and ensure that you have the correct COM port selected and that you have your data collector connected to the correct port on the GPS receiver.

GPS Demo

The GPS Demo Mode contains a profile called "RTK Demo" which can be used to explore the GPS Capabilities of Evidence Recorder without being connected to a receiver.

GPS Reference Profile

The GPS Configuration for your reference unit is accessed from the [Instrument Selection](#) screen by selecting GPS Reference as the Instrument Type, then pressing the **Edit** button to configure your selected GPS Reference Profile.



Model and Communication

This is used to select the Make and Model of receiver, the port that the data collector is connected to and the mode that the current receiver will play in the RTK process. Please see the [GPS Model and Communication](#) topic for more information.

Tolerance

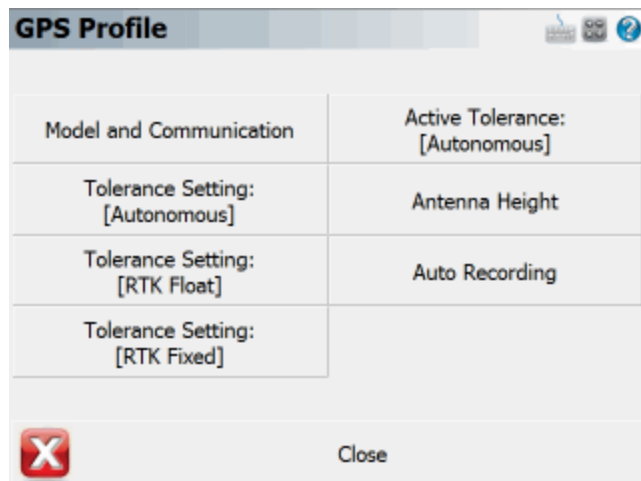
This is used to enter information about the location of the reference (base) station. Please see the [GPS Tolerance \(Reference\)](#) topic for more information.

Antenna Height

The antenna settings are used to calculate or enter the height of the antenna phase center above the ground. Please see the [GPS Antenna Configuration](#) topic for more information.

GPS Rover Profile

The GPS Configuration for your rover unit is accessed from the [Instrument Selection](#) screen by selecting GPS Rover as the Instrument Type, then pressing the **Edit** button to configure your selected GPS Rover Profile.



GPS Profile	
Model and Communication	Active Tolerance: [Autonomous]
Tolerance Setting: [Autonomous]	Antenna Height
Tolerance Setting: [RTK Float]	Auto Recording
Tolerance Setting: [RTK Fixed]	

 Close

Model and Communication

This is used to select the Make and Model of receiver, and the port settings that the data collector will connect with. Please see the [GPS Model and Communication](#) topic for more information.

Tolerance Setting: [Description] (x3)

The three configurable tolerance modes are used to enter information used in computing the position of the rover once a measurement has begun. Please see the [GPS Tolerance Modes \(Rover\)](#) topic for more information.

Active Tolerance: [Description]

This displays the current tolerance mode, which can be changed at any time during your survey by selecting the [GPS Settings](#) button in the [GPS toolbar](#). Please see the [GPS Tolerance Modes \(Rover\)](#) topic for more information

Antenna Height

The antenna settings are used to calculate or enter the height of the antenna phase center above the ground. Please see the [GPS Antenna Configuration](#) topic for more information.

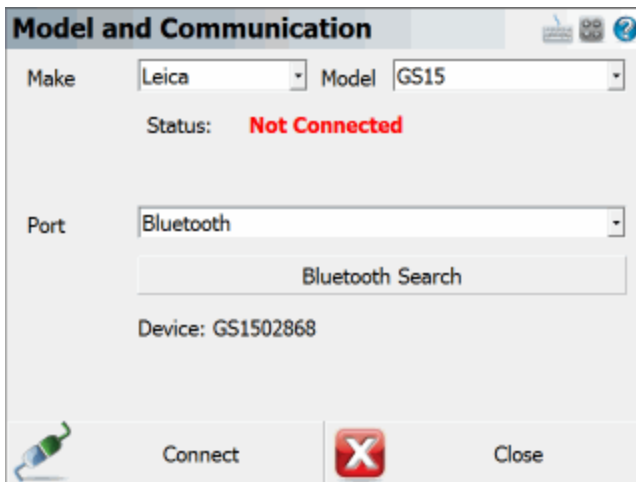
Auto Recording

The Auto Recording settings are used for collecting data in a "Kinematic" mode. The receiver can automatically log a point every X distance or Y seconds. The user simply selects what option they prefer to use for logging Kinematic data and start the survey. Keep in mind while collecting data at higher velocities that Evidence Recorder receives position updates from the GPS at a maximum rate of once per second.

GPS Model and Communication

The Model and Communication settings are used to select the Make and Model of receiver, the port that the data collector is connected to, and other communication parameters.

Cable Connection



Model and Communication

Make: Model:

Status: **Not Connected**

Port:

Device: GS1502868

Model

Specify the make and model of receiver you are connecting to.

Sensor Port

If your receiver has more than one data port, specify the port on the receiver that the data collector will be connected to.

Port

Specify the port on your data collector (usually COM1) that you will connect a cable between your receiver and this port.

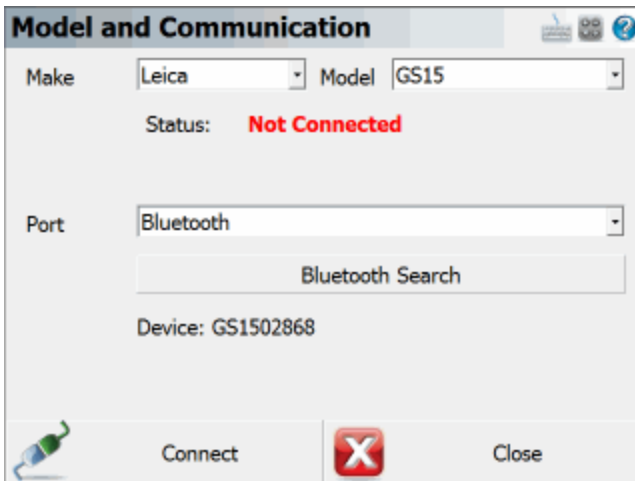
Baud Rate, Data Bits, Parity, Stop Bits

Specify the communication parameters for the serial connection. If you're unsure of what baud rate your receiver is set to you might want to set the baud rate to Auto Detect. This will force Evidence Recorder to check for communication using all the baud rate settings and if successful, it will set this baud rate in the profile.

Bluetooth Connection

Port

On many data collectors you can select Bluetooth as your communication port. If you select the Bluetooth port, the traditional serial communication options (Baud Rate, Data Bits, Stop Bits, Parity) will be replaced with a Bluetooth Search function.



Please note that not all bluetooth-enabled devices will list Bluetooth as a Port option. In some cases you must configure and use a virtual COM port through Windows CE's internal Bluetooth Settings, for example COM6.

Bluetooth Search

If you set the port to Bluetooth, a **Bluetooth Search** button will appear. Press the search button to find the device you want to communicate wirelessly with. All devices within range will be listed, choose the one you want to use

The device you selected will be saved into your instrument profile for future use so you do not need to Search every time.

Bluetooth PIN

After initiating a Bluetooth connection, you will be prompted to enter the PIN (passkey) for the instrument you are connecting to. If your instrument does not need one just leave it blank and continue by pressing OK.

The PIN you enter will be encrypted and stored in your instrument profile.

GNSS RTCM Transformation

GNSS | Link Configuration | RTCM Transformation

RTCM Transformation messages can be utilized to provide horizontal and vertical systems from RTK network using RTCM 3.1 or higher correction messages.

Note: Ensure **Reference Network** type is not set to **None**. The caster requires your current location information.

RTCM Transformation Information

Information Table:

The information table displays the mountpoint name, current status of the incoming corrections, and coordinate systems information received from the NTRIP Caster.

NTRIP casters typically do not send out RTCM transformation messages at the same frequency as RTK correction messages. A 90 seconds waiting time is reserved to receive the messages.

Please ensure the Target System field is what you would expect at current location.

If no the transformation messages are not received after 90s, the **Options** screen will automatically show up, which allows you to select a valid predefined coordinate system or choose a different mount point.

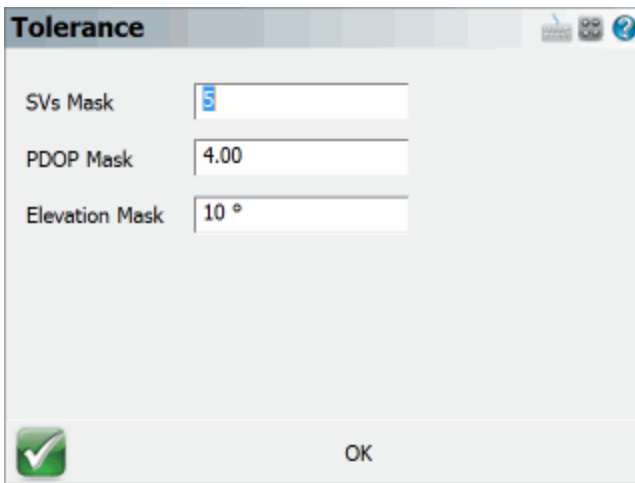
OK:

The OK button will only become active if valid transformation messages are received.

Options:

- **Coordinate System** - Predefined coordinate systems can be used if you no longer wish to use RTCM transformation. Horizontal and Vertical system can be selected separately.
- **Mount Points** - A different mount points can be selected if the current mount point do not support RTCM messages.
- **Go Back** - Allows you go back to the previous screen and continue waiting for incoming messages
- **Cancel** - This button will exit the link configuration work flow and bring out the map view. You will need to select a valid coordinate system before taking measurement if the RTCM transformation messages are not received.

GPS Tolerance (Reference)



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Tolerance". It contains three input fields: "SVs Mask" with the value "5", "PDOP Mask" with the value "4.00", and "Elevation Mask" with the value "10 °". At the bottom left is a green checkmark icon, and at the bottom right is an "OK" button.

SVs Mask

The SVs Mask setting is used to establish the minimum number of satellites that are necessary to produce a solution with a valid position. The SVs must also pass the elevation mask test to be included in this number for the calculation of the rover position.

PDOP Mask

The PDOP mask is used to control the acceptable geometry of the satellites used to compute the RTK position. If the PDOP value exceeds this number, the user will not be eligible to collect an RTK position.

Elevation Mask

The Elevation Mask is used to determine which satellites to use in computing the differential corrections to broadcast to the rover(s). Satellites below this value will not be used in the solution. Elevation mask angles are typically equal or less than the elevation mask set for the rover system.

Reference ID

The Reference ID will be used by the rover to determine which differential corrections it is receiving (if you have more than one reference station in use). This is useful information to know if one of the base stations goes down or experiences problems during an RTK session.

GPS Tolerance Modes (Rover)

The tolerance modes are used to enter information used in computing the position of the rover once a GPS measurement has begun.

You can define three different tolerance modes that can be selected from the [GPS Tasks](#) menu while surveying. Tolerance modes are used to ensure that certain criteria are being met every time you take a measurement. The reason for three different settings is to allow you to specify different tolerances for different types of measurements you might need to make. For example, control points would need to be measured more precisely than those used for topographic measurements.

Description

This is where you can assign a "friendly" description to your three tolerance modes to make them more easily identifiable to you - for example "Control Points" or "Topo Points".

Masks

Solution

Each observation must be of the specified solution type (or better). You can select from several Solution modes depending on your receiver make and model, these can be:

- Autonomous
- WAAS (Wide Area Augmentation System)
- DGPS (differential code solution)
- RTK Float (differential carrier solution)
- RTK Fixed (differential carrier solution)

Please refer to your GPS manufacturer's documentation for the solutions' respective positional accuracy.

Elevation Mask

The elevation mask is used to filter out satellites that are close to the horizon and are, thus, unreliable. Typical elevation mask angles can range between 10° and 20°.

PDOP

The PDOP (Position Dilution Of Precision) mask is used to control the acceptable geometry of the satellites used to compute the solution. If the PDOP value exceeds this number, the user will not be eligible to collect a position. Typical PDOP masks are 5 or 6.

Satellites (SVs)

The Satellites mask is used to establish the minimum number of satellites that are necessary to produce a solution with a valid position. Each satellite must also pass the elevation mask test to be included in this number for the calculation of the rover position.

Reference ID

The Reference ID is used to tell the Rover which reference station (base) to use for the differential corrections. If "Any" is selected, it will use the first correction set identified for all future position solutions.

Standard Deviation

Standard Deviation - Horizontal

Evidence Recorder will use the instantaneous Standard Deviation values that your receiver is outputting to determine if the measurement can proceed. If the instantaneous Standard Deviation values are equal to or less than the values you've specified, then the measurement can proceed. Once this happens, Evidence Recorder will start averaging the measurements and will compute and display averaged Standard Deviation values. These averaged Standard Deviation values must then remain equal to or less than the values you've specified for the entire duration of the measurement, for the measurement to be accepted as being within the specified tolerances.

This is your maximum acceptable horizontal standard deviation to be maintained during the point measurement.

Standard Deviation - Vertical

This is your maximum acceptable vertical standard deviation to be maintained during the point measurement.

Point Tolerance

Point Tolerance - Observations

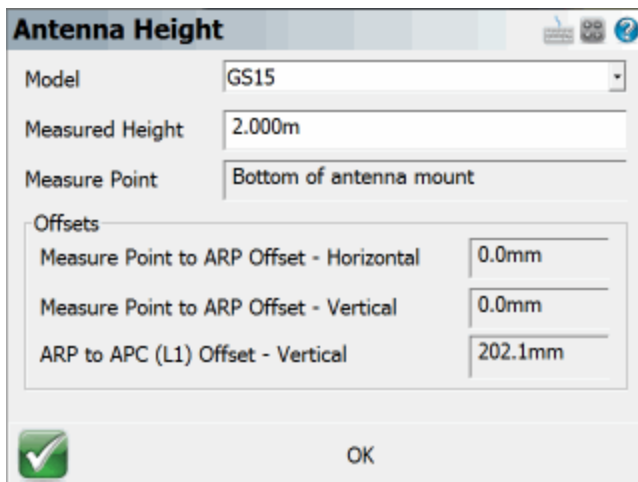
This is the minimum number of observations that the receiver must collect and average in order to compute a solution.

Point Tolerance - Time

This is the minimum time duration that the receiver must collect and average observations in order to compute a solution.

GPS Antenna Height

The antenna settings are used to calculate or enter the height of the antenna phase center above the ground. You can enter the true height (if it is known) or enter the measured height and any horizontal or vertical offsets and have Evidence Recorder calculate the antenna height for you.



Depending on the model you've selected, manufacturer specific antenna offsets will be listed. If your specific antenna model is not listed, you can select "User Supplied" and specify appropriate offset measurements. For more detailed information about these offsets, refer to your users guide for your receiver.

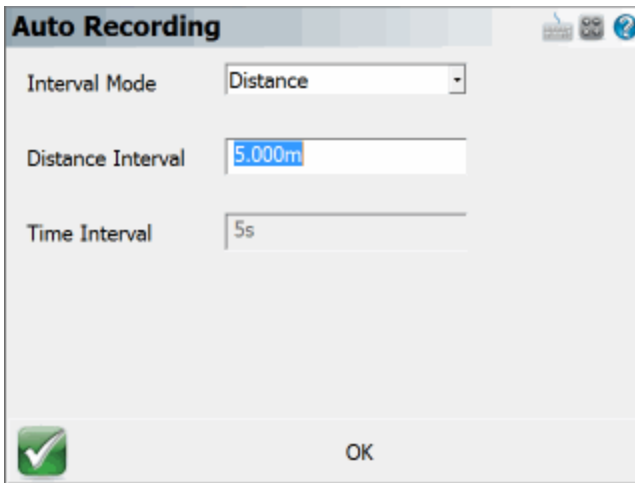
The true height is simply computed by the use of Pythagoras' theorem:

$$\text{TrueHeight} = \text{VerticalOffset} + \sqrt{(\text{MeasuredHeight})^2 - (\text{HorizontalOffset})^2}$$

You can change the true or measured antenna height at any time, on the [Store Point](#) screen when storing your GPS shots.

GPS Auto Recording

The Auto Recording settings are used when collecting GPS data in a "Kinematic" mode. The receiver can automatically log a point every X distance or Y seconds. The user simply selects what option they prefer to use for logging Kinematic data and start the survey. Keep in mind while collecting data at higher velocities that Evidence Recorder receives position updates from the GPS at a maximum rate of once per second.



Once configured, Auto-Recording is activated on the [Rover Measurement Mode](#) screen after pressing the Measure button:

Once activated, Auto-Recording is deactivated by pressing the Measure button again.

Overview - Reference Receiver

Before you can start your GPS survey, there are a few things you need to confirm and setup.

Profile and Coordinate System Files

- You will need to determine and select the correct [coordinate system](#) and optional [geoid model](#) to use for your GPS survey work.
- Create a profile for your reference (base) and rover receivers. Profiles contain receiver settings such as baud rates and tolerance masks that are used by Evidence Recorder. Refer to the [Reference Configuration](#) and [Rover Configuration](#) topics for more information.

Reference (Base) Connection Procedure

1. Main Menu | Settings | [Instrument Selection](#)
2. Choose **GPS Reference** as the type of instrument.
3. If you have not already done so, you need to create a profile for your reference receiver. If you have a profile already defined, select it now and then press **Connect**.

-
4. You will then be prompted with the [Correction Link Settings](#) where you can configure your radio settings. Press the **Connect** button to turn on your radio to prepare to begin broadcasting corrections.
 5. If your profile is configured properly, you will see a message, "Press the measure button at any time to configure the reference receiver with a position and to enable the transmission of corrections." Select **Continue**.
 6. You will now see the map screen. On the GPS Toolbar you can review information about receiver, sky plot list, display current position, and review DOP values.
 7. When you're ready to program a position into the base receiver, all you need to do is press the **Measure** button on the [GPS Toolbar](#). There are several different options you can use to program the position and they're described in more detail in the [Program Reference Receiver](#) topic.
 8. After you program the receiver with a position you can disconnect the data collector.

Select Reference Position Modes

Main Menu | Measure Modes

GNSS Toolbar | Measure Modes

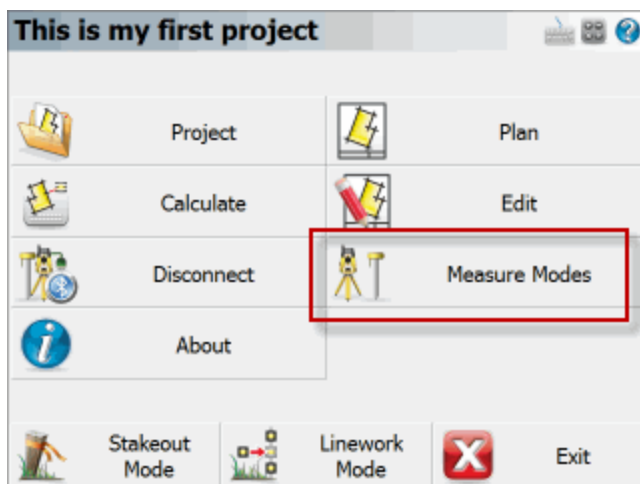
GNSS Measurement Modes - Reference (Base) Receiver

When you connect to a reference receiver you need to program a position into the receiver so accurate positions can be transmitted to the rover.

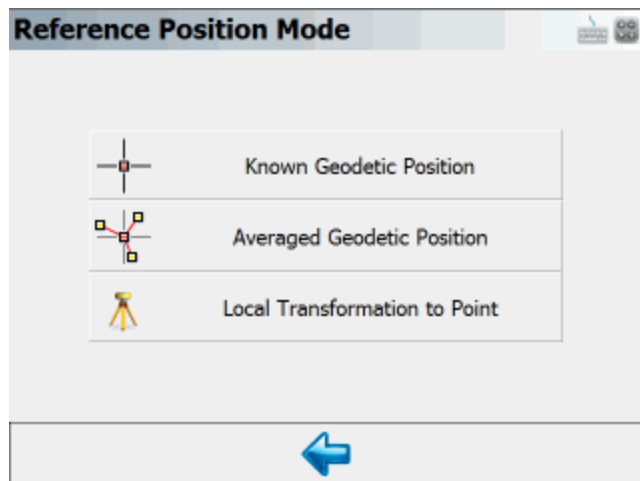
You can access three different measurement modes to program your receiver with a position by selecting the Measure Modes button in the main menu, or the measure modes button on the GNSS instrument toolbar.

Main Menu - Measure Modes

GNSS Toolbar - Reference Measure Modes



Selecting the Measure Modes button will display three options:



1. Known Geodetic Position
2. Averaged Geodetic Position
3. Local Transformation to Point

Please refer to the [Reference Position Modes](#) topic for more information about what the different modes can do for you.

Overview Reference Position Modes

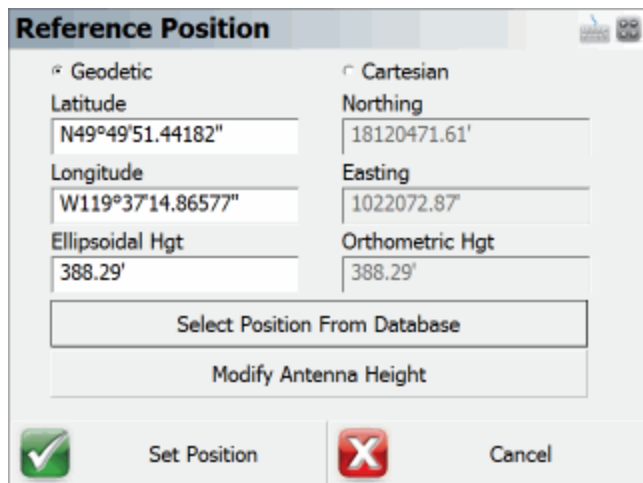
There are three different modes available for programming a position into your reference receiver.

When you're ready to program your base receiver with a position you need to select the reference position mode then to start the process press the **Measure** button on the [GPS toolbar](#). Please review the following sections for a detailed explanation of how each mode is used.

Please see the [GNSS Measurement Modes](#) topic for details on how to access these modes.

Known Geodetic Position

Use this when you know the geodetic position of the point the base is setup on. You have two options, you can program it with a known Geodetic or known Cartesian Coordinate.



The image shows a software dialog box titled "Reference Position". It has two tabs: "Geodetic" (selected) and "Cartesian". Under the "Geodetic" tab, there are three input fields: "Latitude" with the value "N49°49'51.44182\"", "Longitude" with the value "W119°37'14.86577\"", and "Ellipsoidal Hgt" with the value "388.29'". Under the "Cartesian" tab, there are two input fields: "Northing" with the value "18120471.61'" and "Easting" with the value "1022072.87'". Below these fields are two buttons: "Select Position From Database" and "Modify Antenna Height". At the bottom of the dialog are three buttons: a green checkmark icon, "Set Position", and a red X icon, "Cancel".

Reference Position	
☒ Geodetic	☐ Cartesian
Latitude N49°49'51.44182"	Northing 18120471.61'
Longitude W119°37'14.86577"	Easting 1022072.87'
Ellipsoidal Hgt 388.29'	Orthometric Hgt 388.29'
Select Position From Database	
Modify Antenna Height	
	
Set Position	Cancel

Geodetic Coordinates

Enter the know Latitude, Longitude and Ellipsoidal Height for your base setup. The coordinates you enter here will be programmed into the receiver.

Cartesian Coordinates

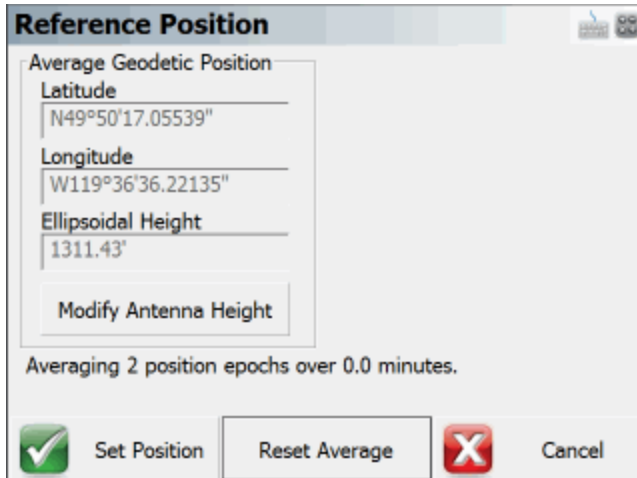
Cartesian coordinates can be SPCS, UTM coordinates or any other grid system as long as it matches the horizontal and vertical system you've defined in your GPS profile. You can not enter local coordinates as Cartesian coordinates! Doing so will cause a warning message to be displayed indicating that the coordinates you entered do not fall inside the GPS grid files you have loaded on your data collector.

Select Position from Database

This allows you to choose a point a number of different ways. The point you select must be a grid coordinate such as a SPCS or UTM coordinate.

Averaged Geodetic Position

Use this to measure and average an Autonomous Geodetic position.



The dialog box titled "Reference Position" contains the following elements:

- Average Geodetic Position** (Section Header)
- Latitude** input field: N49°50'17.05539"
- Longitude** input field: W119°36'36.22135"
- Ellipsoidal Height** input field: 1311.43'
- Modify Antenna Height** button
- Status text: Averaging 2 position epochs over 0.0 minutes.
- Buttons at the bottom:  **Set Position**, **Reset Average**,  **Cancel**

It is up to you to determine how many observations or the duration of time you want to wait before accepting the averaged position. At any time you can restart the process by pressing the **Reset Average** button.

If you press **Set Position**, your receiver will be programmed with the new position and you will have the option of storing a point's position in the database.

Local Transform to Point

Use this to compute a one point transformation so your GPS derived measurements can be referenced into a local system.

Reference Position	
Average Geodetic Position	
Latitude	N49°50'17.00798"
Longitude	W119°36'36.20466"
Ellipsoidal Height	1325.21'
Modify Antenna Height	
Local Transformation Point	
Point ID	1
Northing	100.00'
Easting	100.00'
Elevation	100.00'
Averaging 19 position epochs over 0.3 minutes.	
Set Position	Reset Average Cancel

When this option is used, Evidence Recorder starts receiving data and computes an averaged Autonomous position for the base receiver. The current position, how many epochs it has received and the total elapsed time is displayed on the screen.

It is up to you to determine how many observations or the duration of time you want to wait before accepting the averaged position. At any time you can restart the process by pressing the **Reset Average** button.

You then have to define a local coordinate that you want to localize to. It is assumed that the point exists in your project. If it doesn't, simply double tap the Point ID field which will open the point tool-bar. You can use the new option to create a point or if it exists select it from the map or from the list.

When you press Set Position, Evidence Recorder will save the averaged location into the point database. It will then compute a one point transformation which is simply a horizontal and vertical shift from the grid coordinate system into your local system, as well as a combined scale factor. All future GPS measurements will have your new transformation parameters applied automatically.

Overview - Rover Receiver

Before you can start your GPS survey, there are a few things you need to confirm and setup.

Profile and Coordinate System Files

- You will need to determine and select the correct [coordinate system](#) and optional [geoid model](#) to use for your GPS survey work.

- Create a profile for your reference (base) and rover receivers. Profiles contain receiver settings such as baud rates and tolerance masks that are used by Evidence Recorder. Refer to the [Reference Configuration](#) and [Rover Configuration](#) topics for more information.

Rover Connection Procedure

1. Main Menu | Settings | [Instrument Selection](#)
2. Choose **GPS Rover** as the type of instrument.
3. If you have not already done so, you need to create a profile for your rover receiver. If you have a profile already defined, select it now and then press **Connect**.
4. You will then be prompted with the [Correction Link Settings](#) where you can configure your radio or modem settings. Press the **Connect** button to turn on your radio or modem to begin receiving corrections.
5. With a successful connection you will see the map screen. The Measure button might say **"No Link"** to begin with, then switch to **"RTK Float"** and finally to **"RTK Fixed"**.
6. To record a position, simply press the **Measure** button on the [GPS toolbar](#). Refer to the [GPS Measurement](#) topic for more information.

Rover Measurement Modes

Main Menu | Survey Modes

GNSS Toolbar | Measure Modes

GNSS Measurement Modes - Rover Receiver

When you connect to a rover receiver you will have a choice of measurement modes available to you.

You can access three different measurement modes to program your receiver with a position by selecting the Measure Modes button in the main menu, or the measure modes button on the GNSS instrument toolbar.

Main Menu - Survey Modes

**GNSS Toolbar - Rover Measure
Modes**



Selecting the Measure Modes button will display seven options:

1. [Standard Measurement](#)
2. [Auto Record Points](#)
3. [Local Transformation Point](#)
4. [Check Point](#)

Rover Measurement

When you have connected to your rover and you press the measure button on the [GPS Toolbar](#) you will see the GPS Measurement Screen

The measurement process works like this:

Once the satellites have been filtered out based on your [tolerance settings](#), Evidence Recorder will only begin collecting measurement data if all your tolerances are met. During the measurement process you might see that certain tolerances are not being satisfied, this is normal. Evidence Recorder will continue monitoring the measurement data and will accept measurements that pass the mask criteria.

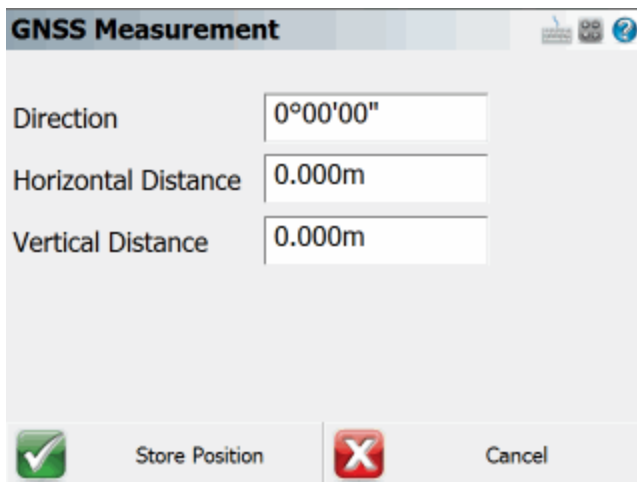
Once the tolerances have been met, the position status will change to an **Accepted** position. Prior to accepting the position, the user can look at the RMS values for the computed position and determine if they wish to accept or reject the measurement. Pressing Cancel will exit the measure function

without storing any data. Pressing [Store Position](#) will accept the position and store it in the database. You can change your true or measured Antenna Height on the Store Point screen.

By default, if you have some transformation parameters defined, they will be applied to the measurement prior to storing it.

GNSS Measurement Mode Offset

When this mode is enabled after you complete the measurement you will be prompted to enter a direction, horizontal distance and vertical distance. These three entries will be used to compute a new position for the offset point.

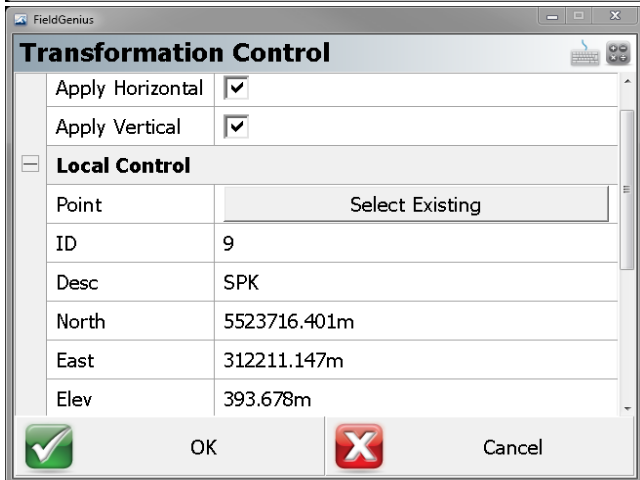
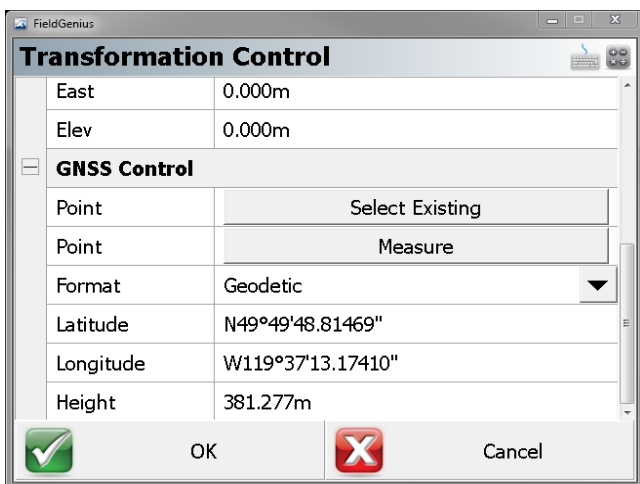
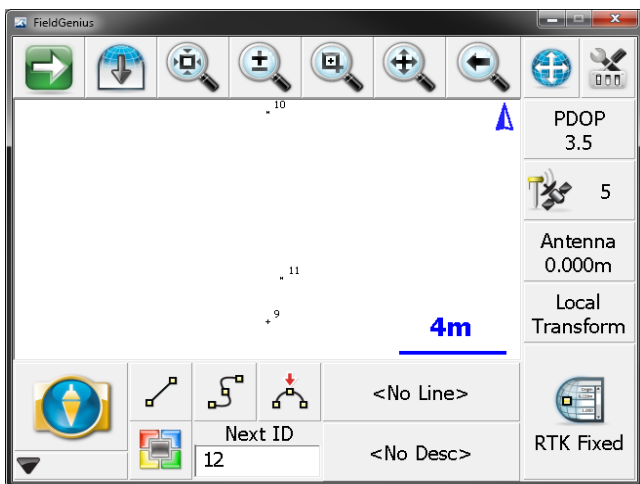


The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "GNSS Measurement". It contains three input fields: "Direction" with the value "0°00'00\"", "Horizontal Distance" with the value "0.000m", and "Vertical Distance" with the value "0.000m". At the bottom, there are two buttons: "Store Position" with a green checkmark icon and "Cancel" with a red X icon.

pMeasurement Mode Local Transformation Point

Use For Local Transformation

To help you localize quickly, you can use this option. What will happen is after the measurement has been stored, we will automatically add this point to the GPS Local Transformation GNSS Control section. The point will be considered a measured point, and so you will be asked to define the control point that this point is to be constrained to in the above Local Control section. You can then indicate whether you want to apply only the horizontal and/or the vertical information to the Transformation.



Example: You've localized to a local system using a one point transformation so you can visually see in the map where your other points should be. You then decide to stake one of them so you can navigate to it. When you find the second point, you want to measure it's location and use it as one of the transformation points. Simply turn on the "Use for Local Transformation" parameter and Evidence Recorder will automatically store the point's Cartesian position, and automatically add it to your transformation points list.

When you use this option, Evidence Recorder will automatically ignore any transformation parameter you have defined and will store the "raw" GPS derived measurement.

Please review the [Local Transformation](#) topic for more details.

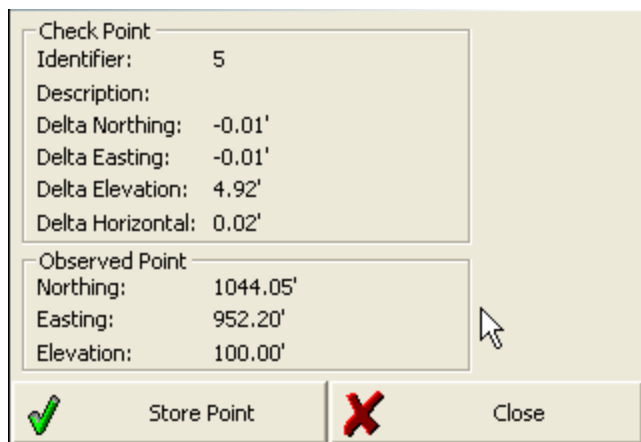
Check Point

[Main Menu](#) | [Mapping Methods](#) | [Check Point](#)

Use this to measure a check shot to an existing point. When you start the command you will see the point chooser appear where you can create a new point or pick an existing one from a list or from the screen. After you choose your point you will be ready to measure. You will note the measure mode will be set to **Check Pnt** and if you need to cancel the operation you can do it by pressing the measure mode button and choose to cancel it.

Check Point Summary

When you're ready to record the shot press the **Measure** button on the instrument toolbar. You will be presented with a screen that compares your measured values to the ones that were computed for the check shot point.



Check Point	
Identifier:	5
Description:	
Delta Northing:	-0.01'
Delta Easting:	-0.01'
Delta Elevation:	4.92'
Delta Horizontal:	0.02'

Observed Point	
Northing:	1044.05'
Easting:	952.20'
Elevation:	100.00'

 Store Point  Close

The deltas that are displayed are computed by subtracting the shot coordinates from the known coordinates. In other words if you add the deltas to the shot point coordinates you will end up at the known point.

Store Point

Pressing this will exit the function and write several notes to the raw file summarizing your check shot, and allow you to store the shot using the [Store/Edit Point](#) screen.

```
--Check Point
-- Check Point ID: 110
-- Check Point dNorthing: -4.59'
-- Check Point dEasting: -1.82'
-- Check Point dElevation: -4.96'
-- Check Point dHorizontal: 4.94'
-- Observed Values: HA 45°00'00.0" VA 90°00'00.0" SD 23.00' HR 5.00'
-- Observed Point Northing: 5016.26'
-- Observed Point Easting: 5016.26'
-- Observed Point Elevation: 95.00'
```

Close

This will exit the check shot function and not write anything to the raw file or storing a new point.

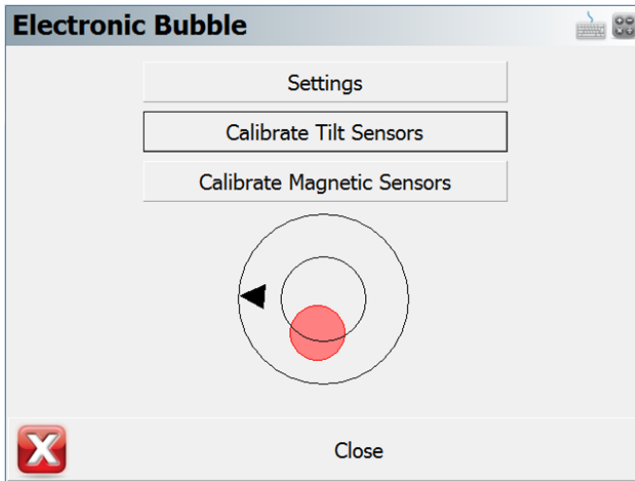
Electronic Bubble / Tilt Survey

The Electronic Bubble utilizes MEMS sensors in the GNSS receiver to compensate for the antenna pole tilt.

This feature improves the GNSS point collection workflow by:

- Vertical and horizontal distance introduced by the pole tilt will be compensated automatically if desired.
- Eliminate the need to focus on the conventional bubble on the GNSS pole while taking measurements.
- Stop user from saving points if the pole tilt angle is greater than tolerance level.

The Electronic Bubble feature requires calibrations before being used in production works. With a supported GNSS receiver connected, Settings and Calibrations related to the Electronic Bubble can be located in the **Instrument Settings -> Sensor Configure -> Electronic Bubble** screen.



Settings

Electronic Bubble

Toggles Electronic Bubble feature ON/OFF

Tilt Compensated

Toggles tilt compensation ON/OFF

With tilt compensation turned on, tilt distance will be added into the calculation of GNSS measurements.

Tilt Rejection

Toggles tilt rejection ON/OFF

With tilt rejection turned on, user will not be able to store points if the tilt angle exceeds the specified rejection tolerance.

Tilt Rejection (Deg)

Tilt rejection tolerance in degrees. User can only store points if only the tilt angle is below the set limit.

Magnetic Declination

Specify the angle between magnetic north and true north

- *Computed*- Magnetic Declination is computed using International Geomagnetic Reference Field (IGRF-12) model.
- *User* - Enter a desired magnetic declination value.

Calibrate Sensors

Calibrate Tilt Sensors

This procedure calibrates the internal tilt sensor, and stores the zeroed the vertical angle.

1. Click “Calibrate Tilt Sensors” button to enter the procedure.
2. Level the GNSS receiver with a calibrated reference such as a bipod or tripod.
3. Ensure the GNSS receiver is in a stable plumb position.
4. Click “Calibrate” button to finish the tilt sensor calibration.

Note: Control panel on the GNSS receiver must be facing the operator when using the electronic bubble.

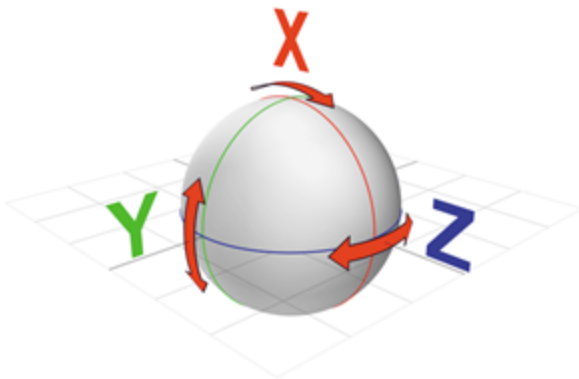
Calibrate Magnetic Sensors

This procedure calibrates the internal magnetic sensor.

1. Click “Calibrate Magnetic Sensors” button to enter the procedure.
2. Ensure the GNSS receiver is away from any artificial magnetic sources.
3. Click “Calibrate” button to start the magnetic calibration.
4. **Slowly** rotate the GNSS receiver about its 3 axes to fill up the progress bar.
 - Note that the progress bar will not move unless the instrument is being rotated.

This demonstrate the rotation axes:

- Longitudinal Axis (Roll)
- Lateral Axis (Pitch)
- Vertical Axis (Yaw)



We recommend to perform both calibration procedures on regular basis to ensure the reliability and accuracy of the Electronic Bubble. Magnetic Sensor may require more frequent calibration than tilt sensor depending on your calibration location and distance travelled. Consult with your GNSS receiver manufacture representative for more information regarding calibrate internals.

Settings

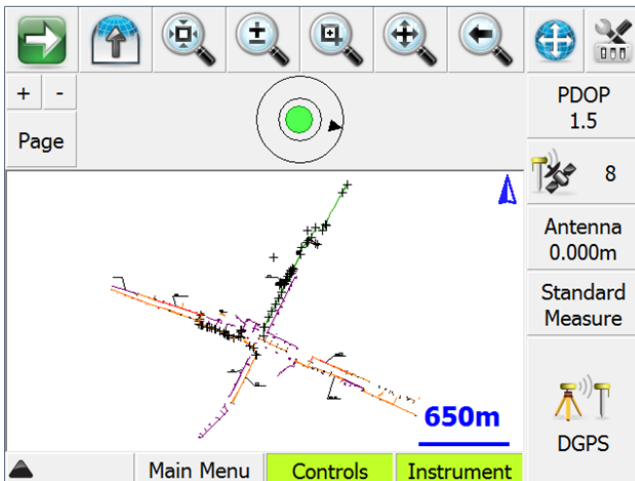
Electronic Bubble

After calibration, the electronic bubble can be found in two places.

- Observation toolbar (One of the pages)
- GNSS Measurement screen

The black arrow shows the direction of magnetic north.

The bubble is green if the instrument is plumb, and red if the instrument is tilted beyond certain degree.



On the GNSS Measurement Screen, if the Tilt Rejection is turned on and current tilt angle exceeds the preset rejection value, the Store Position button will be deactivated and GNSS measurements will not be averaged until the GNSS receiver turns to a plumb and stable position.

GNSS Measurement

Solution: DGPS

Satellites: 8

PDOP: 1.52

Real Time

Status: Tilt Rejected

Horizontal StdDev: 0.422m

Vertical StdDev: 0.604m

Post Process

Status:

Total Time:

Store Position

Cancel

GPS Toolbar



Once the user has selected a GPS receiver and communication has been established, the GPS toolbar will appear on the [main interface](#).

NOTE: You will only see the GPS toolbar if you selected GPS Reference, GPS Rover, or GPS Demo as your instrument type. If you have selected a GPS Profile but are not yet connected to the receiver, most of these buttons will be disabled.

Auto-Center

Single-tapping this button will re-center the display on the current position of your receiver.

Double-tapping this button will set the system into an auto-pan mode where the display will always be centered on the current position. When active, single-tapping this button once more will disable the auto-pan mode.



GPS Settings

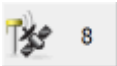
If you press this button while you are connected to a receiver, you will see the [GPS Settings](#) screen. At any time this button can be used to adjust or stop your GPS survey.

If you press this button without being connected to a receiver, you will see the [Instrument Selection](#) screen where you can edit your GPS profiles or connect to your receiver.



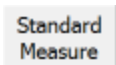
DOP Values

This displays the current DOP (Dilution of Precision) values. Pressing this button will cycle through the PDOP, HDOP and VDOP. The PDOP is the default setting as this is most often used to ascertain the quality of the satellite geometry.



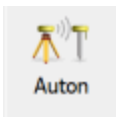
Satellite Plot/Satellite List

This shows the total number of satellites the receiver is currently using in its solution. Press this to view a [sky plot](#) of the current SVs visible to the rover, or to access the [Satellite List](#).



GNSS Measurement Modes Menu

This menu contains all the available measurement modes that can be used with your GNSS receiver. Please review the GNSS Measurement Modes topic for more details.



Measure

This is the measure button.

This button also indicates the current solution type. This tells the user if the solution is Fixed, Float, WAAS, DGPS or Autonomous. This button will also indicate to the user if the corrections from the reference station have been discontinued by denoting "No Link".

Please refer to the [GPS Measurement](#) topic for more information.

If you are using a conventional non-robotic total station, please see the [Instrument Toolbar](#) topic.

If you are using a robotic total station, please see the [Robotic Instrument Toolbar](#) topic.

Correction Link

The Link Configure screen is used to configure the radio or GSM link for transmitting or receiving RTK corrections. The mode will vary depending on your receiver type. The Setup button allows the user to go into further device details including channels and frequencies for radios and GSM modems.

If you need to connect to a NTRIP caster, you can also access that in the setup screen.

Accessing Link Configure

To access this screen you need to first connect to a reference or rover receiver. Once connected you can access this dialog. Please review the [Reference \(Base\) Receiver Overview](#) or the [Rover Receiver Overview](#) topics for more details about work flow.

Link Configure

Link Device
GSM Module
Setup

Data Format
RTCM 3

Link Communication
GPS Port Port 3
Baud Rate
Parity
Data Bits
Stop Bits
Flow Control

Disconnect Close

Mode

Select the appropriate Correction Link mode, such as Radio, Modem, or None.

Setup

When you press the Setup button on the dialog above, the Radio Setup or Modem Setup screen will appear. Choose the radio make and model from the pulldown and set the channel or frequency, the radio will be programmed by Evidence Recorder to the channel or frequency selected (on some models). If you are using an NTRIP or GPRS server, enter your internet and server credentials here.

Data Format

The message type is used in determining what data streams are sent from the reference station to the rover. They can be RTCM, CMR or a proprietary format.

Communication Parameters

The communication parameters are used for interaction between the receiver and the communication device. Refer to the communication device's documentation for additional instructions and settings.

Correction Information

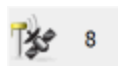
GPS Toolbar | Settings | Link Information

The Correction Information screen is accessed from the [GPS Settings](#) screen. It displays information about the correction message being received by your receiver via a radio link from a base receiver, or via a cellular modem link from an NTRIP or GPRS server.

Link Information	
Information	
Data Age	1.0 sec
Data Quality	26%
Status	RTK corrections being received
Reference	
Latitude	N49°52'09.62324"
Longitude	W119°34'50.85939"
Ellipsoidal Hgt	1554.52'
 OK	

For information on configuring your correction link please see the [Correction Link](#) topic.

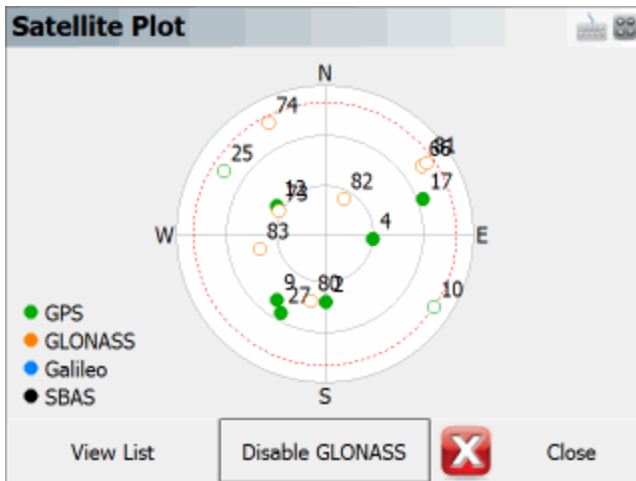
GPS Satellite Plot



To access this screen, press the Satellite button on the GPS Toolbar.

The Satellite Plot screen is a graphical representation of the current GNSS satellite constellation. It shows all visible satellites including both GPS and Glonass. Those satellites being used in the current solution are indicated with a black dot, and those being ignored are indicated with a white dot.

Each satellite is displayed with its PRN (identification) number, and the Elevation Mask specified in your current [Tolerance Mode](#) is indicated by a red dashed line.



Press the **View List** button to open the [Satellite List](#) screen.

Press the **Close** button to return to the map screen.

GPS Satellite List



To access this screen, press the Satellite button on the GPS Toolbar, then press the **View List** button on the [Satellite Plot](#) screen.

The Satellite List screen displays information on the current GNSS satellite constellation. It shows all visible satellites including both GPS and Glonass. Those satellites being used in the current solution are indicated with a checkmark, and those being ignored are indicated with an X.

Each satellite is displayed with its PRN (identification) number, Azimuth and Elevation, and Signal-to-Noise Ratio.

Satellite List			
PRN	System	Azimuth	Elevation
☒ 2	GPS	178°	49°
☒ 4	GPS	95°	60°
☒ 9	GPS	216°	40°
☒ 10	GPS	123°	11°
☒ 12	GPS	300°	56°
☒ 17	GPS	70°	26°
☒ 25	GPS	302°	18°
☒ 27	GPS	209°	35°
View Plot		Disable GLONASS	Close

Press the **View Plot** button to open the [Satellite Plot](#) screen.

Press the **Close** button to return to the map screen.

GPS Settings



The GPS Settings screen is accessed from the [GPS Toolbar](#).

Instrument Settings	
Sensor Configure	Tolerance: [Autonomous]
Sensor Information	Raw Data Logging
Link Configure	Reset RTK Filters
Link Information	Select MountPoint
Position Information	Instrument Disconnect
Cancel	

Sensor Configure

This will allow you to make changes to most of the settings in your [reference](#) or [rover profile](#), including configuring the three tolerance modes, selecting the active tolerance mode, configuring the antenna height, and configuring the auto-recording options. (The Model and Communication options cannot be configured while you are connected to your GPS receiver.)

GPS Profile

Model and Communication

Active Tolerance:
[Autonomous]

Tolerance Setting:
[Autonomous]

Tolerance Setting:
[RTK Float]

Tolerance Setting:
[RTK Fixed]

Antenna Height

Auto Recording

Close

Sensor Information

The [Sensor Information](#) screen displays detailed information about the hardware you are connected to.

Sensor Information

Sensor Model	GS15
Hardware	GS15
Serial Number	1502868
System Version	4.03
Measure Version	6.110
Boot Version	4.00
Battery A	90%
Battery B	None
Battery C	None

OK

Link Configure

This turns on your GPS Receiver's [radio or modem](#) to begin receiving RTK corrections, from either a base receiver or an NTRIP or GPRS server.

Link Configure

Link Device

GSM Module

Setup

Data Format

RTCM 3

Link Communication

GPS PortPort 3

Baud Rate

Parity

Data Bits

Stop Bits

Flow Control

 Disconnect



Close

Link Information

The [Link Information](#) screen displays detailed real-time information about the correction message being received by your receiver via a radio link from a base receiver, or via a cellular modem link from an NTRIP or GPRS server.

Link Information

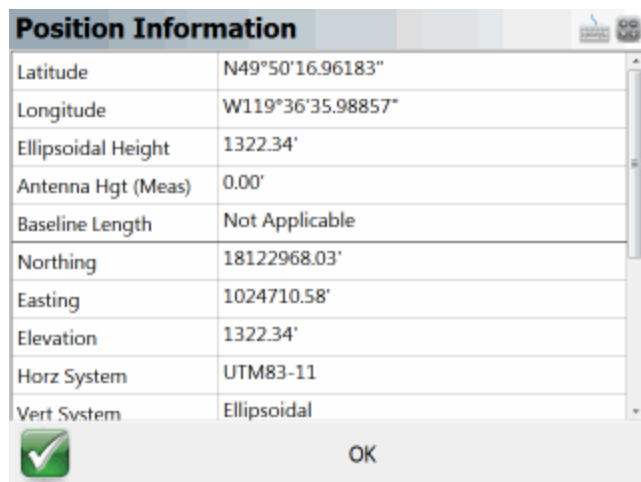
Information	
Data Age	1.0 sec
Data Quality	26%
Status	RTK corrections being received
Reference	
Latitude	N49°52'09.62324"
Longitude	W119°34'50.85939"
Ellipsoidal Hgt	1554.52'



OK

Position Information

The [Position Information](#) screen displays detailed real-time information about your current position.

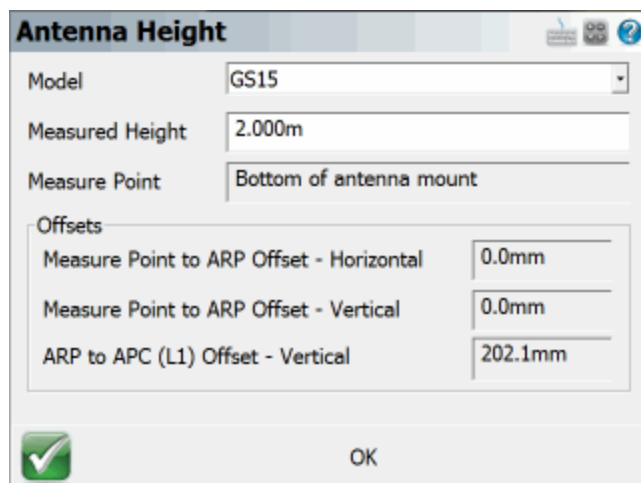


The Position Information screen displays a table of real-time location data. The table includes fields for Latitude, Longitude, Ellipsoidal Height, Antenna Hgt (Meas), Baseline Length, Northing, Easting, Elevation, Horz System, and Vert System. At the bottom, there is a green checkmark icon and an OK button.

Position Information	
Latitude	N49°50'16.96183"
Longitude	W119°36'35.98857"
Ellipsoidal Height	1322.34'
Antenna Hgt (Meas)	0.00'
Baseline Length	Not Applicable
Northing	18122968.03'
Easting	1024710.58'
Elevation	1322.34'
Horz System	UTM83-11
Vert System	Ellipsoidal

Antenna Height

The [Antenna Height](#) screen allows you to configure the antenna height of your GPS receiver.



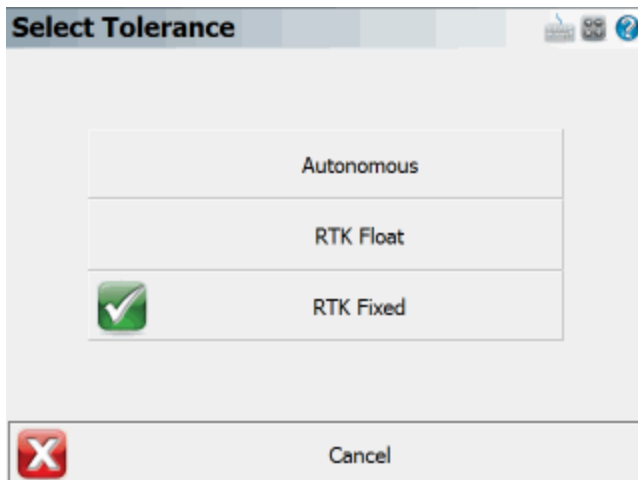
The Antenna Height screen allows configuration of the GPS receiver's antenna height. It includes fields for Model, Measured Height, Measure Point, and a section for Offsets (Measure Point to ARP Offset - Horizontal, Measure Point to ARP Offset - Vertical, and ARP to APC (L1) Offset - Vertical). At the bottom, there is a green checkmark icon and an OK button.

Antenna Height	
Model	GS15
Measured Height	2.000m
Measure Point	Bottom of antenna mount
Offsets	
Measure Point to ARP Offset - Horizontal	0.0mm
Measure Point to ARP Offset - Vertical	0.0mm
ARP to APC (L1) Offset - Vertical	202.1mm

Active Tolerance Mode

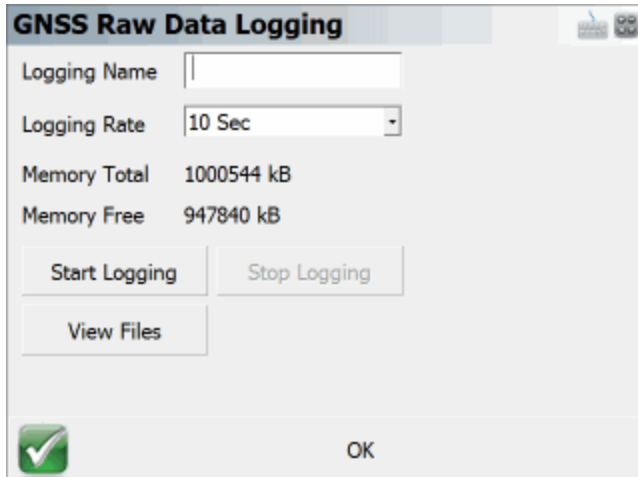
This button indicates which of the three [tolerance modes](#) setup in your Rover Profile is currently being used. Press this button to select the active tolerance mode. To configure the three tolerance modes,

see the "Sensor Configure" button described above.



Raw Data Logging

The [Raw Data Logging](#) screen is used to start and stop raw data logging on your GPS reference or rover receiver, for later post-processing.



Reset RTK Filters

Use this to reset the RTK solution in your receiver, to force it to recalculate a new solution and resolve any ambiguities again from scratch. This has the same effect as inverting your receiver to reset the solution.

Select Mount Point

Use this to select a different mount point from the NTRIP caster you are currently connected to.

Instrument Disconnect

Use this to disconnect from your receiver. If you are connected to a reference receiver, corrections will continue to be transmitted after you disconnect.

Sensor Information

[GPS Toolbar](#) | [Settings](#) | [Sensor Information](#)

The Sensor Information screen is accessed from the [GPS Settings](#) screen. It displays information about the hardware you are connected to. The specific information available will vary by model, but typically you will see the make and model of your receiver, its serial number, battery status, firmware information, and more.

Sensor Information	
Sensor Model	GS15
Hardware	GS15
Serial Number	1502868
System Version	4.03
Measure Version	6.110
Boot Version	4.00
Battery A	90%
Battery B	None
OK	

Position Information

[GPS Toolbar](#) | [Settings](#) | [Position Information](#)

The Position Information screen is accessed from the [GPS Settings](#) screen. It displays detailed information about your current position.

Position Information	
Latitude	N49°50'16.96183"
Longitude	W119°36'35.98857"
Ellipsoidal Height	1322.34'
Antenna Hgt (Meas)	0.00'
Baseline Length	Not Applicable
Northing	18122968.03'
Easting	1024710.58'
Elevation	1322.34'
Horz System	UTM83-11
Vert System	Ellipsoidal

 OK

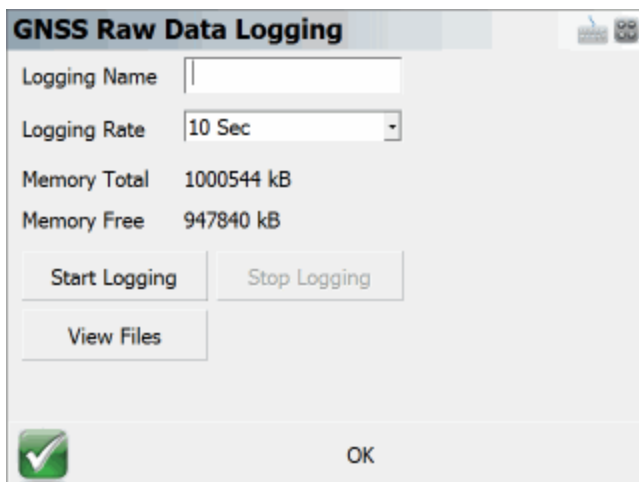
The following information is displayed and updates in realtime:

- Geodetic Position (Latitude, Longitude, Ellipsoid Height)
- Measured Antenna Height
- Baseline Length
- Cartesian Position (Northing, Easting, Elevation)
- Coordinate Systems (Horizontal and Vertical)
- Solution Type
- Standard Deviation
- PDOP
- Number of Satellites
- UTC Date and Time

Raw Data Logging

GPS Toolbar | Settings | Raw Data Logging

Use this to start and stop raw data logging on your GPS reference or rover receiver, for later post-processing of your point data. You can log raw data on the receiver while you carry on with your survey in Evidence Recorder.



The image shows a software dialog box titled "GNSS Raw Data Logging". It contains the following fields and controls:

- Logging Name:** A text input field.
- Logging Rate:** A dropdown menu currently set to "10 Sec".
- Memory Total:** A label showing "1000544 kB".
- Memory Free:** A label showing "947840 kB".
- Buttons:** "Start Logging", "Stop Logging", and "View Files".
- Footer:** A green checkmark icon and an "OK" button.

Note: Evidence Recorder can not control the data logging on all models of GPS receivers. Currently, we support data logging on the:

Altus APS-3	Magellan PM500	Sokkia GSR2600
Altus APS-3 Rev 2	NavCom SF-3040	Sokkia Radian IS
Ashtech ProMark 500/800	NavCom SF-3050	Topcon HiPer
GeoMax 10/20	NovAtel DL4	Topcon GR-3
Javad Triumph-1	Pentax G3100-R1	Topcon Legacy
Leica 1200	Pentax SMT888-3G	Topcon Odyssey
Leica GS15	Pentax SMT888-3G Rev 2	Trimble 4700/4800
Leica GS10	Prexiso G4/G5	Trimble 5700/R7
Leica SmartRover	Sokkia GRX1	Trimble 5800/R8
Leica GPS900		

Command Console

[GPS Toolbar](#) | [Settings](#) | [Command Console](#)

The Command Console screen is accessed from the [GPS Settings](#) screen. It allows you to send commands to your receiver to configure settings, or other related tasks.

You must determine the exact syntax to enter in the console and you can usually gather this information from your GPS manufacturer.

Send

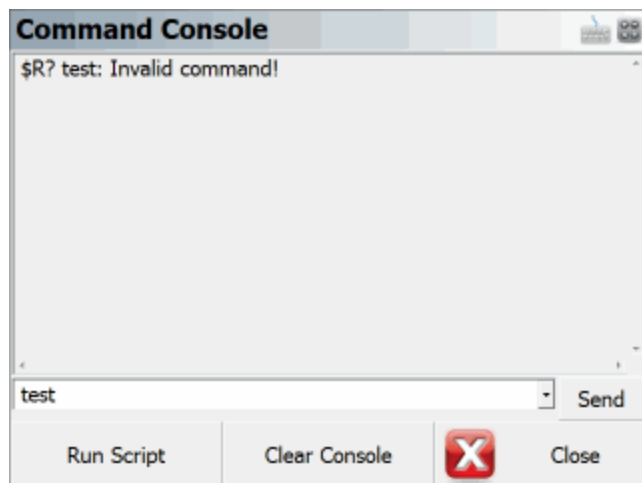
This will send the parameters that you've entered to your receiver.

Run Script

This allows you to import and read a text file that has a sequence of commands that you would like to upload to your receiver.

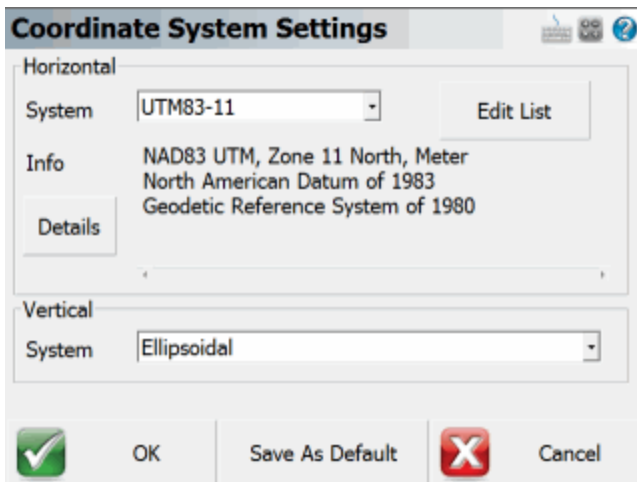
Clear Console

This will clear console of all parameters sent and received from your receiver.



Coordinate System Settings

The datum settings are used to transform GPS derived curvilinear coordinates (latitude, longitude and ellipsoidal height) into Cartesian coordinates (northing/y, easting/x, and ellipsoid or orthometric height) for presentation on the drawing window and data storage.



Horizontal Group

This is where you define the coordinate system for your project.

You can choose "RTCM: Transformation" option to use coordinate systems transmitted from enabled CORS networks. (Only works with RTCM v3.1+ correction types)

Edit List

The **Edit List** button is used to create predefined or user-defined coordinate systems, create new coordinate systems, copy predefined systems, and edit or delete existing systems. When pressed, the Coordinate System List dialog will appear.

A **predefined coordinate system** is one that already exists and comes installed in Evidence Recorder by default, a **user-defined system** is one that you have created.

Details

This accesses a summary of all the parameters being used by the selected coordinate system. The following information is displayed:

1. What projection and parameters are being used?
2. What datum transformation method and parameters are being used?
3. What ellipsoid and parameters are being used? See section 4 for more details.

Vertical Group

This is where you define the vertical system also known as a geoid model for your project.

The default is ellipsoidal. If needed you can copy geoid separation files (a.k.a geoid model) into the Evidence Recorder mapping directory. Any new files you copy to the mapping directory can be selected here. Please review the [Geoid Model](#) topic for more details.

You can choose "RTCM: Transformation" option to use vertical systems transmitted from enabled CORS networks. (Only works with RTCM v3.1+ correction types)

Save As Defaults

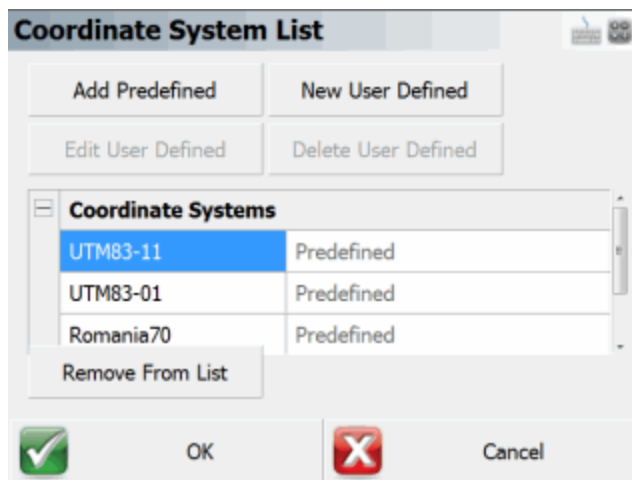
Saves the Horizontal and Vertical systems to the msurvey.ini file as defaults to be used for all new projects.

Select Horizontal Coordinate System

Evidence Recorder ships with a default coordinate system definition of UTM NAD83 zone 11. You can change this at any time.

The Coordinate System List dialog is where you can select an existing coordinate system or create a new user-defined coordinate system and add them to a "favourites" list.

This list allows you to define the coordinate systems you use most often for easy access from the Coordinate System Settings screen.



Add Predefined

Press this button to access a list of existing coordinate system. See the Add Predefined System section below for more details.

New User-Defined

This allows you to add a user-defined coordinate system to the coordinate system list. See the Add user-defined System section below for more details.

Edit User-Defined

This allows you to review and edit a user-defined coordinate system. Select a user-defined coordinate system from the list, and press the **Edit User-Defined** button. Doing so will display the Edit User-Defined System dialog.

Some predefined coordinate systems are read only and can't be edited. You will see a warning message when attempting to copy or edit system that can not be edited.

Delete User Defined

Pressing the button will delete the selected user-defined coordinate system. You will need to confirm that you want to delete it from the database. Since there is no und, you may want to use the [User Coordinate System Export](#) routine to save a backup copy of your coordinate system before deleting anything.

Some predefined coordinate systems are read only and can't be deleted. They can however be removed from the favourites list by using the **Remove From List** button.

Remove From List

If you select either a user-defined or predefined coordinate system and press this button, the selected coordinate system will be removed from the coordinate system list. It isn't deleted or removed from the mapping database.

OK Button

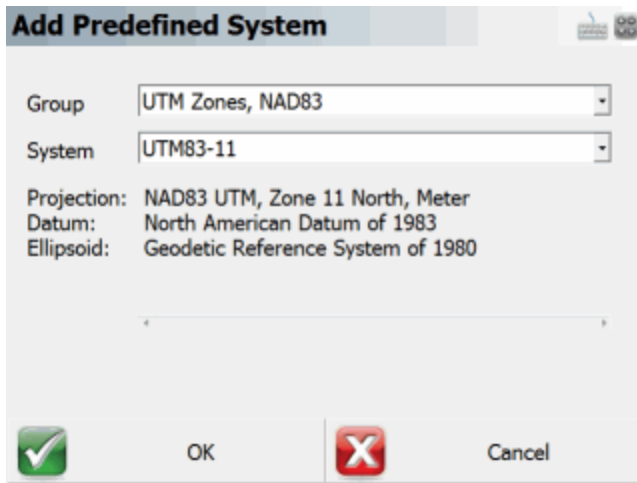
This will save the coordinate system favourites list to the msurvey.ini file.

Cancel Button

This will exit the dialog and will save nothing. You will be automatically returned to the Coordinate System Settings dialog.

Add Predefined System

When the **Add Predefined** button is selected you will be able to select an existing coordinate system from the mapping database.



The image shows a software dialog box titled "Add Predefined System". It contains two dropdown menus: "Group" with "UTM Zones, NAD83" selected and "System" with "UTM83-11" selected. Below these, the following information is displayed: "Projection: NAD83 UTM, Zone 11 North, Meter", "Datum: North American Datum of 1983", and "Ellipsoid: Geodetic Reference System of 1980". At the bottom, there are three buttons: a green checkmark icon, the text "OK", a red 'X' icon, and the text "Cancel".

Group and System Options

Coordinate systems are grouped into countries or mapping systems. Select the country or system that you are surveying in and then choose the coordinate system in the System drop down list.

Information Section

This section (below the System field) displays the projection, datum, and ellipsoid information related to this coordinate system.

Ok Button

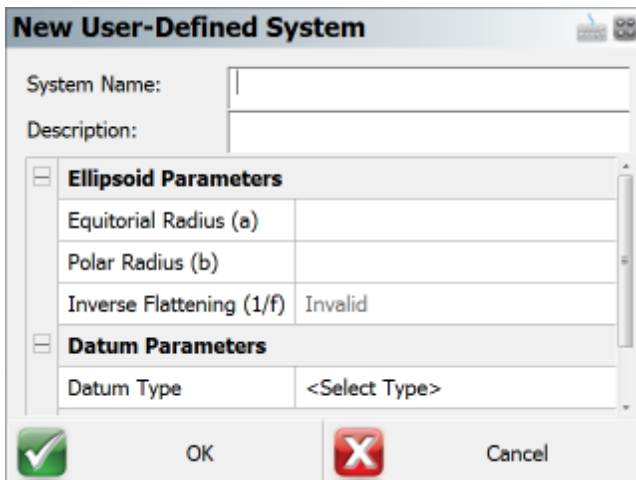
This will add the selected coordinate system to the favourites list.

Cancel Button

This will cancel without saving. User returned back to the Select Coordinate System dialog.

New/ Edit user-defined System

From this dialog you will either create a brand new coordinate system or edit an existing one you previously saved.



System Name and Description

Enter a name for your coordinate system and optionally enter a meaningful name that helps describe it. The system name must have colon in the name.

Ellipsoid Parameters

To define the ellipsoid for the coordinate system you must enter the known equatorial and polar radiuses for the ellipsoid. The Inverse Flattening is not editable and will be computed automatically and can be used a check.

- Equatorial Radius (a)
- Polar Radius (b)
- Inverse Flattening (1/f) - Always a read only value, automatically computed from the two ellipsoid radiuses.

Datum Parameters

There are 7 datum types to select from:

- Three Parameter
- Four Parameter
- Six Parameter
- Seven Parameter
- Bursa / Wolf

- DMA Molodensky
- None

If none is selected then no transformation parameters will be applied to the coordinate system transformation.

If a datum other than none is selected then the user will be able to enter the following parameters:

- Delta X (m)
- Delta Y (m)
- Delta Z (m)
- X Rotation (")
- Y Rotation (")
- Z Rotation (")
- Scale (PPM)

Projection Parameters

The user can select one of nineteen projections.

- Lambert Conformal Conic (One Standard Parallels)
- Lambert Conformal Conic (Two Standard Parallels)
- Transverse Mercator or Gauss Kruger
- Universal Transverse Mercator
- Albers Equal Area Conic
- Rectified Skew Orthomorphic, Azimuth at Projection Center
- Mercator Cylindrical Projection with Standard Parallel
- Mercator Cylindrical Projection with Scale Reduction
- Lambert Azimuthal Equal Area
- Lambert Azimuthal Equidistant
- Miller Cylindrical
- Oblique Sterographic
- Polar Sterographic
- Sinusoidal Projection, Optionally Interrupted
- Equidistant Cylindrical

-
- Cassini
 - Robinson Cylindrical
 - Bonne Pseudoconical
 - Krovac Oblique Conformal Conic, Czechoslovakia

Typical projection parameters for most cases are:

- Scale Factor
- Central Meridian
- Origin Latitude
- Origin Longitude
- False Northing
- False Easting

Ok Button

This will save the user-defined parameters to the CS-MAP coordinate system database files (coord-sys, datum and ellipsoid)

Cancel Button

This will cancel the current operation and nothing will be saved.

Automatic Backup

Whenever you add or edit a user-defined coordinate system, Evidence Recorder will automatically create and save your parameters to a file named **user-coordsys-backup.csmmap** to the mapping directory.

This backup file stores your user-defined coordinate systems. If you accidentally remove or overwrite your user-defined coordinate systems, you can re-import them from this backup file using the [Import user-defined Coordinate System](#) command.

Localization (Site Calibration)

Further coordinate transformations can be accomplished with the use of the Local Transformation function of Evidence Recorder. For localizing on a user-defined coordinate system, see the [GPS Site Calibration](#) section below.

These settings are stored in your project's .ini file, allowing you to easily use different coordinate systems for different projects.

Additional Grid Shift Files and Geoids

Additional grid shift files or geoids can be downloaded from the MicroSurvey helpdesk.

World Geoid models we support can be found [here](#).

World grid shift files we support can be found [here](#).

Older Evidence Recorder Mapping Files

Many of the horizontal datums and vertical geoid models require the use of "grid" files for coordinate computations. A desktop application has been provided with Evidence Recorder to extract user-defined areas from the original files to create smaller more manageable files for the data collector.

See the topic on [Datum Grid Editor](#) for more information.

Datum Grid Editor

This is a desktop program that is installed on your desktop computer. You can start it by running "Datum Grid Editor" under the MapScenes\Evidence Recorder 10 program group on your system.

Special NOTE: Software versions newer than 2011 don't require the use of this program. All necessary files are installed with versions newer than 2011.

Versions Newer than 2011

As mentioned above if you are using a software versions newer than 2011 all necessary files for your coordinate systems are installed automatically for you with the following exceptions:

- Grid Shift Files - In some countries, or areas, the use of grid shift files are required to accurately compute a horizontal position. These additional grid shift files are not installed and need to be downloaded from the MicroSurvey website. Please review the [Grid Shift Files](#) topic for more information.
- Geoid Models - If you require orthometric heights you will need to download a geoid model for your area. Please review the [Geoid Models](#) topic for more information.

Pre 2011 Versions

Older versions of our software (older than 2011) require the use of the Datum Grid Editor. The GPS module of Evidence Recorder requires geodetic datum transformation grids and geoid model grids in order to precisely determine positions and calculate orthometric heights in the user's coordinate system.

Usually these grids are supplied by national organizations such as the National Geodetic Survey (USA) or the Geodetic Survey Division of Canada and the data files can be upwards to 15 megabytes in size.

Older data collectors are restricted in storage resources and cannot handle the large sizes of the grid files; therefore it is necessary to create smaller more manageable files. The Datum Grid Editor is a

companion utility for Evidence Recorder to build smaller sub grids from the original grids while preserving integrity.

The process of building sub grids needs to be repeated only when performing GPS surveys in locations which exceed the area of the original sub grids. The Datum Grid Editor is installed on the desktop machine and is available for download from our website www.mapscenes.com.

When it starts, you will see the following dialog:

Data Paths

Installation of the Datum Grid Editor utility will include recent grid data for both the United States and Canada. The edit box for the source data path will contain the installed path for the datum configuration files and the respective national grid data. Newly built grids will be written to the path defined by the edit box for the export data path. The installation process will have created a specific export path. Paths can be modified by changing the contents of the edit boxes or by pressing the adjoining browse button and selecting the path from the presented directory tree.

Coordinate Type

Coordinates for defining the extents of the user sub grid can be either geodetic (latitude and longitude) or Cartesian (northing and easting). The contents of the Map Projection section and Grid Extents

section will reflect the selected coordinate type. You can also specify a ZIP code that will define the center of your sub grid.

Grid Area

The user sub grid extents can be entered as a rectangle where the diagonal corners of the northwest boundary and southeast boundary are used. Alternatively a central coordinate can be used with a bounding radius. Selection of either boundary method will be shown as parameters in the Grid Extents section.

Map Projection

If using Cartesian coordinates (northing and easting) for defining the boundary of the sub grid, it will be necessary to select the appropriate map projection for deriving geodetic coordinates used with internal computations. The group field contains various national and regional coordinate systems composed of map projection and related horizontal datum. Each group will be composed of zones or sub coordinate systems and will be updated in the system field as the group field is changed. Finally the linear unit can be selected for the coordinate entry.

Grid Extents

The data source from which the sub grid is to be built must be selected and is defined by national organization. All necessary grids and supporting files will be built for Evidence Recorder including horizontal datum transformations, vertical datum transformations and geoid models. Be aware of the fact that the source data for both Canada and the United States extend beyond their political boundaries and therefore the choice of the source data is critical to avoid coordinate deviations.

The remainder of this section contains the boundary information for the user grid and its format will depend on the selected coordinate type and the selected grid area. Linear Cartesian coordinates do not need to be appended with a unit designator. Geodetic coordinates must be delimited with spaces to denote direction, degrees, minutes and seconds. Listed below are possible entries for geodetic coordinates with all being equivalent in value:

N 49 12 9.0 (direction, degrees, minutes, decimal seconds)

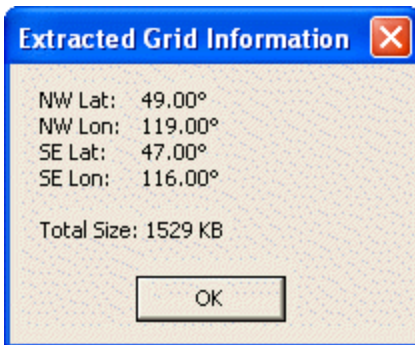
N 49 12.15 (direction, degrees, decimal minutes)

N 49.2025 (direction, decimal degrees)

Grid Creation

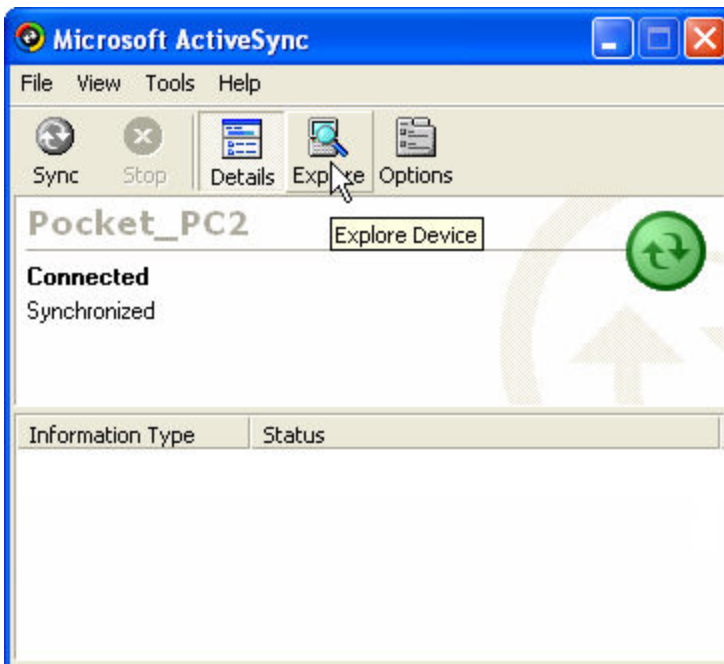
Once all parameters have been carefully selected, the sub grids can be produced by pressing the **Create** button. The time period for building the grids will depend on the area of the chosen grids and completion will be indicated by the following dialog which reiterates the grid extents and the total size of the sub grids and supporting files.

If the source path or export path described above are invalid, the appropriate message box will be presented to denote the error.

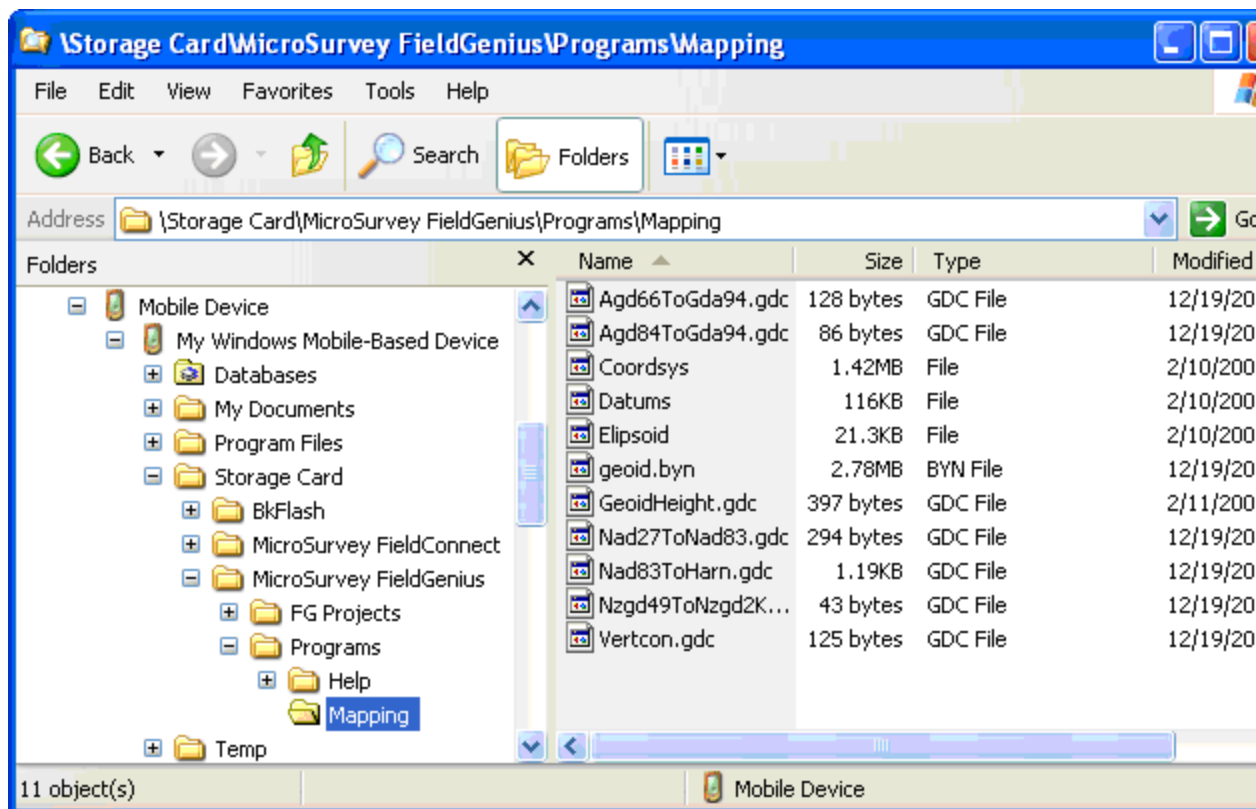


Transferring Data

The final step in creating sub grids is transferring the entire contents of the defined export path to the data collector. [Microsoft ActiveSync](#) provides easy access to **Explore** the contents of the data collector.



After cutting or copying the contents of the export path, use the explorer to paste the files into the ...\\MicroSurvey EVR9\\Programs\\Mapping\\ path on the data collector. If prompted to overwrite the existing files while pasting, respond with yes.



NOTE: the path shown may not exactly match your device. Make sure you know where Evidence Recorder is installed in your data collector. It might be in SystemCF, C_Drive, Disk, Storage Card, SD Card, Built-in Storage, Program Files, or some other memory location.

Import / Export User Defined Coordinate Systems

User defined coordinate systems created by a user are saved in the binary mapping system files. It is useful to be able to export these user created coordinate systems for the following reasons:

1. A backup of your user defined coordinate systems.
2. Allows you to share user defined coordinate systems with other crews.
3. Allows you to load user defined coordinate systems after installing a FieldGenius update.

Export

When you export the user defined coordinate systems you will be able to specify a directory to save the file to and a name for the file.

Exported files will automatically be saved with a CSMAP extension such as **mycoordinatesystem.csmmap**.

All user defined coordinate systems in Evidence Recorder will be exported to the file.

Import

You can import coordinate systems from a previously saved file.

When you import a file you will be asked to browse to and select the file you want to import. Once selected, Evidence Recorder will check to make sure a user defined system doesn't already exist and if one does, you will be asked if you want to skip importing it, or overwrite the existing coordinate system.

Backups

Evidence Recorder automatically creates a backup when you add or edit user defined coordinate systems. If you forgot to save your user defined coordinate systems, you may be able to restore them using a backup. Please see the [Coordinate System](#) topic for more details.

Geoid Models

Geoid models are used by Evidence Recorder to convert ellipsoid heights to orthometric heights. Evidence Recorder will by default use ellipsoid heights but you can define a geoid model to be used instead if orthometric heights are desired.

Geoid models are not installed by default and must be downloaded from the MapScenes website. Geoid models are available for most regions around the world.

Download Geoid Files

Canadian Geoid Models:

<http://www.microsurvey.com/helpdesk2/index.php?/Knowledgebase/Article/View/490/0/canadian-geoid-models-download>

United States Geoid Models:

<http://www.microsurvey.com/helpdesk2/index.php?/Knowledgebase/Article/View/1040/0/usa-geoid-models>

World Geoid Models

<http://www.microsurvey.com/helpdesk2/index.php?/Knowledgebase/Article/View/479/0/world-geoid-models-download>

Copy Geoid Files to Data Collector

Once you download the required geoid file for your area you will need to copy it to the data collector(s) that will be used. All geoid model files need to be copied to the installation directory in the mapping folder. For example: \MicroSurvey Evidence Recorder\Mapping\.

Select Geoid Model

Once the necessary geoid model is copied to the data collector you have to define in your project which geoid model to use. You can define this by selecting the geoid model in the Vertical Systems section of the [Coordinate Systems](#) dialog.

Grid Shift Files

In some countries, or areas, the use of grid shift files are required to accurately compute a horizontal position. When projecting a dataset between two different datums, a transformation is required.

Both equation-based and grid-based transformation methods are supported FieldGenius. An equation-based transformation can use either a 3-parameter (dX, dY, dZ) or a 7-parameter shift (dX, dY, dZ, rX, rY, rZ, ds) to translate between coordinates. A grid-based transformation uses binary files and interpolations that calculate the differences between the two geographic coordinate systems.

We have created country specific grid shift files and these additional grid shift files are not installed by default and need to be downloaded from the MicroSurvey website.

[Download Files and Instructions](#)

Please review the following MicroSurvey Helpdesk article for instructions and country specific grid shift files.

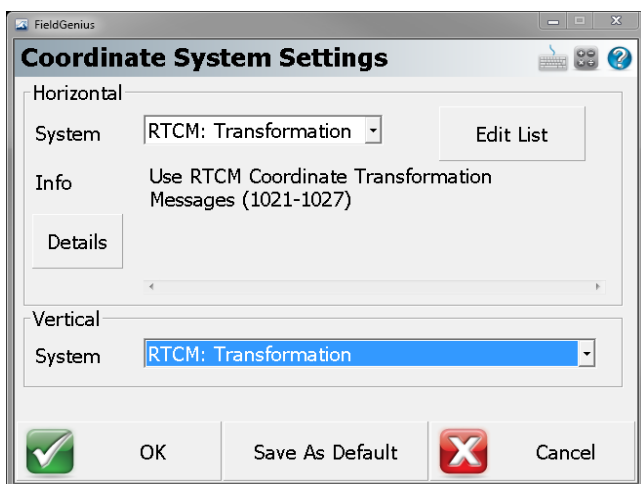
<http://www.microsurvey.com/helpdesk2/index.php?/Knowledgebase/Article/View/499/47/country-specific-grid-shift-files>

RTCM: Transformation

[Project Manager](#) | [Default Settings](#) | [Coordinate System](#) | [RTCM: Transformation](#)

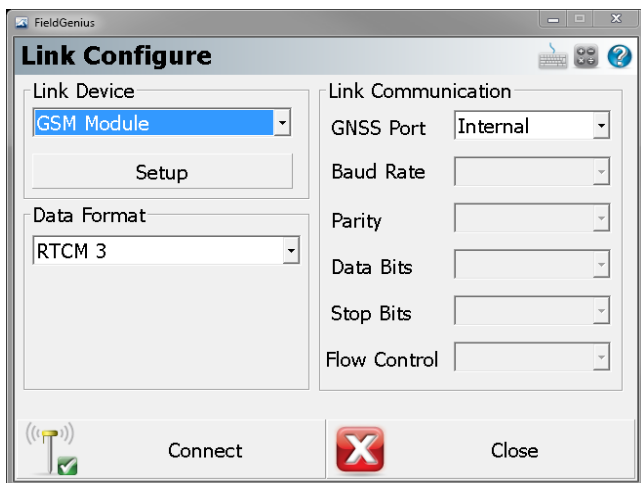
[Main Menu](#) | [Settings](#) | [Coordinate System](#) | [RTCM: Transformation](#)

Evidence Recorder has an new GNSS feature called RTCM: Transformation. This routine allows the RTK Network Caster to automatically select the appropriate horizontal coordinate system for the project location and if needed request a specific Geoid file to be used for the vertical system. This eliminates the coordinate system guess work when using RTK GNSS equipment.



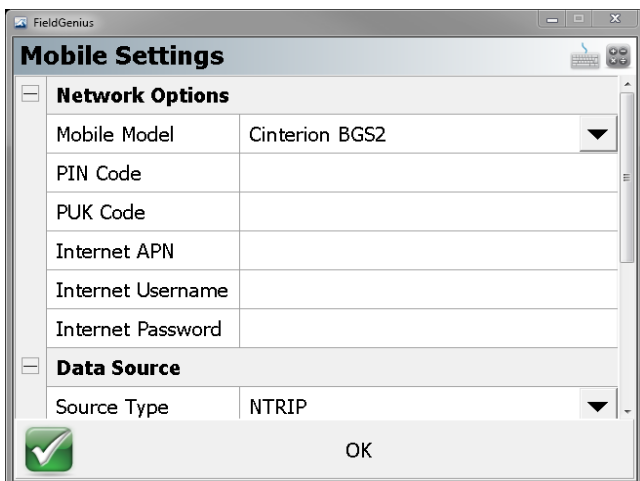
Procedure

To start the RTCM: Transformation routine the user must go into either the Settings menu from the Main Menu of a current job or when creating a new one, select Project Defaults to bring up the Project Settings dialog to select "Coordinate System." From this screen using the pull down menu for System rather than picking a pre-defined or user defined system we choose "RTCM: Transformation." The user can also select RTCM: Transformation for the Vertical System as well. Press "OK" to continue to confirm the project settings and continue to connect to the GPS receiver.



After connection to the GPS receiver has been achieved Evidence Recorder will proceed to the Link configure screen. Users will now be asked for the Link Device they wish to use and for the Data Format RCTM 3 must be selected here for the RTCM: Transformation routine to work.

Press the "Setup" button to enter in your GSM SIM card information in the Network Options Section or if you are using Data Collector Internet the Network Options is not required. In both cases the Data Source section will require valid information to be inputted for the connection to work. Click on the "Press to Modify" button to allow you to enter in these parameters. Evidence Recorder allows multiple NTRIP caster settings to be stored and used.

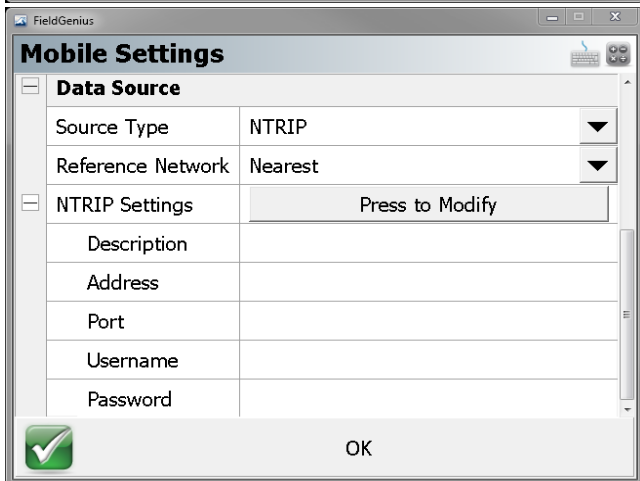


FieldGenius

Mobile Settings

- Network Options**
 - Mobile Model: Cinterion BGS2
 - PIN Code:
 - PUK Code:
 - Internet APN:
 - Internet Username:
 - Internet Password:
- Data Source**

 OK



FieldGenius

Mobile Settings

- Data Source**
 - Source Type: NTRIP
 - Reference Network: Nearest
 - NTRIP Settings**
 - Press to Modify
 - Description:
 - Address:
 - Port:
 - Username:
 - Password:

 OK

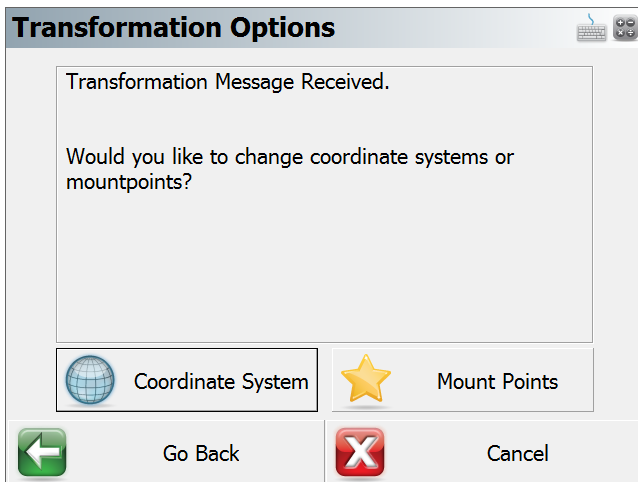
Verify all information is correct and press "OK" to bring you back to the Link Configure screen and then press the "Connect" button to connect to the caster. It will ask the user to either Request a Sourcetable or select the previously used one. Ensure the selected Sourcetable supports the RTCM 3 transformation message or this process will fail.

- If you are using a Tablet/PC please ensure that the Bluetooth PAN connection is established before attempting to connect to the Caster.
- The Reference Network pull down menu must have something other than the "NONE" option selected. In this example I have chosen the "Nearest" option and the Correction Format is set to RTCM 3.
- Using the Data Collector Internet method is the preferred one for the RTCM Transformation. Using the GSM method may have limited device support.

RTCM Transformation Info	
Information	Description
Mountpoint	1101-RTCM3-HT2_0_QUADRATIC
Data Age	1.0 sec
Data Quality	Waiting for update
Status	RTK Corrections not received.
RTCM Transformation	Message Received.
Target System	RTCM: UTM11 - HT2_0_QUADRATIC
Projection Type	Transverse Mercator (Msg 1025)
 OK  Options	

When the connection is complete, the RTCM Transformation Info screen will appear and display the related information for the current project including the Mount Point used, the status of the RTK corrections and Projection Type. Because the RTCM Messages are not being sent out on the same frequency as the RTK corrections it may take some additional time before they are received. Once they have been received, it will update it to say "Message Received" and provide the Target System and Projection Type.

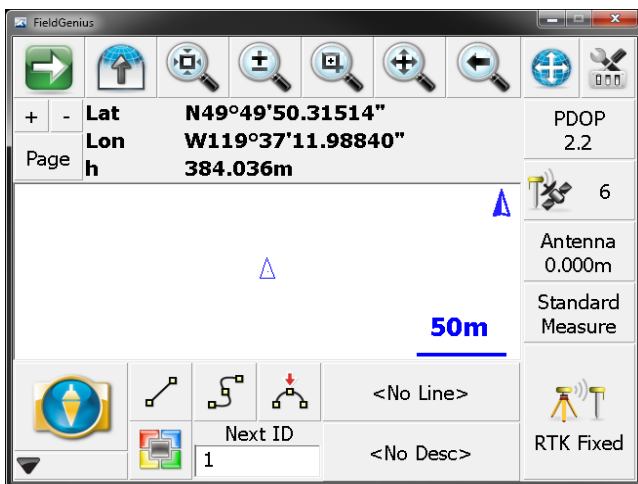
Note: If you did not receive an RTCM Transformation message the OK button will not active and you need to go into the Options to try a different solution.



In the Transformation Options screen you will have the following actions.

- Coordinate System - Press this button to abandon the RTCM: Transformation coordinate system and select either a Pre-Defined or a user created Coordinate System.
- Mount Points - Press this button if you want to connect to another Mount Point to continue with the RTCM Transformation.

Once in the Map View screen click on the Observation Tool bar to verify you are receiving a valid position before taking a shot.

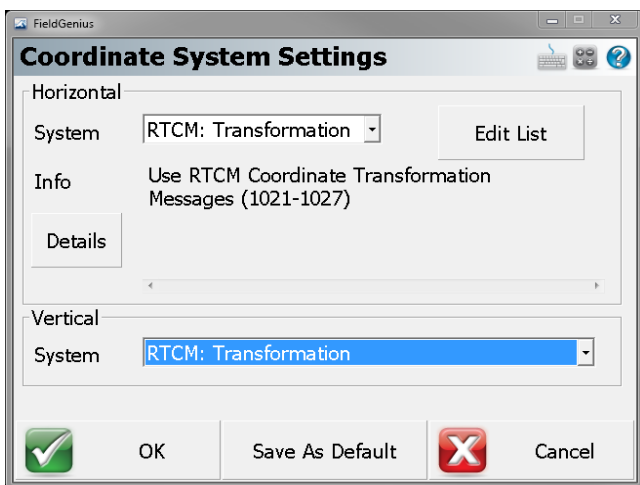


RTCM: Transformation

[Project Manager](#) | [Default Settings](#) | [Coordinate System](#) | [RTCM: Transformation](#)

[Main Menu](#) | [Settings](#) | [Coordinate System](#) | [RTCM: Transformation](#)

Evidence Recorder has an new GNSS feature called RTCM: Transformation. This routine allows the RTK Network Caster to automatically select the appropriate horizontal coordinate system for the project location and if needed request a specific Geoid file to be used for the vertical system. This eliminates the coordinate system guess work when using RTK GNSS equipment.



Procedure

To start the RTCM: Transformation routine the user must go into either the Settings menu from the Main Menu of a current job or when creating a new one, select Project Defaults to bring up the Project Settings dialog to select "Coordinate System." From this screen using the pull down menu for System rather than picking a pre-defined or user defined system we choose "RTCM: Transformation." The user can also select RTCM: Transformation for the Vertical System as well. Press "OK" to continue to confirm the project settings and continue to connect to the GPS receiver.

FieldGenius

Link Configure

Link Device: **GSM Module** [v]
 Setup [button]

Data Format: **RTCM 3** [v]

Link Communication:

- GNSS Port: **Internal** [v]
- Baud Rate: [v]
- Parity: [v]
- Data Bits: [v]
- Stop Bits: [v]
- Flow Control: [v]

[Connect] [Close]

After connection to the GPS receiver has been achieved Evidence Recorder will proceed to the Link configure screen. Users will now be asked for the Link Device they wish to use and for the Data Format. **RTCM 3** must be selected here for the RTCM: Transformation routine to work.

Press the "Setup" button to enter in your GSM SIM card information in the Network Options Section or if you are using Data Collector Internet the Network Options is not required. In both cases the Data Source section will require valid information to be inputted for the connection to work. Click on the "Press to Modify" button to allow you to enter in these parameters. Evidence Recorder allows multiple NTRIP caster settings to be stored and used.

FieldGenius

Mobile Settings

Network Options

- Mobile Model: **Cinterion BG52** [v]
- PIN Code: [v]
- PUK Code: [v]
- Internet APN: [v]
- Internet Username: [v]
- Internet Password: [v]

Data Source

- Source Type: **NTRIP** [v]

[OK]

FieldGenius

Mobile Settings

Data Source

- Source Type: **NTRIP** [v]
- Reference Network: **Nearest** [v]

NTRIP Settings

- Press to Modify [button]
- Description: [v]

Verify all information is correct and press "OK" to bring you back to the Link Configure screen and then press the "Connect" button to connect to the caster. It will ask the user to either Request a Sourcetable or select the previously used one. Ensure the selected Sourcetable supports the RTCM 3 transformation message or this process will fail.

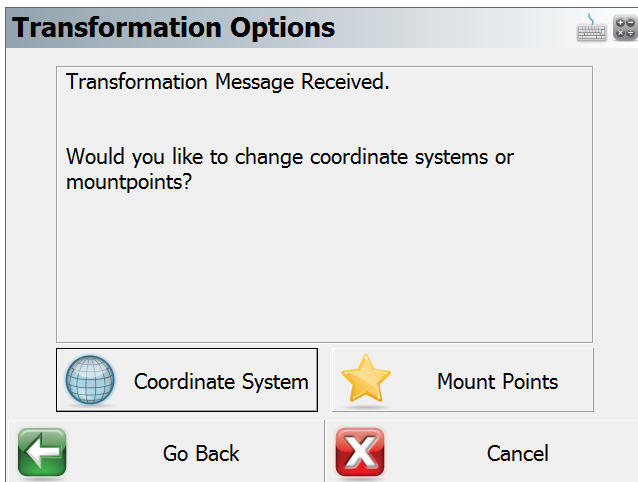
- If you are using a Tablet/PC please ensure that the Bluetooth PAN connection is established before attempting to connect to the Caster.
- The Reference Network pull down menu must have something other than the "NONE" option selected. In this example I have chosen the "Nearest" option and the Correction Format is set to RTCM 3.
- Using the Data Collector Internet method is the preferred one for the RTCM Transformation. Using the GSM method may have limited device support.

RTCM Transformation Info	
Information	Description
Mountpoint	1101-RTCM3-HT2_0_QUADRATIC
Data Age	1.0 sec
Data Quality	Waiting for update
Status	RTK Corrections not received.
RTCM Transformation	Message Received.
Target System	RTCM: UTM11 - HT2_0_QUADRATIC
Projection Type	Transverse Mercator (Msg 1025)

 OK  Options

When the connection is complete, the RTCM Transformation Info screen will appear and display the related information for the current project including the Mount Point used, the status of the RTK corrections and Projection Type. Because the RTCM Messages are not being sent out on the same frequency as the RTK corrections it may take some additional time before they are received. Once they have been received, it will update it to say "Message Received" and provide the Target System and Projection Type.

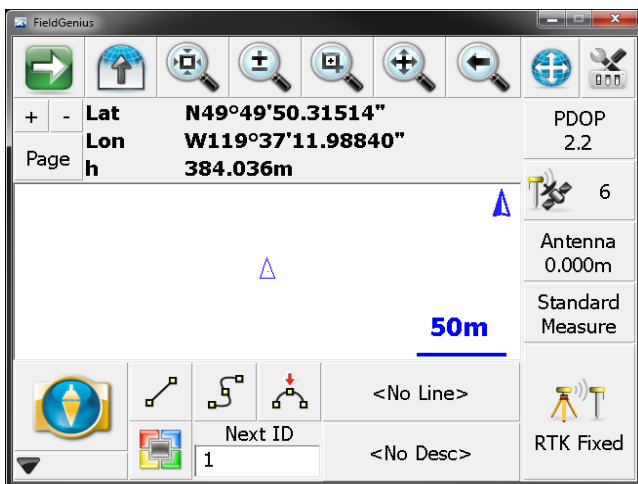
Note: If you did not receive an RTCM Transformation message the OK button will not active and you need to go into the Options to try a different solution.



In the Transformation Options screen you will have the following actions.

- Coordinate System - Press this button to abandon the RTCM: Transformation coordinate system and select either a Pre-Defined or a user created Coordinate System.
- Mount Points - Press this button if you want to connect to another Mount Point to continue with the RTCM Transformation.

Once in the Map View screen click on the Observation Tool bar to verify you are receiving a valid position before taking a shot.



Local Transformation

Due to a variety of reasons, it may be necessary to adjust position coordinates for distortions which can include scale, rotation, translation in northing and translation in easting. The flexibility of Evidence Recorder's local transformation utility allows it to be used for a variety of applications and applied to positions derived from GPS or terrestrial observations. For GPS applications there are two possible reasons for the need of a transformation:

1. Translating from Local System to Plan System

GPS receivers by default generate geodetic coordinates (latitude, longitude and ellipsoidal height) and the process of converting to Cartesian coordinates (northing, easting and orthometric height) or local system is done with existing well defined map projection systems such as Universal Transverse Mercator (UTM) or the State Plane Coordinate System (SPCS). Selection of the map projection in Evidence Recorder is done within the Datum page of the GPS Configuration and a local zone is selected to minimize scale and meridian convergence distortion. Most land, boundary or property surveys are unique with regards to their generalized plane and coordinate origin for each project. The coordinate system for these surveys is often referred to as a plan system with coordinate magnitudes being kept small for ease of recording and calculations. The majority of projects can suffice with a simple translation in northing and easting to produce plan system coordinates from GPS determined local system coordinates. The translation is easily determined by comparing a plan system coordinate and a local system coordinated for a single point.

2. Consideration for Scale and Rotation

Projects with larger extents need to take into consideration the curvature of the earth's surface which can be handled by the application of scale and rotation transformations plus the previously mentioned translations. In the case of mixing GPS observations and terrestrial observations it does become important to apply a transformation, especially in scale, due to the fact that there is a difference in distance between positions measured on the ellipsoid and the terrain surface. As seen in Figure 1, coordinates derived from GPS are always referenced to the surface of the ellipsoid as per the application of map projections. When the two points on the ellipsoid are projected upwards along the ellipsoid normals onto the earth's surface, they diverge, and a terrestrial distance observed between the points will be greater than the computed distance of the same two points on the ellipsoid. The effects of this zenith divergence becomes more evident as distance between the two points becomes greater and for larger terrain heights above the ellipsoidal surface.

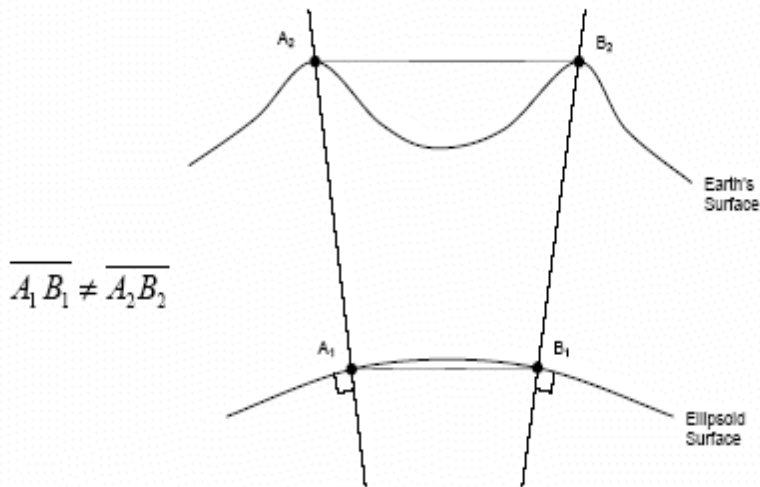


Figure 1. Divergence of Ellipsoid Normals.

Transformation Concepts

In order for the transformation parameters to be resolved, a sufficient number of control points are required with coordinates in both the plan system and local system. The determination of a four parameter transformation (two translations, scale and rotation) on a horizontal plane requires at minimum two physical points with each having two sets of corresponding coordinates as illustrated in Figure 2. Points A1 and B1 exist in what is termed the local system and are transformed into the plan system points of A2 and B2. The use of more coordinate observations will provide redundancy and the means to identify outliers for elimination. Solving for over constrained parameters is done with the application of least squares to provide the most rigorous minimization of residuals. Once transformation parameters have been resolved, newly observed or existing coordinates can easily be converted to the plan coordinate system.

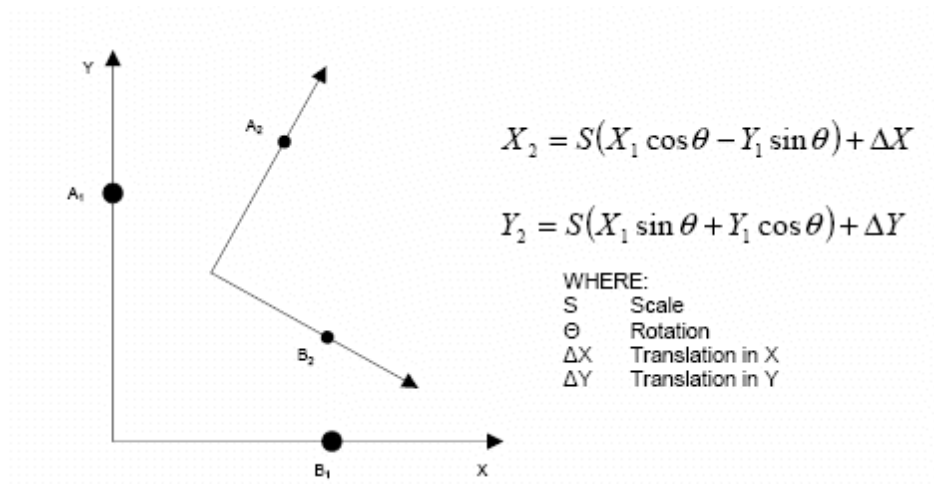


Figure 2. Horizontal Four Parameter Transformation.

The selection of control points for determining the transformation parameters are critical in reducing a colinearity condition along a particular axis. Colinearity will present itself if the control points are concentrated in a linear fashion as shown in Figure 3 (Poor Design) and thus weaken the parameters in a perpendicular direction. Control points should extend to the corners of the project boundary and be extended with equal distances in both horizontal directions.

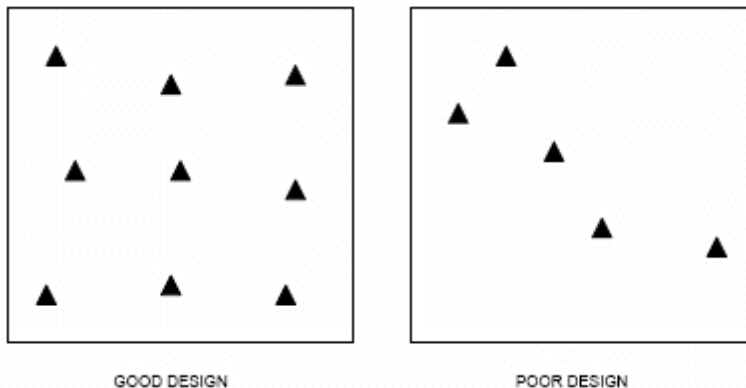


Figure 3. Transformation Control Design.

Vertical Transformation

The vertical transformation function of Evidence Recorder operates independently of the horizontal transformation. A sloped plane is calculated from the residuals of the constrained point pairs to determine a vertical bias, slope in X and slope in Y. To determine a vertical bias at least one point pair must be constrained and for all three parameters to be determined at least three point pairs must be constrained.

The use of the vertical transformation function should be restricted to cases where a geoid model is not available or there is a known problem with an existing geoid model.

Local Transformation Example A

For this example the simple case of translating the GPS derived coordinates to the desired plan coordinates will be used. The example will demonstrate how Evidence Recorder can be used to determine and apply the transformation parameters. A project is created consisting of four points in the plan system as denoted in Figure 4 and the corresponding coordinate listing shown in Table 1.

Figure 4. Evidence Recorder Project with Points in the Plan System.

Point	Northing	Easting
101	1000.000 m	1000.000 m
102	1000.000 m	1200.000 m
103	1200.000 m	1200.000 m
104	1200.000 m	1000.000 m

Table 1. Plan System Points.

The GPS reference station will need to occupy a point within the project area which can be an existing plan system point (101-104) or a new point set up randomly somewhere in the project area. For either setup of the reference station, the GPS antenna should have an unobstructed view to the satellite constellation to ensure that the rover station operates at its full potential. If the reference station is unable to occupy a plan system point, the rover station can instead measure an existing plan system point with local system coordinates and for this example that case will be assumed. Using Evidence Recorder to configure the GPS reference station, a suitable map projection is selected and the reference station position will be determined autonomously.

Once the reference station is operating and transmitting corrections, the rover station is used to measure plan system point 103 and the new local system point is assigned point number 203. Table 2 indicates the measured coordinates of point 203 in the local system which corresponds to point number 103 in the plan system. Figure 6 illustrates that Evidence Recorder now has points in two different coordinate systems as indicated by the large separation.

Figure 6. Evidence Recorder with Two Coordinate Systems.

Point	Northing	Easting
203	5523295.939 m	311585.808 m

Table 2. Local System Point.

Now that points exist in each of the coordinate systems the local transformation parameters can be determined and applied. Transformation Settings can be accessed from the **Main Menu | Survey Tools | GPS Local Transformation**. Initially the transformation parameters of translation in northing, translation in easting, scale and rotation will be null and any transformation will not be applied to GPS positions as indicated in Figure 7.

GPS Local Transformation	
Edit Control	Calculate Scale (GPS)
Origin North	0.00'
Origin East	0.00'
Trans North	0.00'
Trans East	0.00'
Rotation	0°00'00"
Scale	1.0000000000
Trans Height	0.00'

Close

Figure 7. Evidence Recorder Default Transformation Parameters.

From the Local Transformation Setup select the **Edit Control** button for the entry of control and measured point pairs to be used in the determination of the transformation parameters.

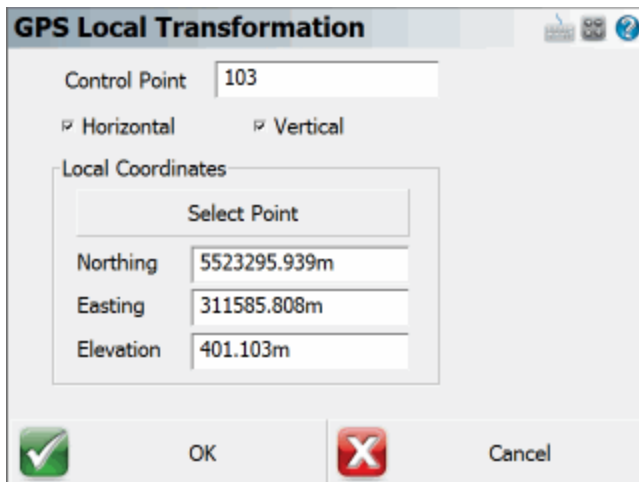


Figure 9: Evidence Recorder Control Point Pair Definition.

Select the **Calculate Parameters** button to have Evidence Recorder calculate new transformation parameters based on the control pair that has been added. The following tabular columns denote residuals in northing, easting and height and for this case are all zero due to the transformation being minimally constrained.

GPS Local Transformation

Calculate Parameters Edit Control Add Control

☐ Do not calculate scale
☐ Do not calculate vertical slopes

Ctrl Pnt	Horz	Vert	dN	dE	dH
103	☒	☒	0.000	0.000	0.000

Close

Figure 10: Evidence Recorder Constrained Points for Transformation.

The calculated transformation parameters can be viewed by choosing **Close** and returning to the Parameters page. Since only one point pair is being constrained, the utility has only determined a translation in northing, translation in easting and vertical bias. The addition of more point pairs would allow for scale, rotation and slopes in X and Y to be determined.

GPS Local Transformation

Edit Control Calculate Scale (GPS) Adjust Points

Origin North	5523295.939m
Origin East	311585.808m
Trans North	1200.000m
Trans East	1200.000m
Rotation	0°00'00"
Scale	1.0000000000
Trans Height	-401.103m

Close

Figure 11. Evidence Recorder Calculated Transformation Parameters.

Figure 12. Evidence Recorder Transformation in Effect.

The GPS measured observations at this point are still stored in the project database as a cartesian coordinate. It is sometimes beneficial to have Evidence Recorder re-compute the coordinates for

these points by using the Adjust button in the Transformation Settings screen. This will force Evidence Recorder to scan your raw file and convert all the GPS derived points into your local system.

Local Transformation Example B

This example will investigate the process of transforming a set of existing terrestrially derived positions so that they are constrained to a set of GPS derived positions. The process of transforming points is reversed from previous discussions and will therefore imply that the GPS derived coordinates are in the plan system and the terrestrially derived positions are in the local system. Another consideration for this example is that the project area is relatively large and more than one point pair will require to be constrained to determine all four parameters and for redundancy. Determination of the transformation parameters will account for the geodetic implications of the earth's curvature and meridian convergence. The existing Evidence Recorder project is illustrated in Figure 13 with the 100's series points having been established with a total station.

Figure 13. Evidence Recorder Project with Points in the Local System.

The GPS reference station occupies a national geodetic control point and has been configured with the corresponding published coordinates. The GPS rover station is used to measure points 102, 104, 106 and 108 to establish coordinates in the plan system and these new points are respectively named 202, 204, 206 and 208 (Table 3).

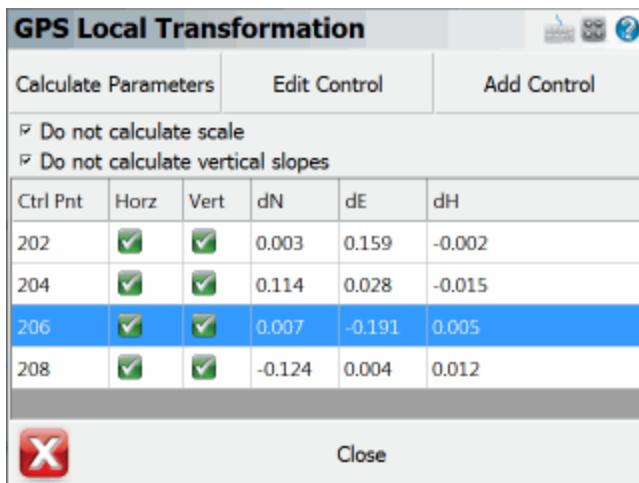
Figure 14. Evidence Recorder Project with Points in the Plan System.

Local System (Conventional Points)				Plan System (GPS Points)			
Point	Northing	Easting	Height	Point	Northing	Easting	Height
101	10820.603	3060.696	383.133				
102	6765.098	1674.638	384.936	202	5516443.987	311551.600	384.94
103	3325.620	2136.657	384.589				
104	3941.646	5216.788	383.543	204	5513620.403	315093.864	383.55
105	3736.304	8810.273	383.299				
106	7227.118	9939.654	382.980	206	5516905.954	319816.969	382.98
107	11539.300	9323.628	381.795				
108	10461.255	6654.182	384.380	208	5520140.241	316531.321	384.37

Table 3. Coordinate Listing.

Now that coordinates have been established in both the plan system and local system, the Transformation Setup is started from the Point menu of Evidence Recorder. Transformation Settings can be accessed from the **Main Menu | Survey Tools | GPS Local Transformation**. Figure 15 shows the Constrain page after the point pairs have been entered and their corresponding computed residuals. With four point pairs being used the horizontal transformation has a redundancy of two point

pairs and the vertical transformation has a redundancy of one point pair. The residuals are within acceptable limits and do not necessitate the removal of point pairs.



GPS Local Transformation

Calculate Parameters Edit Control Add Control

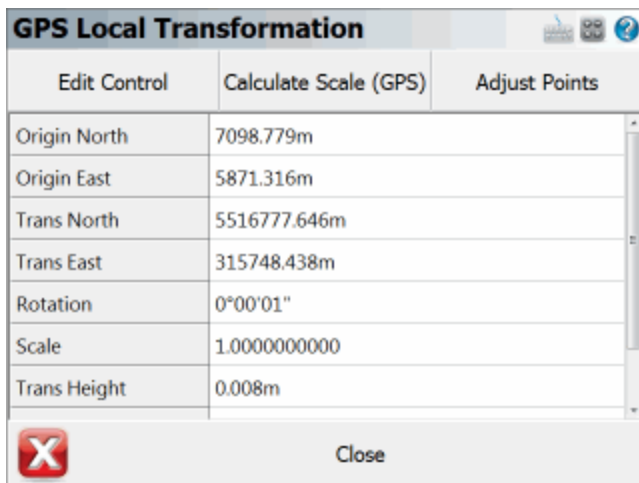
☒ Do not calculate scale
☒ Do not calculate vertical slopes

Ctrl Pnt	Horz	Vert	dN	dE	dH
202	☒	☒	0.003	0.159	-0.002
204	☒	☒	0.114	0.028	-0.015
206	☒	☒	0.007	-0.191	0.005
208	☒	☒	-0.124	0.004	0.012

 Close

Figure 15. Evidence Recorder Constrained Points for Transformation.

Viewing the Parameters page, as indicated in Figure 16, will provide feedback of the calculated horizontal and vertical transformation parameters.



GPS Local Transformation

Edit Control Calculate Scale (GPS) Adjust Points

Origin North	7098.779m
Origin East	5871.316m
Trans North	5516777.646m
Trans East	315748.438m
Rotation	0°00'01"
Scale	1.0000000000
Trans Height	0.008m

 Close

Figure 16. Evidence Recorder Calculated Parameters.

Using the calculated transformation parameters the control system points (101–108) can be transformed. First you need to open the coordinate database by going to **Main Menu | Data Manager |**

Coordinate database. Click the Find button and enter a point range 101-108 to select these points. The list of terrestrially derived points is entered as shown in Figure 17.

Point Database

Point ID		Northing	Easting	Elevation
101		10820.603m	3060.696m	383.133m
102		6765.098m	1674.638m	384.936m
103		3325.620m	2136.657m	384.589m
104		3941.646m	5216.788m	383.534m
105		3736.304m	8810.273m	383.299m
106		7227.118m	9939.654m	382.980m
107		11539.300m	9323.628m	381.795m

 Edit Delete Add Find 

Figure 17. Transforming Existing Points to the Control System.

To apply the transformation parameters to the local points, go to the second set of buttons by pressing the **green arrow** and then the **Local Transform** button.

After successfully transforming the points 101 through 108 from the local system to the plan system which was constrained to the GPS point 202 through 208 the results can be seen in Figure 18. The diagram illustrates the matching of points 102, 104, 106 and 108 with corresponding points 202, 204, 206 and 208 respectively.

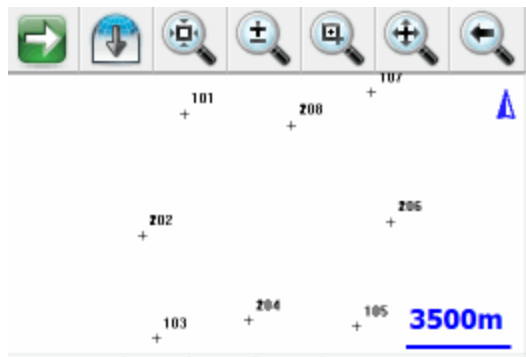


Figure 18. Results of the Transformation.

Local Transformation Example C

Two approaches can be used in applying the Local Transformation utility; parameters can be manually entered or automatically computed given a set of control points. The explanation of the use of Evidence Recorder's Local Transformation is best described with an example of integrating GPS observations and terrestrial observations and using the utility to compute the parameters.

Terrestrial Observations

The example project has a local user defined system that was uploaded to the data collector. Below you will find the coordinate listing for this user coordinate system. For the rest of the example we will refer to this as the Plan System.

We will make the assumption that the plan system is to be held fixed, that is we want to transform our GPS derived UTM coordinates into the user (plan) system.

Point ID	Northing	Easting	Elevation	Description
100	4937.480	5033.487	399.387	
101	5009.092	4999.688	401.188	
102	5004.814	4977.172	400.850	
103	4975.631	4980.361	399.795	
104	4939.713	4990.346	399.552	
105	4914.671	4975.005	399.233	
106	4886.675	4988.968	398.049	
201	5002.175	4995.656	400.632	
202	5000.000	5000.000	400.665	
203	5007.341	5008.610	401.095	
204	5005.103	5020.902	400.946	
205	5013.644	4963.513	401.686	

GPS Observations

This project is going to be surveyed using a RTK system so measurement were made to some of the plan points and tagged with a new point number. The GPS derived coordinates are in the 1000 range. Their coordinates are listed below and for the remainder of this topic we will refer to this coordinate system as the local system.

Point ID	Northing	Easting	Elevation	Description
1000	5523156.277	311533.446	400.536	HUB:TEMP
1001	5523168.850	311529.902	401.204	NAIL
1102	5523164.198	311507.469	400.863	NAIL
1103	5523135.089	311511.178	399.787	NAIL
1105	5523074.026	311506.904	399.243	NAIL
1106	5523046.273	311521.362	398.068	NAIL
1202	5523159.787	311530.386	400.664	HUB
1203	5523167.281	311538.852	401.104	NAIL
1204	5523165.231	311551.178	400.957	NAIL
50	5523150.433	311520.031	399.906	MH

If you do a zoom extents in the project, you will see the two coordinate systems.

Adjustment Analysis

The program assumes the following:

The coordinates of the plan system are considered fixed and error free.

Equal weighting is applied to all "measured" coordinates in the local system that are used to calculate the solution

Completion of the gps observations to the control stations will produce a list of point pairs with the terrestrial determined points (100-205) being termed control points and the GPS determined points (1000-1204) being termed local points. The computed transformation parameters will provide the transformation to go from measured local points to resulting plan points. The transformation utility in Evidence Recorder is started by going to the **Main Menu | Survey Tools | GPS Local Transformation** button.

GPS Local Transformation	
Edit Control	Calculate Scale (GPS) Adjust Points
Origin North	0.00'
Origin East	0.00'
Trans North	0.00'
Trans East	0.00'
Rotation	0°00'00"
Scale	1.0000000000
Trans Height	0.00'


Close

To begin computing the transformation you need to define the point pairs. You can do this by pressing the **Edit Control** button which will open the point pair's screen. Use the Add Control button to add control points to the list and to define the measured coordinate the control point should be constrained to. Note: Control points are points that reside in the plan system and are considered to be fixed.

In this example, control points 100, 101, 102, 103, 105, 106, 202, 203, and 204 were paired with the measured local points 1000, 1001, 1102, 1103, 1105, 1106, 1202, 1203, and 1204 respectively.

After all of the control station pairs have been entered, you need to compute the transformation parameters. To update the grid of the constraint pairs so it displays the transformation parameters and residuals, press the **Calc Parameters** button. You will see the transformation parameters update with new values. Instantly we can tell that there is a mistake with one of the point pairs as the scale value should be closer to a value of 1.

GPS Local Transformation	
Edit Control	Calculate Scale (GPS)
Origin North	5523137.446m
Origin East	311525.631m
Trans North	4971.201m
Trans East	4998.244m
Rotation	4°26'29"
Scale	0.9553438784
Trans Height	-0.135m

 Close

Upon returning to the control point list you will notice that the delta northing is large for the first point pair, so let's exclude it from the solution by turning off the green checkmarks. Highlight row 100 then press **Edit Control** and uncheck the Horizontal and Vertical options. Once you do this you will have to use the **Calc Params** button again to compute a new solution. In our example that helped tighten up the residuals.

GPS Local Transformation					
Calculate Parameters	Edit Control				
☐ Do not calculate scale ☐ Do not calculate vertical slopes					
Ctrl Pnt	Horz	Vert	dN	dE	dH
100	☒	☒	51.079	-26.406	0.970
101	☒	☒	-8.295	4.947	-0.156
102	☒	☒	-6.789	5.752	-0.065
103	☒	☒	-5.606	3.942	-0.083
105	☒	☒	-2.491	0.710	-0.011

 Close

GPS Local Transformation

Calculate Parameters Edit Control Add Control

☐ Do not calculate scale
☐ Do not calculate vertical slopes

Ctrl Pnt	Horz	Vert	dN	dE	dH
100			58.963	-30.482	1.140
101			-0.015	-0.004	0.009
102			0.009	-0.001	0.010
103			0.021	0.003	-0.014
105			0.001	0.003	0.000

Close

Enabling or disabling constraints in either the horizontal or vertical components for determining the transformation parameters is done with the **Edit Control** button. The last three columns of dN, dE and dH represents the residuals between the control coordinates and the transformed local (measured) coordinates in northing, easting and height.

GPS Local Transformation

Calculate Parameters Edit Control Add Control

☐ Do not calculate scale
☐ Do not calculate vertical slopes

Ctrl Pnt	Horz	Vert	dN	dE	dH
102			0.013	0.001	0.002
103			0.025	0.004	-0.021
105			0.007	0.004	-0.007
106			-0.003	0.004	0.001
202			0.010	0.009	-0.011

Close

Since this network is over constrained, it is possible to reserve a couple of point pairs as check values in testing the parameters of the horizontal transformation. Pairs 103/1103 and 105/1105 have been randomly selected as test pairs and have been deselected as constraints in the horizontal and vertical component.

These two test pairs will not be used in the computation of the horizontal transformation parameters but the transformation parameters will be applied to the measured points (1103 and 1105) to produce the residuals as shown. In this case we see that the residuals are acceptable and thus it can be assumed that the determined transformation parameters are reliable.

Adjustment Results

Upon satisfaction of the applied constraints and relevant residuals, the transformation parameters can be viewed or modified. As indicated in Figure 9, the four horizontal transformation parameters (translation in northing, translation in easting, scale and rotation) and the three vertical transformation parameters (bias, slope in X, and slope in Y) are shown in the grid list.

GPS Local Transformation

Edit Control	Calculate Scale (GPS)	Adjust Points
Origin North	5523145.270m	
Origin East	311529.858m	
Trans North	4985.504m	
Trans East	4999.223m	
Rotation	1°00'59"	
Scale	1.0000135774	
Trans Height	-0.011m	

Close

GPS Local Transformation

Edit Control	Calculate Scale (GPS)	Adjust Points
Trans North	4985.504m	
Trans East	4999.223m	
Rotation	1°00'59"	
Scale	1.0000135774	
Trans Height	-0.011m	
Slope North	0.00007	
Slope East	0.00006	

Close

When you press the **Calc Parameters** button it uses the point pairs that you've defined to calculate the transformation parameters. The values that are computed can be modified by the user. You can do "what if" scenarios by changing any of the values and checking the residuals on the control screen. You can always revert back to the default calculated values by pressing the **Calc Parameters** button again.

The number of horizontal transformation parameters can be decreased to three from four by fixing the scale to unity using the Do not calculate scale check box.

For the vertical component the determination of the parameters can be reduced to solving only for a vertical translation by toggling the parameter "**Do not calculate vertical slopes**". Upon enabling this, the parameters North Slope and East Slope will be automatically set to zero.

CONNECTING TO COMPUTER

Microsoft ActiveSync / Windows Mobile Device Center

Microsoft ActiveSync and Microsoft Windows Mobile Device Center facilitate communication between your PC and your handheld device.

If you are using Windows XP or earlier, **Microsoft ActiveSync** has to be installed on your computer so you can download data between your hand held and desktop computers. The current version (at time of printing) is ActiveSync 4.5. You may have to use an earlier version if you are running Windows 95 or 98. Check the web page noted below for more information.

If you are using Windows Vista, **Microsoft Windows Mobile Device Center** has to be installed on your computer, rather than Microsoft ActiveSync. The current version (at time of printing) is Windows Mobile Device Center 6.1.

Installing ActiveSync / Windows Mobile Device Center

Installing From Web

Microsoft ActiveSync or Microsoft Windows Mobile Device Center might already be installed on your computer; you can confirm this by looking for it in your Windows Start Menu.

If you do not have Microsoft ActiveSync or the Windows Mobile Device Center installed, you can download and install the latest version from Microsoft's website at this address:

<http://www.microsoft.com/windowsmobile/activesync/default.mspx>

Note: You may be asked to reboot your system once the installation is complete.

Installing From CD

Microsoft ActiveSync or Microsoft Windows Mobile Device Center might be already be installed on your computer, you can confirm this by looking for it in your Windows Start Menu.

If you do not have Microsoft ActiveSync or the Windows Mobile Device Center installed, and you don't have access to the internet, it can be installed from your Evidence Recorder CD. You can browse into the Evidence Recorder folder on your CD and run one of the following files:

MSASYNC.EXE (for Windows XP or earlier)

MSWMDC32.EXE (for Windows Vista 32-bit)

MSWMDC64.EXE(for Windows Vista 64-bit)

Note: You may be asked to reboot your system once the installation is complete.

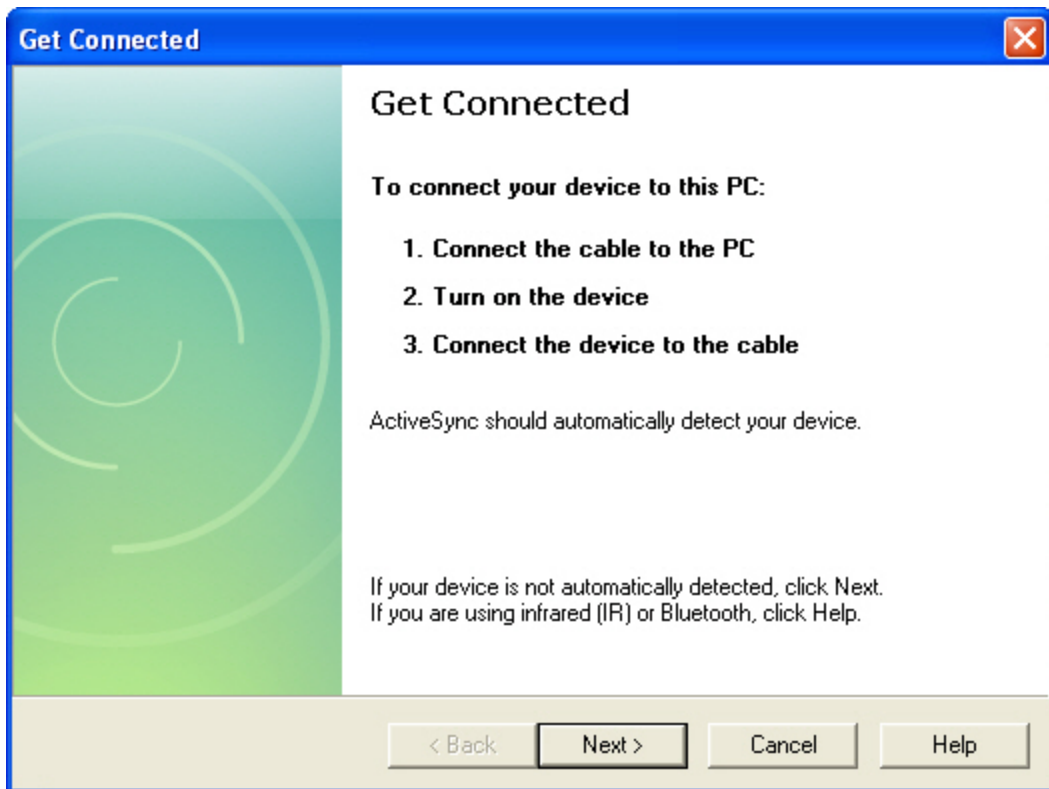
Connecting ActiveSync / Windows Mobile Device Center

Get Connected

We now need to establish a connection between your data collector and desktop computer as prompted by the ActiveSync or Windows Mobile Device Center Connection Wizard. The following screenshots are specific to ActiveSync, but the Mobile Device Center is almost identical.

After the install is complete, ActiveSync will display a Get Connected screen.

If ActiveSync was already installed, you can start it by going to your Start menu | All Programs | Micro-soft ActiveSync. The Get Connected Wizard should appear. If it does not, go to the ActiveSync **File** menu and select **Get Connected**.



Connect your handheld data collector to your desktop or laptop computer using the supplied cradle and/or cables.

Power ON the data collector and click **Next** on the Get Connected Wizard. Some devices require you to tap a **PC Link** icon on the device while the Get Connected function is in operation.

When communication is established, you will be prompted to set up a partnership between your data collector and the desktop computer.

Note: If your device does not connect as shown, turn the device off, and then back on again to retry

Establish a Guest Connection

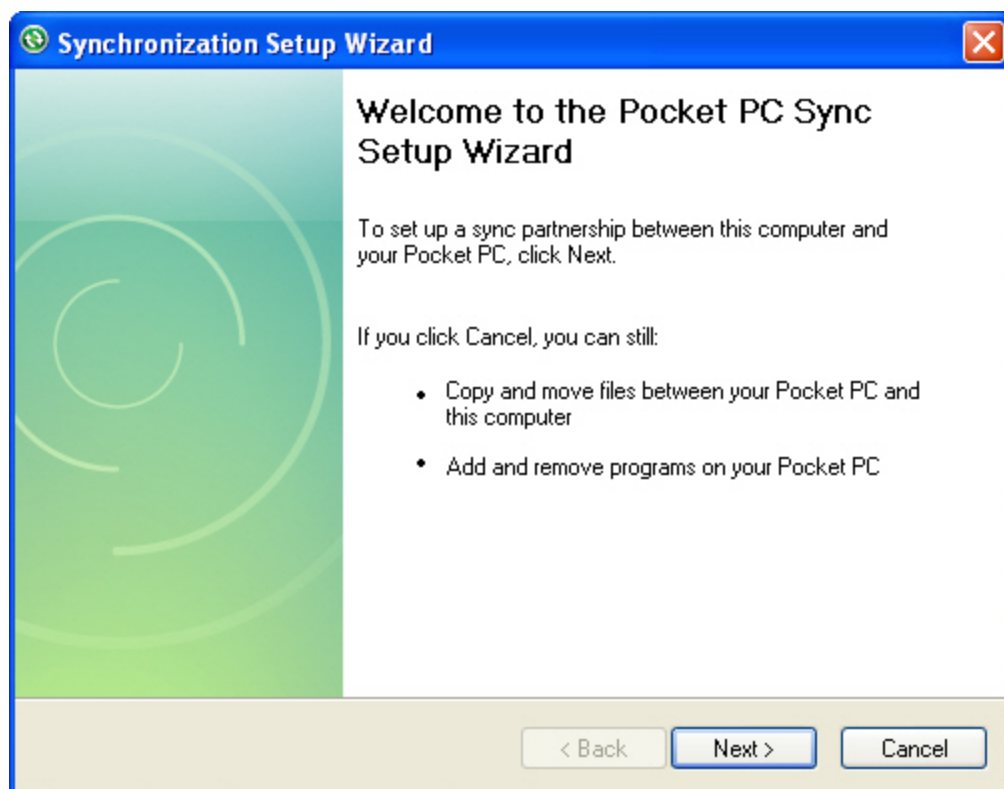
After you successfully connect to your computer, you will be asked to setup a partnership. Choose **Guest Partnership** then click **Next** to continue.

Note:

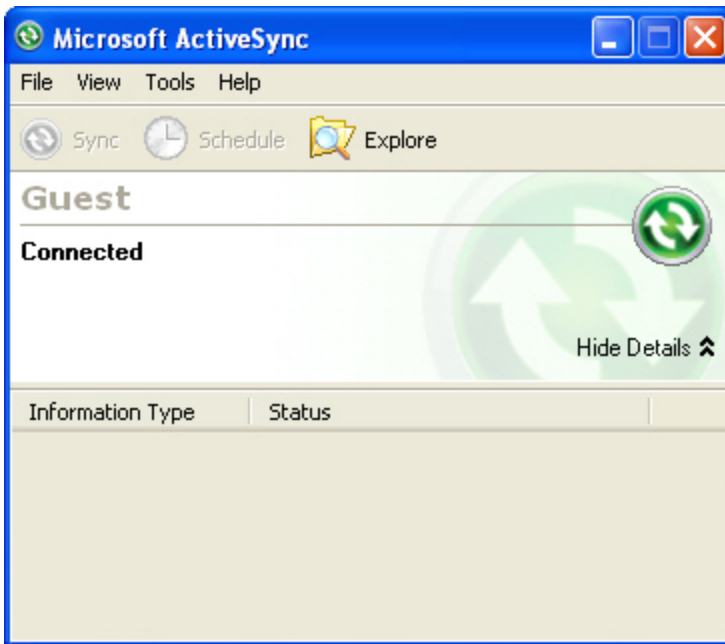
You can setup a Standard Partnership if desired, but this is not necessary and adds complexity. We recommend using a Guest Partnership.



Or if you are using a handheld device running Windows Mobile 5.0 or newer, you may instead see the Synchronization Setup Wizard, simply press **Cancel** to use a guest connection.



ActiveSync should now display as shown below:



You are now ready to move on to the next step - [MicroSurvey Transfer Program](#)

Note:

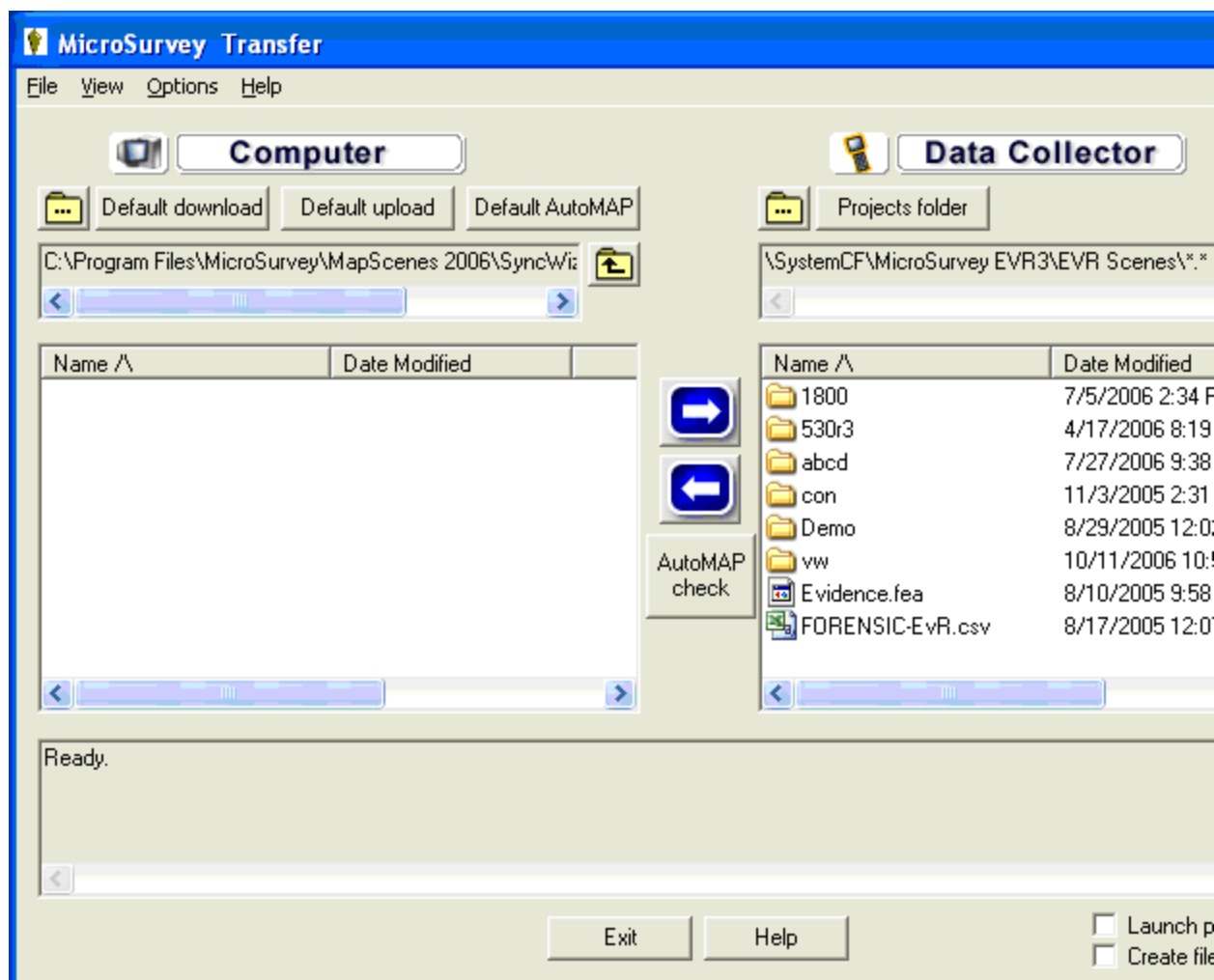
A small circular ActiveSync icon will appear in the lower right corner of your desktop (like the one at right in the above image). This will display in gray when ActiveSync is inactive but will change to green when your device is connected.

MicroSurvey Transfer

We provide a free transfer tool with Evidence Recorder to help you copy projects to and from your data collector. The program is called MicroSurvey Transfer and it can be download from our website or installed directly off of the CD provided with Evidence Recorder.

Once installed all you need is to connect your handheld computer to your desktop computer via an [ActiveSync or Windows Mobile Device Center](#) connection. ActiveSync is a Microsoft Windows product which establishes a serial or USB connection between your data collector and your computer.

Once connected, you can start the MicroSurvey Transfer program.



The program has been designed to streamline the transfer of projects and files back and forth between you data collector and computer.

For more details, please refer to the Help file included with the MicroSurvey Transfer program.

Synchronize with MapScenes

To import your projects into your MapScenes desktop product, please refer to the **Evidence Recorder SyncWizard** topic in the MapScenes help file.



Evidence Recorder 3 scenes can only be imported into MapScenes 2006 or newer.

Evidence Recorder 4 (and newer) scenes with an unencrypted raw file (*.raw) can only be imported into MapScenes 2006 or newer.

Evidence Recorder 4 (and newer) scenes with an encrypted raw file (*.rae) can only be imported into MapScenes 2008 or newer.

RAW FILE REFERENCE

Raw File Record Types

To increase our compatibility with other data collectors and desktop systems, Evidence Recorder uses the TDS RW5 raw file format. The raw file contains virtually all the measurements made in the field and is a complete history of what was recorded.

For more information on the raw data record format, or for additional record types, please review the Raw Data Record Specification document from Tripod Data Systems, Inc. It is available for download at www.tdsway.com

Conventional Raw Data Records

-- - Note or Comment Records

A comment in the raw file will be depicted with a record type of two dashes. Text found after the dash is the comment.

Comments are ignored during processing of the raw file and are used only for information purposes only. You can add a comment to the raw file by using the Add Comment button in the [Survey / Traverse Menu](#).

```
| -- This is a comment |
```

BK - Backsight Record

A backsight record is written to the raw file when you complete an occupy point command. Please review the [Setup Occupy Point](#) topic for more information.

Field headers:

OP: Occupy point

BP: Back point

BS: Backsight

BC: Back circle

```
| BK, OP101, BP100, BS0.00000, BC0.00000 |
```

CF - Cut Sheet

When you stake out a point, a CF record will be recorded in the raw file.

ST: Station

OD: Offset direction (ENUM)

OL: Offset length

EL: Elevation

GD: Grade (design)

DE - Design Point / Location

During a stakeout the point you're staking will be recorded in the raw file with as DE record.

PN: Point name (*design point, may be blank*)

N : Northing

E : Easting

EL: Elevation

--: Description (*design point description, may be blank*)

JB - Job Record

Every time a raw file is created or opened a JB record will be written to the file.

Field headers:

NM: Job name

DT: Date

TM: Time

| JB,NMTraverse1,DT03-05-2004,TM14:07:52 |

LS - Line of Sight (Instrument and Target Height)

HI: Height of instrument

HR: Height of rod

| LS,HI1.500,HR1.500 |

MO - Mode Setup Record

Every time a raw file is created or opened a MO record will be written to the file.

Field headers:

AD: Azimuth direction - (0 = North) (1 = South)

UN: Distance unit - (0 = Feet) (1=Meter) (2=US Survey Feet)

SF: Scale factor

EC: Earth curvature - (0 = off) (1=On)

EO: EDM offset (inch) (Default string "0.0") **Not used by Evidence Recorder

AU: Angle unit - (0=Degree) (1=Grads)

```
| MO,AD0,UN1,SF1.000000,EC0,EO0.0,AU0
```

```
|
```

OC - Occupy Point Record

When you complete the occupy point command an OC record will be written to the raw file. Please review the [Setup Occupy Point](#) topic for more information.

Field headers:

OP: Point number

N : Northing (the header is N space)

E : Easting (the header is E space)

EL: Elevation

--: Description

```
| OC,OP101,N 1000.0000,E 1000.0000,EL10.0000,--
```

```
|
```

OF - Off Center Shot Record

When you use any of the offset shot commands an OF record will be written to the raw file. Two types of measurements will create offset records and they are the Angle Offset and Distance Offset measurement modes. Please see the Measurement Modes topic for more information.

Field headers:

AR: Angle right

ZE: Zenith

SD: Slope distance

OL: Offset length

HD: Horizontal distance

VD: Vertical distance

LR: Left/Right Offset

```
| OF,AR90.00000,ZE90.00000,SD50.0000
```

```
| OF,ZE60.00000,--Vert Angle Offset
```

```
|
```

```
|
```

```
| OF,OL45.00000,--Right Angle Offset  
| OF,HD-10.0000,--Horizontal Distance Offset  
| OF,LR0.0000,--Left / Right Offset  
| OF,VD0.0000,--Elevation Offset  
|
```

Offset shots will always contain the original measurement plus the offset information. You will also see a SS record accompany the OF records and it will contain the reduced measurement. Following is an example of a distance offset where an offset of -10 was entered:

```
| OF,AR180.00000,ZE90.00000,SD50.0000  
| OF,HD-10.0000,--Horizontal Distance Offset  
| OF,LR0.0000,--Left / Right Offset  
| OF,VD0.0000,--Elevation Offset  
| LS,HI1.500,HR1.500  
| SS,OP1,FP5,AR180.00000,ZE90.00000,SD40.0000,--<No Desc>  
|
```

RS - Resection

When you use the resection function a RS record will be recorded for each observation made to your control points. Please refer to the Resection topic for more information.

PN: Point number

CR: Circular reading

ZE: Zenith (or VA, CE)

SD: Slope distance (or HD)

```
| RS,PN103,CR2.42220,ZE90.00000,SD25.0980  
|
```

When you complete a resection the control points you used will be written as SP records and after the RS records you will see one final SP for the computed resection point. An example of a resection is shown below:

```
| --Resection  
| SP,PN103,N 3135.070,E 1511.185,EL399.795,--:  
| SP,PN100,N 3097.874,E 1564.984,EL399.387,--:  
| LS,HI1.300,HR0.000  
| RS,PN103,CR2.42220,ZE90.00000,SD25.0980  
| RS,PN100,CR102.26120,ZE90.00000,SD56.3050  
| SP,PN999,N 3110.000,E 1510.000,EL398.291,--  
|
```

SD - Stakeout Deltas

When you complete a stakeout by pressing the store point command a SD record will be written to the raw file. It is the difference between the design location (DE record) and the actual point staked

(SP record).

ND: Delta northing

ED: Delta easting

LD: Delta elevation

SK - Stake Out Record

When you stake out a point and use the Store Point command a SK record will be written to the raw file. This is the raw observation that was recorded when you stored you stake point.

OP: Occupy point

FP: Foresight point

AR: Angle right

ZE: Zenith

SD: Slope distance

```
| SK,OP251,FP10000,AR175.00000,ZE90.00000,SD6.0000,--Design Point: 342 |
```

SP - Store Point

Many routines in Evidence Recorder will write a SP record to the raw file. SP records contain coordinate information that can be used for setups, resections, etc...

PN: Point number

N: Northing

E: Easting

EL: Elevation

--: Description

```
| SP,PN103,N 3135.070,E 1511.185,EL399.795,--: |
```

SS - Sideshot

When you record a shot a SS record will be recorded in the raw file. Many other functions also create a SS record such as when offset and multi set shots are reduced.

OP: Occupy point

FP: Foresight point

AR: Angle right

ZE: Zenith

SD: Slope distance

--: Description

| SS,OP1,FP7,AR176.11093,ZE90.00000,SD60.1332,--<No Desc> |

GPS Raw Data Records

AH - GPS Antenna Height

DC: Derivation Code (ENUM)

MA: Measured antenna height

ME: Measure Method (ENUM)

RA: Reduced antenna height (to phase center)

BL - GPS Base Line

DC: Derivation

PN: Point Name

DX: Base line Delta X

DY: Base line Delta Y

DZ: Base line Delta Z

-- : Description (Feature Code)

GM: GPS Measure Method (ENUM)

CL: Classification

HP: Horizontal Precision

VP: Vertical Precision

BP - Set Base Receiver Position

PN : Point Name

LA: Latitude

LN: Longitude

HT: Ellipsoid Height

SG: Setup Group (default = 0)

CS - Coordinate System Identity

CO: Coordinate system option (ENUM)

ZG: Zone group (system) name

ZN: Zone name

DN: Datum name

CT - Calibration Point

PN: Point Name

DM: Dimensions used (ENUM)

RH: Horizontal residual

RV: Vertical residual

CV - RMS Covariance of GPR Position

DC: Derivation (ENUM)

SV: Minimum number of SV during observation

SC: Error Scale

XX: Variance X

XY: Covariance X,Y

XZ: Covariance X,Z

YY: Variance Y

YZ: Covariance Y,Z

ZZ: Variance Z

EP - Geodetic Position

When you save the location of a point, its geodetic position is also recorded.

TM: Time

LA: Latitude

LN: Longitude

HT: Ellipsoid Height

RH: Horizontal RMS returned from receiver

RV: Vertical RMS returned from receiver

DH: HDOP if receiver returns this info

DV: VDOP if receiver returns this info

GM: GPS Method (ENUM)

CL: Classification (ENUM)

HA - Horizontal Calibration (Adjust)

N : Origin north

E : Origin east

TH: Translation north

TE: Translation east

RT: Rotation about origin

SF: Scale factor at origin

GS - GPS Store Point

This is similar to a regular SP (store point) record but the GS indicates that it is create by GPS.

PN: Point Name

N : Local Northing

E : Local Easting

EL: Local Elevation

-- : Description

RP - Local coordinates of calibration point

N : Northing

E : Easting

EL: Elevation

-- : Description

VA - Vertical Calibration (Adjust)

PV: Type of vertical adjustment (ENUM)

N : Origin north (*may be blank*)

E : Origin east (*may be blank*)

LZ: Constant adjustment – translation Z (*may be blank*)

SO: Slope north (*may be blank*)

SA: Slope east (*may be blank*)

GN: Geoid Model Name

INDEX

-

-- Note or Comment Record 429

3

3-Point Arcs 94

3D View Toolbar 57

A

About Menu 267

Absolute constant 280, 282

Absolute Constant 280, 282

Activation 25

Active Figure 90, 93

Active Linework 82

Active Tolerance Mode 375

ActiveSync 421, 425

additive constant 280-281, 285

AH - GPS Antenna Height 434

Angle Offset 167, 169

Angle Unit 124

Antenna Height 351, 375

Arc Mode 104, 199

Arcs 94

Area Volume 244

ASCII Coordinate File 255, 259, 274, 280

ATR 314

Attributes 79

Audio Notes 78

Auto-Center 59, 311, 314

Auto Recording 351

Auto Store 159

AutoMap Library 73, 100

Automatic Save 39

Autonomous 356

average 70

Averaged Geodetic Position 355

Averaging 69

B

Backsight 141, 165, 269, 289, 292, 316

Backsight Measure Mode 144

Backsight Summary 145

Backup Coordinate System 266, 392

Base Receiver 352, 355

Base Receiver Setup 353

Base Setup 352

Base Tolerances 348

Baseline Offset 188

BK - Backsight Record 429

BL - GPS Base Line 434

Bluetooth 303, 345

BP - Set Base Receiver Position 434

Breaklines 247

Buttons 37

C

Calculations Menu 215

Calculator 39, 221, 223, 225

Calibrate Instrument 325

Capture 425-426

Cartesian Coordinate 223

Caster 377

CF - Cut Sheet 429
Check Backsight 165
Check instrument level 325
Check Level 324
Check Point 164, 362
Closing Figures 97
Code-Free Linework 82
Codes 73
COGO 216, 219
Command Console 379
Command Line 379
Comment 82
Common Buttons 37
Communication Link 368
Complete Figure 98
Complex Figure 97
Configure Reference 348
Connect Points 105, 200
Connect Points Mode 105, 200
Connect/Disconnect 314
Contact Information 11
Contour Interval 243
Contours 250
Conventional Total Station 296
Convert Line-Spine 96
Coordinate Calculator 223
Coordinate Conversion 223
Coordinate Database 231
Coordinate System 266, 392
Coordinate System Settings 126, 380
Coordinate Systems - Geoids 388, 393

Coordinate Systems - Grid Shift Files 394
Copy 288
Correction Information 374
Correction Link 368
Corrections 352, 368
CS - Coordinate System Identity 435
CT - Calibration Point 435
Cursor Tracking 61, 313
CV - RMS Covariance of GPR Position 435

D

Data Collector Models 23
Data Entry 39
Data Manager Menu 231
Datum 126, 380
Datum Grid Editor 388
DBF File 79
DE - Design Point / Location 430
Default Keyboard Shortcuts 134
Default Prism 272
Default Reflectorless) 272
Default Settings 270-271, 276, 282, 290, 317-318
default target height 276, 282
Deleting Figures 99
Demo Mode 25
Descriptions 73
Direction Entry 45
Direction Format 124
Direction Units 45
Disclaimer and Limited Warranty 3
Disconnect GPS 377

Display Settings 113
Display Toolbar 53
Distance Entry 41
Distance Offset 171
Distance Unit 123
Distance Units 41
DOP 63, 368
Download 421, 425
DP Record 202
Draw Figures Manually 105, 200
Draw Option Defaults 100
DTM 239
DXF 85, 233, 262-263
DXF Files 84

E

Edit GeoMax Instrument Targets 285
Edit GeoMax Targets 285
Edit Leica Targets 280
Edit Points 195
Edit Target 274, 280
EDM 269, 288, 316
EDM mode 270, 289, 291, 293-294, 317
EDM Mode 314
EDM Settings 305
Elevations - GNSS / GPS 393
Ellipsoid 126, 223, 380
Ellipsoid Height 393
End-User License Agreement 3
End Figure 98
EP - Geodetic Position 435

ESRI 79, 266
Exit 109
Export 252, 254, 259, 263-265
Export User Defined 266, 392
Extended Edit Fields 39

F

FEA File 79
Feature List Editor 79
Figure Direction Marker 91
Figure List 93
Figures 82, 84, 88, 90-94, 96-99, 107
Figures Draw Manually 105, 200
Figures Toolbar 86
File Types 38
Files 27, 110
Forensic CAD 425-426
Foresight 269, 289-290, 292, 316

G

Geodetic Coordinate 223
Geodimeter 296-297
Geoid 126, 223, 380
Geoid Files 388
Geoids 393
GeoMax 284, 287-288
GeoMax Constant 285-286, 289
GeoMax instrument targets 290-291
GeoMax Instruments 287-288
GeoMax Instruments Target List 287
GeoMax Prism 284, 288-289
GeoMax prism constant 285-286, 289

Georeferenced Images 233
GIS 79
GNSS 394
GNSS Measurement Modes 353
GPS 63, 341, 348, 351, 367-368, 370-372, 394, 403
 Correction Information 370
 Position Information 377
 Raw Data Logging 378
 Satellite List 371
 Sensor Information 377
GPS Demo 126, 300
GPS Local Transformation 204, 209, 211, 394, 399
GPS Model and Communication 344
GPS Profile 126, 300
GPS Raw Data Records 434
GPS Reference Profile 342
GPS Rover Profile 343
GPS Settings 372
GPS Tasks 372
GPS Toolbar 63, 367
Grid Shift Files 394
GS - GPS Store Point 436
GSM 377
GSM modems 368
Guide Lights 314

H

HA - Horizontal Calibration (Adjust) 436
Hardware Requirements 23
Horizontal Angle Offset 167

HT 60

I

icon 274
Images 233
Import 233, 252, 254-255, 262, 274, 280, 426
Import User Defined 266, 392
Import/Export Menu 252, 254
Installation 24
Instrument Settings 59, 311
Instrument Configuration 301
Instrument Selection 125, 299
Instrument Settings 62, 313
Instrument Settings Toolbar 314
Instrument Toolbar 59, 311
Intersection 174
Introduction 23
Inverse 219

J

JB - Job Record 430
Job Information 136
Joystick Control 314
JPG/JPEG 233

K

Keyboard Shortcuts 134
Keypad 39-40
Kinematic 351
Known Geodetic Position 355

L

LandXML 233
Laser Plummet 324
Laser Pointer 314, 324
Layers Manager 233
Leica 278, 296-297
Leica constant 280, 282, 293, 295
Leica Constant 295
Leica Geosystems 279, 292
Leica instruments 278
Leica Instruments 292
Leica offset 293, 295
Leica Prism 279, 292
Leica targets 278
Level Bubble 314, 324-325
Level Bubble - check with every shot 325
Level Bubble Tolerance 325
License Agreement 3
Licensing 267
Line-Angle Offset 176
Line-Distance Offset 178
Line-Perpendicular Point 183
Line Mode 102, 198
Line Toolbar 86
Lines 84, 88
Linework 82
Link Configure 374
Link Information 374
Local Transformation 204, 209, 211, 394, 399, 403
Local Transformation to Point 355

Lock 61, 312

LS - Line of Sight (Instrument and Target Height) 430

M

Main Interface 51
Main Menu Button 109
Make and Model Settings 300
Manual Distance 173
Manual Entry 174
Map Data Layers Manager 233
Map Point 158
Map Point (Auto Store) 159
Map Select Toolbar 64
Map View 51
Mapping Methods Menu 138, 320
Mapping Tools Menu 194
MapScenes 425-426
Masks 348
mcvariable
 Primary.ProductNameDesktop 100
Measure 59, 62, 311-312, 314
Measure Backsight 141
Measure Distance 65
Measurement Mode 59, 312
Measurement Mode 62, 313
Measurement Modes GNSS 353
Microsoft ActiveSync 421
Microsoft Windows Mobile Device Center 421
MicroSurvey Software Inc. 11
Mini Toolbar Control 58

MO - Mode Setup Record 430
Model and Communication 302
Modem Settings 368
Mount Point 377
Move Instrument 147
Multiple prisms 61, 313

N

Nautiz X7 79
New 32
New Figure 92
New Target 272-273, 278-279, 284, 288
Nikon 296
No Communication 311
No Lock 61, 312
No Store 141
Notes 78
NTRIP 368, 377

O

Observation Toolbar 54
OC - Occupy Point Record 431
Occupy 141
Occupy Room 151
OF - Off Center Shot Record 431
Offset 167, 169, 171, 174, 176, 178, 183, 188
Open 29
Options 113
 GPS 118
 Interface 114
 Point Attributes 115

Point Labels 116
Staking 118
System 122
Total Station 117
User Input 115
Orthometric Height 393

P

Pan 53
PDOP 63, 368
Pentax 296
Photo Notes 79
Planar Projection 189
point 72
Point Averaging 69
Point by Arc Mode 105, 200
Point by Line Mode 104, 199
Point Chooser Toolbar 68
Point Labels 53, 116
Point Notes 78
Point Scanning 192
Point Toolbar 67
Points 67
Points Database 231
Position Information 375
Predefined 126, 380
Prism 275
Prism Constant 286, 293
Prism Constant (275
Prism Icon 279, 281, 284, 286
Prism Offset 295

Prism Offsets 305
Prism Search 61, 312
Prism Search Settings 309
Prisms - Use multiple 61, 313
Profile 341
Program Base Receiver 353
Program Receiver 355
Program Reference (Base) 353
Program Settings 113
Project Files 38
Project Information 136
Project Manager 27, 110
Project Review 29
Projection 126, 266, 380, 392
Projects 27, 110

Q

Quick Start - New Project 32
Quick Start - Open Existing Project 29

R

Radio Configuration 304
Radio Settings 368
Radios 368
Raster Images 233
Raw Data Logging 376
Raw File Comment 82
Raw File Record Types 429
Raw File Viewer 203
RC-2 304
Re-activating Figures 98
Realtime DTM Surface 246

Reference 141, 348
Reference (Base) Setup 353
Reference Position Modes 355
Reference Receiver 352
Reference Setup 352
Registration 25
Remote Height 169
Repair 25
Repeat Last Shot 174
Resection 159
Resection Errors 161
Reset RTK Filters 376
Review Project Files 29
Robotic Instrument Toolbar 61, 312
Robotic Total Station 297
Rover Measurement Modes 358
Rover Receiver 357
Rover Setup 357
RP - Local coordinates of calibration point 436
RPN Calculator 225
RS - Resection 432
RTK 368
RTS 269, 316
RW5 429

S

Satellite List 63, 368
Satellite Plot 63, 368, 370
Save 39
Save as Default Settings 124
Save Coordinate System 266, 392

Scale Factor 124
Scientific Calculator 225
Scripts 379
SD - Stakeout Deltas 432
SDR 264
search 61, 312
Search 61, 312-313
Search Settings 309
Seed Position 255
Select GPS Profile 341
Select Line Toolbar 87
Select Point Toolbar 68
Send commands 379
Sensitivity Level Bubble 325
Sensor Configure 373
Sensor Information 373
Set Angle 323
Set Default Height 269, 271, 289, 291, 293-294, 316, 318
Settings 113
Settings Menu 112
Settings.xml 278, 287
Setup 141
Shapefile 265
Shift 269, 292, 316
Shift Files 394
Shortcuts 134
SIP 40
SK - Stake Out Record 433
Skymap 370
Smart Tags 107

Sokkia 264, 296
SP - Store Point 433
Splines 96
SS - Sideshot 433
Standard Deviation 161
Start Button 109
Starting 25
StdDev 161
Store Point 65
Store Points 195
Supported Devices 23
Surface Manager 240
Surface Settings 242
Surface Volume 244
Surfaces 239
Switching Active Figures 93
Synchronize 426
SyncWizard 426
Syntax 379

T

Target 275, 291, 294
Target Height 59, 269, 288, 292, 312, 316
Target Height 59-60, 291, 294, 311
Target List 269-270, 272-273, 278-279, 284, 287-288, 290, 292, 316-317
Target Manager 61-62, 269, 273, 279, 284, 288, 292, 312-313, 316
Target Name 279, 284, 286
target type 274, 279, 281, 284, 286
TDS 429
Technical Support 10

Temporary (No Store) 141
temporary height 276, 282
Temporary Height 271, 291, 294, 318
Text Notes 78
TGRID 246
TIF/TIFF 233
TIN 246
Tolerance Level Bubble 325
Tolerances 348
Topcon 296-297
Topo Toolbar 55
Total Station 296
Total Station Configuration 301
Total Station Demo 126, 300
Total Station Make and Model 300
Total Station Profile 125, 299
Transfer 425
Transformation 204, 209, 211, 394, 399, 403
Transmit Corrections 352
Traverse / Intersection 216
Triangle Calculator 221
Trilateration 186
Trimble 296-297
Turn 323
Turn Instrument 314
Turn to Point 65
Two Line Intersection 174

U

Undo Last Saved Point 202
Undo Point 202

Unit Settings 122
Units 41, 45
Upload 421, 425
User Defined 126, 279, 380
User Defined Coordinate Systems 266, 392
Using Active Figures 90

V

VA - Vertical Calibration (Adjust) 436
Version 267
Vertical Angle Offset 169
Vertical Scene Projection 189
Volume 244

W

Windows Mobile Device Center 421, 425

X

XML 233

Z

Zeiss 296-297
Zoom 53

